



Express Publishing

CPE

Use of English

Examination Practice

Virginia Evans

CPE Use of English

Examination Practice

Virginia Evans



Express Publishing

Published by *Express Publishing*

3 Roman Bridge Close, Blackpill, Swansea SA3 5BE

Tel: +44-1792-404855 - Fax: +44-1792-404886

e-mail: inquiries@expresspublishing.co.uk.

INTERNET [http: //www.expresspublishing.co.uk](http://www.expresspublishing.co.uk).

© *Virginia Evans*

Second impression 1998

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or any means, electronic, photocopying or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

ISBN 960-7212-45-2

Contents

Units	Page
1. Tenses	5
Practice Test 1	18
2. Modal Verbs	21
Practice Test 2	35
3. Infinitive - Gerund	38
Practice Test 3	56
4. Passive Voice	59
Practice Test 4	73
5. Reported Speech	76
Practice Test 5	94
6. Adjectives - Adverbs - Comparisons	97
Practice Test 6	117
7. Conditionals	121
Practice Test 7	134
8. Wishes - Unreal Past	138
Practice Test 8	152
9. Relatives	155
Practice Test 9	166
10. Nouns	169
Practice Test 10	179
11. Articles	183
Practice Test 11	192
12. Causative Form	196
Practice Test 12	205
13. Clauses	209
Practice Test 13	229
14. Inversion	233
Practice Test 14	243
15. Conjunctions / Double Conjunctions /Conjuncts - Punctuation	247
Practice Test 15	266
Appendix 1	270
Appendix 2	275
Appendix 3	281
Appendix 4	294

Introduction

The “**CPE Use of English Examination Practice**” is a practice book intended for students preparing for CAE and CPE but it is also useful for advanced students who wish to polish up their skills in the difficult area of English structures and usage.

The Teacher’s Guide is a separate book which contains the answers to the exercises in the student’s book as well as notes on the word usage or any miscellaneous points.

How the book is organised.

Each unit consists of three main sections: Presentation, Consolidation and a Practice Test.

Presentation

In this section there is a condensed presentation of grammar structures followed by graded exercises practising the various phenomena presented.

Consolidation

This section consists of:

cloze passages - passages with 20 blanks to be filled with appropriate words.

phrasal verbs - presentation of phrasal verbs clearly set out in coloured tables and with relevant exercises. (To be used with reference to Appendix 1.)

idioms - presentation of idioms in coloured tables with relevant exercises. (To be used with Appendix 2.)

prepositions - verbs, nouns and adjectives followed by prepositions presented in alphabetical groups and tested in sentence form. (To be used with Appendix 3.)

rephrasing exercises - sentences to be rewritten based on a word given in bold type, or passages with blanks to be filled with information drawn from other tests.

sentence completion exercises - sentences with blanks to be completed with (an) appropriate word(s).

note expansion exercises - notes to be expanded into complete sentences.

mistake identification exercises - sentences with deliberate mistakes to be identified and corrected by students.

proverbs - commonly used proverbs with explanations through exercises.

word usage - passages and sentences to be completed using the most appropriate choice from groups and synonyms.

collocations - exercises designed to familiarise students with word-combination.

Practice Test

This section consists of complete Use of English practice tests in the same form as the Cambridge Proficiency Examination Paper 3.

The appendices on phrasal verbs, idioms, prepositions and verbal constructions at the end of the book help the students in their studies, as well as the teacher in checking the students’ competence in these difficult areas of the English language.

How to use the book.

The book is designed for use in class or self-study. The teacher is encouraged to adapt the book to the needs of the students and according to individual preference. The material in the book is structurally graded and is intended to be practised over the duration of the course.

Presentation 1

Tenses

Present

Present Simple	Present Cont.	Present Perfect	Present Perfect Cont.
habitual action e.g. <i>He sometimes goes swimming.</i>	temporary action e.g. <i>He's sleeping at the moment.</i> <i>Prices are rising nowadays.</i>	recently completed action e.g. <i>She has just painted her room.</i>	past action producing visible result in the present. e.g. <i>She has been painting her room. (It smells of paint.)</i>
permanent state e.g. <i>She works in a bank.</i>	repeated action with always (often to show annoyance) e.g. <i>He's always biting his nails.</i>	action beginning in the past and continuing up to the present e.g. <i>I haven't seen him for years.</i>	duration of an action beginning in the past and continuing up to the present e.g. <i>She has been waiting for two hours but there's still no sign of him.</i>
arranged future action (timetables, programmes, etc.) e.g. <i>The match begins at 8.30 next Monday evening.</i>	definite arrangement or plan e.g. <i>They are going on an excursion tomorrow.</i>	indefinite past action e.g. <i>She has been to Rome. (We do not know when)</i>	action showing annoyance, explanation, irritation or surprise e.g. <i>What have you been searching for in my desk?</i>
permanent truth e.g. <i>Ice melts when heated.</i>		repeated action still continuing e.g. <i>He has worked as a teacher for four years. (He is still a teacher.)</i>	
instructions e.g. <i>First you chop the meat, then you fry it.</i>			

Stative verbs describe a permanent state and do not have continuous forms. These include verbs of:

senses	see, hear, smell, feel, taste
thinking	agree, believe, consider, doubt, expect, feel (=think)
emotion & feelings	feel, forgive, hate, loathe, like, love, mind, wish, etc.
other	appear/seem, be, belong, have (=possess), keep (=continue), matter, owe, possess / own

Notes

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Verbs of the senses can have continuous forms, but then there's a change in meaning. | but: <i>I'm seeing my dentist tomorrow. (=I'm visiting)</i>
<i>Do you see those birds? (ability to see)</i> |
| 2. The verbs think , consider and expect can have continuous forms when they refer to an activity. | but: <i>Be quiet, please! I'm thinking.</i>
<i>I think you are wrong. (= I believe)</i> |
| 3. Have can have continuous forms in certain expressions such as: have a bath , have a nap , have fun , etc. | but: <i>We were having a good time at the party before the fire broke out.</i>
<i>Since you have his phone number, you can call him. (= possess)</i> |

1 Put the verbs in brackets into the "Simple Present", "Present Continuous", "Present Perfect" and "Present Perfect Continuous".

1. I **am seeing** (see) a dentist about a filling I (need).
2. Workers at that factory (be) on strike since Tuesday.
3. They won't employ him as he (not / have) any experience.
4. "What (you / do)?" "I (think) about my plans for Christmas."
5. "Why is the room stuffy?" "Because too many people (smoke) in here."
6. In spite of our doubts, he (seem) to have been right.
7. She (see) that boy for six months even though her parents disapprove.
8. Hot air balloons (work) on the principle that heat (rise).

has been to / has been in / has gone to

She **has been to** Munich. (= She has gone and come back.)

She **has been in** Madrid for two years. (= She lives there.)

She **has gone to** Amsterdam. (= She hasn't come back yet.)

2 Fill in the blanks with "have been to", "have been in" or "have gone to" in their correct form.

1. I **have never been to** (never) Paris, although I've always wanted to.
2. Mr Smith Moscow. He'll be back next Friday at the latest.
3. I London for three years now.
4. Since you India, can you tell me what I ought to see there?
5. They the supermarket, but they should be back soon.

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the "Simple Present" or "Present Continuous".

John Simmons (1) **is** (be) an architect who (2) (work) for a London-based design firm. Although he normally (3) (work) in the London area, at present he (4) (supervise) a project in Latin America which (5) (involve) the co-ordination of several multi-national design and engineering teams. Although he (6) (enjoy) the experience, he (7) (wish) the project could be finished sooner than (8) (be/predicted) at present. The truth is that he (9) (miss) his wife and children, and would like to see what (10) (happen) in his garden in England.

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the "Present Perfect" or "Present Perfect Continuous".

This is the famous site of Stonehenge, which (1) **has been** (be) the subject of archaeological debate for many years. No one (2) (yet/explain) satisfactorily why or how it was built, although teams of experts (3) (excavate) the site for years and a team of American scientists (4) (recently/start) working around the area with sophisticated new equipment. Popular theories (5) (suggest) that Stonehenge was built as a temple, but no one (6) (manage) to work out how the stones were transported here. A group of university students from Bangor (7) (discuss) the possibility of re-enacting a journey from Wales (where such stones are found) overland to Stonehenge and sponsors (8) (come) forward with offers of money. The British Museum (9) (also/announce) a forthcoming exhibition of artefacts of the Stonehenge period which they (10) (gather) from all over Northern Europe over the last five years. Well, ladies and gentlemen, I hope you (11) (enjoy) your visit; thank you for your attention.

Future forms

Will/Shall	be going to	Future Cont.	Future Perfect
predictions, offers, promises, requests, suggestions e.g. <i>Will you help me with the dishes? / Shall I get you some coffee?</i>	intention e.g. <i>She's going to take her driving test in a month.</i>	action in progress at a certain time in the future e.g. <i>I'll be flying to Paris this time tomorrow.</i>	action finished before a certain future time e.g. <i>By the end of July he will have been in Athens for two months.</i>
on-the-spot decisions e.g. <i>"Your clothes are dirty." "Are they?" "I'll wash them."</i>	planned actions e.g. <i>I know my clothes are dirty. I'm going to wash them tomorrow.</i>	logical assumption about the present e.g. <i>He will be sleeping now. (It's midnight.)</i>	logical assumption in the past e.g. <i>It's midnight. She will have gone to sleep by now.</i>
when it is not certain whether sth will happen (prediction) e.g. <i>If they come, I'll buy a bottle of wine.</i>	when there is evidence that sth will definitely happen e.g. <i>She's going to have a baby.</i>	already planned action (instead of Present Cont.) e.g. <i>I'll be seeing Sam tonight. Would you like me to tell him the news?</i>	Future Perfect Con. duration of an action up to a certain time in the future e.g. <i>By next Sunday, they will have been painting that house for two weeks.</i>
opinions, hopes, fears esp, with <i>think, expect, suppose</i> , etc. e.g. <i>I think he'll pass his test.</i>	action seen as a result of sth else in the future e.g. <i>He doesn't know how to light a fire. He's going to burn himself.</i>	Note: by/before are used with Future Perfect in positive sentences; until is used in negative sentences. e.g. <i>She will have cleaned the house by 6 o'clock. She won't have cleaned the house until 6 o'clock.</i>	

Other ways of expressing the future

be + infinitive	future plans	e.g. <i>The meeting is to take place on Wednesday.</i>
be about + infinitive be on the point of + gerund	immediate future	e.g. <i>They are about to leave. They are on the point of leaving.</i>

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct future form.

- Ring your mother or she **will worry** (worry).
- Look at that tree! It (fall) down!
- I'm sure I (finish) this assignment by tomorrow.
- We (drive) to Manchester tonight. Would you like a lift?
- It is expected that by the end of the day the jury (reach) its verdict.
- Put the bags down or you (drop) the milk!
- By October he (be) a widower for ten years.
- They (leave) Heathrow by now and will be on their way to America.
- Peter's very late for his meeting. It (certainly / start) by now.
- On 24th January she (complete) half of her prison sentence.

6 Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate present or future form.

"If I (1) **am** (be) re-elected, I (2) (give) my word that the first problems I (3) (tackle) (4) (be) those of the environment and education. As of next month I (5) (serve) my country in a public capacity for 6 years; I (6) (hope) to continue for at least as many more. While the general attitude seems to be that things in this country (7) (go) from bad to worse, I believe that by the end of my next term of office we (8) (be/able) to look back and count the improvements that have been made. If this (9) (not/be) the case, I (10) (never/make) another promise in my life. But I firmly believe that these (11) (be) years of positive change and dramatic improvement.

Past

Simple Past	Past Cont.	Past Perfect	Past Perfect Cont.
action completed in the past when there is direct or indirect time reference e.g. <i>He left an hour ago.</i> (direct time reference) <i>She phoned before the boss came.</i> (indirect time reference)	past action in progress at a given point in time. e.g. <i>She was still working at eight o'clock yesterday evening.</i>	past action which happened before another past action e.g. <i>She had already typed all the letters before her boss arrived.</i>	duration of a past action occurring before another past action e.g. <i>She had been cooking all day long when Tom came home with some fish and chips.</i>
past habitual action e.g. <i>He travelled/used to travel a lot when he was young.</i>	past action in progress interrupted by another action. e.g. <i>She was leaving when the phone rang.</i>	as the past equivalent of the Present Perfect Compare: <i>I haven't done it yet.</i> <i>I had already done it by the time he called.</i>	action producing visible results in the past e.g. <i>She was covered in paint because she had been painting her room.</i>
past actions happening one after the other e.g. <i>He stood up, got his briefcase and left the office.</i>	simultaneous past actions e.g. <i>While Jane was getting dressed, Tom was enjoying his drink.</i>		
past action which won't be repeated e.g. <i>Monroe starred in "The Seven Year Itch."</i>	polite inquiries e.g. <i>I was wondering if you could help me.</i>		

Used to / Get used to / Would

used to + infinitive (past habitual action)	<i>He used to work till late at night.</i> (He doesn't anymore.)
be / get used to + gerund/noun (habitual action)	<i>She isn't used to driving on the left.</i> <i>I haven't got used to living abroad yet.</i>
would (past repeated action and routine)	<i>When I was at my grandparents' cottage I would wake up early and go for a ride.</i>

7 Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate past tense.

1. He **walked** (walk) to the front of the stage, ... (take) a bow and (wave) to the audience.
2. We (not/enjoy) the play so we (leave) early.
3. While the patients (wait) in the surgery, the doctor (deal) with a complicated case.
4. I'm starving - I (have) breakfast over five hours ago.
5. In June 1979 they (still / build) this shopping centre.
6. They (walk) to the water's edge, ... (wade) in and (swim) to the other side.
7. While the soldiers (advance) they did not realise that the enemy (plan) a surprise attack.
8. She (set) out for an appointment when the lights (go off).
9. By the time the police (locate) the stolen car, the thieves (already / escape) to France.
10. Her clothes were wet because she (walk) in the rain.

8 Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate tense.

Jim (1) **was not looking** (not/look) forward to the exam. He (2) (study) for the past two months, and still (3) (not/feel) sure that he (4) (know) even half of what he should know. He (5) (question) his teachers repeatedly about the material that (6) (appear) on past exams, but he still (7) (not/be) convinced that anything he (8) (learn) (9) (be) relevant to this year's exam. He (10) (still/study) at seven o'clock in the morning on the day of the exam; he (11) (revise) all night long, and (12) (feel) exhausted. In fact he (13) (be) so tired that he (14) (fall) asleep in the middle of writing the exam, and (15) (wake up) only just in time to finish it.

9 Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate tense.

In the last few years there (1) **has been** (be) a marked change in our attitude towards environmental issues. It (2) (start) with scientists revealing that a hole (3) (begin) to develop in the ozone layer above the Arctic Circle; when people (4) (start) to notice changes in the climate, it (5) (become) obvious that there (6) (be) a serious threat. Those of us who (7) (ever/use) an aerosol spray will presumably think twice before using one again. And what (8) (happen) to all that nuclear waste we have produced? Presumably most of it (9) (be/dump) into the sea, but the number of protesting voices (10) (increase) steadily year by year.

10 Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate past tense.

If it (1) **hadn't been** (not/be) for Louis, Joan (2) (never/survive) her trip to Paris last month. She (3) (not/meet) him before, but she (4) (be) certainly glad that she had by the end of her stay. The first thing that (5) (happen) was that the hotel where she (6) (plan) to stay (7) (never/receive) her booking, so they had no room for her. Then, as she (8) (try) to get a taxi to take her to another hotel, someone on a motorbike (9) (snatch) her bag with all her tickets and credit cards in it. As her French (10) (be) quite rusty, she (11) (not/know) how to explain what (12) (happen). It was then that Louis (13) (approach) her and (14) (introduce) himself.

Structural Conversion

1. *I've never been given such a nice present.*
It's the nicest present I've ever been given.
2. *He's never flown by Concordia before.*
It's the first time he's ever flown by Concordia.
3. *It's a long time since he visited us.*
He hasn't visited us for a long time.
4. *When did you leave school?*
How long ago did you leave school?
How long is it since you left school?
5. *The last time I saw her was a month ago.*
I haven't seen her for a month.
6. *He joined the golf club ten months ago.*
He has been a member of the golf club for ten months.
7. *It's a month since she moved to Austria.*
She moved to Austria a month ago.
8. *She started English lessons a year ago.*
She has been doing English lessons for a year.
It's a year since she started doing English lessons.
9. *Having had dinner, I went to bed.*
After having dinner I went to bed.
After I had had dinner, I went to bed.
10. *I think there will be war soon.*
In my opinion, there is going to be war soon.
If you ask me, there's bound to be war soon.
In my estimation, war is imminent.
11. *I don't believe he'll come.*
It's my belief that he won't come.
I have a feeling that he won't come.
There's no reason to believe that he'll come.
12. *While I was walking down the street I saw Mary.*
While walking down the street, I saw Mary.
When I was walking down the street, I saw Mary.
It was while I was walking down the street that I saw Mary.
13. *Was there any response to his appeal?*
Did anyone respond to his appeal?
Was his appeal responded to by anyone?
14. *The race takes place tomorrow.*
The race will/is going to be held/take place tomorrow.
15. *She started doing her homework as soon as her brother had left for school.*
She started doing her homework when her brother had left for school.
She didn't start doing her homework until her brother had left for school.
She waited until her brother had left for school before she started doing her homework.
Not until her brother had left for school did she start doing her homework.
16. *When did you last have a haircut?*
When was the last time you had a haircut?
17. *She wrote the book while she was on holiday.*
She wrote the book during her holiday.
18. *I only slept for an hour last night.*
I only had an hour's sleep last night.
19. *It is certain that he'll pass his exams.*
There is no doubt that he'll pass his exams.
He is bound to pass his exams.

11 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. It's weeks since I last went to the countryside.
I haven't **been to the countryside for weeks.**
2. Our school has never held a Christmas party before.
It's
3. They began building the tunnel eighteen months ago.
They have
4. When was the planet Pluto discovered?
How
5. He has never felt so embarrassed before.
It's
6. They raided the fridge as soon as their mother had left.
They didn't
7. I've never met such an immature person!
She's the

8. France hasn't won a gold medal in this sport for a long time.
It's a
9. I started studying law two years ago.
I have
10. How long ago did you realise the truth?
How long is it?
11. The doctor didn't start the operation until the anaesthetic had taken effect.
The doctor waited
12. He realised his mistake when it was too late.
He didn't
13. It's the most ridiculous suggestion I've ever heard!
I've never
14. When did you last see Paul?
When was
15. After he had finished his homework, he went for a walk.
Having

12 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising various tenses.

1. By the end of next year she **will have been in** London for three years.
2. Since I came to work, you nothing but complain!
3. As soon as they stolen, they called the police.
4. We drove very slowly because snow heavily.
5. That author's new book next month.
6. We didn't realise we'd forgotten the tickets until to the airport.
7. By December 15th we in Greece for two months.
8. She since 6 o'clock and still hasn't finished her homework.
9. Don't put too much in that bag or
10. Don't phone Mark now - it's late and he bed.

13 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. I believe it's going to rain.
FEELING
.....
2. I haven't been to the cinema for weeks.
TIME
.....
3. The contest takes place tomorrow.
HELD
.....
4. She started cleaning as soon as the children had left.
UNTIL
.....
5. It's certain that they'll be late.
BOUND
.....
6. Was her call answered by anyone?
ANSWER
.....

Consolidation 1

14 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

Surprisingly to most people, postal services have (1) in some parts of the world for thousands of years. There is some (2) that a postal service existed among the Assyrians and Babylonians. (3) China a regular postal service was (4) in the 7th century B.C., and over the centuries attained such a high (5) of efficiency that about 2,000 years after (6) institution it (7) the admiration of travellers (8) as Marco Polo. Efficient and highly developed postal services were (9) established in the Persian and Roman empires. These services in (10) times were mainly confined (11) the use of the state: private citizens made (12) of slaves, the couriers of other countries and merchants, to (13) messages and documents. In Medieval Europe, postal services were organised by emperors and by the papacy, (14) private citizens continued to entrust their correspondence to (15) kinds of travellers. Later, towards the 13th century, the universities and towns came to have their (16) messengers. It was not (17) the 14th century that merchants, the private citizens who had the greatest (18) of a speedy and regular exchange of correspondence, began to set (19) regular courier services. The needs of business (20) to the organising of the postal service as we know it today.

Phrasal Verbs 1

act up :	behave awkwardly or badly
answer back :	defend oneself
answer (sb) back :	speak rudely to sb
answer for :	be responsible for sth
answer to :	be under the command of sb
back down :	cease to oppose
back out of :	withdraw from
back up :	support
bear on :	be relevant to
bear with :	tolerate

15 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. I don't think his statement bears **on** this case.
2. You can't change your mind now. It's too late to back the deal.
3. The plant manager answers directly the head of the company.
4. I was prepared to back her story because I knew it was the truth.
5. The baby has been acting all day. I think she must be teething.
6. The murderer will answer his crimes in the highest court in the land.
7. Faced with such formidable opposition to his plans, he had no choice but to back
8. The teacher accused him of answering her when he attempted to explain what he had been doing.
9. If you can bear me a little longer, I'll tell you the rest of the story.
10. After a violent attack in the press on their welfare policies, the Conservatives answered with a statement of their reforms since taking office.

Phrasal Verbs 2

16 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in one of the prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

beneath - off - up to - in for - in with - down on - out - on - down with - into

1. Susan gets all the perks because she's **in with** the administration.
2. She feels it is her to socialise with uneducated people.
3. As an ex-smoker, Paul is people who smoke.

4. He'll be it when his parents discover he took the money.
5. Half the staff are the flu this week.
6. She doesn't eat crisps or chocolate; she's health foods.
7. Our dog has been its food for days now.
8. Do you know what's at the cinema tonight?
9. I don't know what he's been, but he looks very embarrassed.
10. The roses have been for a few days now.

What other meanings can you find for
a) **be up to**,
b) **be out**,
c) **be off**?

Idioms 1

all but :	nearly, almost
all in :	exhausted
all told :	altogether
for all :	in spite of
of all people :	used to express annoyance / surprise
all along :	from the beginning
all the same :	yet, however
all in all :	when everything is considered
for all I know :	as far as I know
for all I care :	I don't care

17 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. I've **all but** finished; just give me a few minutes.
2. He's promised to come to the party on Friday;, I don't believe him.
3. his hard work he didn't get a promotion.
4. I don't know how they found out, but they've known about it
5. I've been reading the newspapers and I think the government will win the election.
6. She told me her name was Joan but she could be lying.
7. I don't think I'll go out tonight. I'm
8. I never expected you, ..., to say such a thing!
9. Of course you can't live with us! you can live in the street!
10., there were 50 people at the party, but not everyone stayed the whole evening.

Idioms 2

to take sth into account :	to consider sth
on account of :	because of
on no account :	in no circumstances
on this/that account :	for this / that reason
on the air :	broadcasting (opp.: off the air)
in the air :	1) uncertain, 2) spreading about
to clear the air :	to get rid of suspicion or bad feeling
to be up in arms :	to be very angry
on the alert :	on the look-out; expecting sth

18 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. Instead of bottling up your feelings, let's have a good talk and **clear the air**.
2. There's talk of a possible stock-market crash.
3. The villagers are about the proposed motorway.
4. I haven't been able to travel much lately my car having broken down.
5. His future is still up; he can't decide whether to become a surgeon or a psychiatrist.
6. You must his educational background when deciding what work to give him.
7. The meeting tomorrow is very important; must you be late.
8. There's been a storm in Manila, so we won't be going there on holiday.
9. You can't go into the studio just yet as the programme is still
10. The police are always for terrorists, particularly at airports.

Prepositions

19 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- 1. The cinema which was adjacent **to** the bank was damaged when a bomb exploded in the bank.
- 2. What you're saying amounts blackmail.
- 3. Mr Parker was arrested driving while under the influence of alcohol.
- 4. She finds it difficult adjusting the climate.
- 5. Your calculations do not accord mine.
- 6. She was very appreciative all the support she got from her friends.
- 7. I was totally abashed his rude manner.
- 8. His abstinence alcohol lasted only two months.
- 9. I have an aversion spiders.
- 10. The child showed no animosity her new stepbrother.

20 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- 1. The recommendations are based **on** a recent report by the Home Office.
- 2. My little sister still believes Father Christmas.
- 3. Beware strong currents when swimming in this area.
- 4. I bumped an old school friend in town last week.
- 5. The tourists bartered their souvenirs at the local market.
- 6. The children arrived at the fair and made a beeline the ghost train.
- 7. There's a ban using hose-pipes because of the drought.
- 8. The cat basked the warm sunshine.
- 9. He continually boasts his fantastic job.
- 10. The man begged his wife forgiveness.

21 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.
FIND
I find photography interesting.

- 1. I don't know how I can make it up to you for spoiling your plans.
AMENDS
- 2. I don't mind staying in on a Saturday night if I have good company.
AVERSE
- 3. The suspect could not explain why he had sand on his boots.
ACCOUNT
- 4. Miss Hayes will explain the day-to-day running of the office to you.
ACQUAINT
- 5. What he told me made me very curious to hear the rest of the story.
APPETITE
- 6. The burglar was caught while stealing the jewels.
ACT
- 7. My father doesn't like people to smoke without asking first.
APPROVE

- 8. Those official files cannot be seen by the public until the 21st century.
ACCESS
- 9. She is very precious to him.
APPLE
- 10. You should consider the fact that he hasn't spoken French for years.
ALLOWANCES
- 11. This is the first time I've been to the Bahamas.
NEVER
- 12. Only Sheila came up with the solution to the problem.
SUCCEEDED

22 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

- 1. The injured cyclist 15 minutes for an ambulance to arrive.
- 2. If you had locked the door properly, the burglar in.
- 3. I wish talking, Richard! I can't concentrate.
- 4. Do hurry up! The taxi any minute now.
- 5. That ladder looks a bit shaky. for you while you are painting?
- 6. There's discussing this any further if you don't want to help me.
- 7. However hard, I can't give up smoking.
- 8. No matter, I don't believe he did it.
- 9. He is hard work; he was once a builder.
- 10. A: Where's Peter?
B: Oh, he'll be here soon. He's just shop.

23 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. She was a gifted novelist but ~~a~~ indifferent poet.
- 2. He considered it a honour to receive such a prestigious award.
- 3. There is a bar of bread in the bag.
- 4. Surveys show that above 75% of the voters approve of the new law.
- 5. The teacher was concerned from the student's progress.
- 6. The magistrate would not accept to grant the defendant bail.
- 7. The human body cannot accept large amounts of radiation.
- 8. We managed to find cheap accommodations in Paris.
- 9. Information of this nature is valuable, according to me.
- 10. He is not accustomed to deal with such a difficult client.
- 11. She was advised to seek professional advise from a lawyer.
- 12. She asked me for an advice.
- 13. The drugs had such a strong affect on her that they effected her ability to drive.
- 14. I was afraid to lose my bag among all the others.
- 15. After a month he will be released from prison.
- 16. The club only admits people after twenty-five.
- 17. The evening we stayed at home and relaxed.
- 18. She introduced me to her son who was at my age.
- 19. It is more than a month ago before I heard from my friend.
- 20. We simply must agree accepting his generous offer.

an

24 In most lines of the following text there is a grammatically incorrect item. Read the numbered lines 1 - 11 and then write the correct form in the spaces provided for your answers. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (✓). The first one has been done for you.

	Answers
1. John's parents, who will be married for twenty-five years by next	will have been married
2. month, plan to celebrate by going on a world cruise. They will be	
3. away for three months, and by the time they will return, they	
4. will have visited at least half the countries in the world. Although	
5. they plan this down to the last detail, what they don't know is that	
6. John is planning to throw an enormous party for them on the day	
7. before they depart. It will be at least 150 guests, a live band,	
8. and masses of food which will prepare by a friend of John's who	
9. runs a catering business. The food includes a selection of dishes	
10. from some of the countries John's parents will be visited. John	
11. hopes this will be one of the most special days of his parent's lives.	

25 Read the following article and using the information given, complete the following letter by writing the missing words in the correct spaces. The words you need do not occur in the article. The first one has been done for you. Do not use more than two words for each blank.

The French government is planning to introduce new measures to monitor and limit the use of live animals in scientific research. Their aim is to establish new standards for all of Europe. The new measures aim to ensure that the public will be informed as to the conditions in which animals are kept, and scientists will be made to justify their use of live animals in cases where substitutes could be found. A council will also be formed consisting of scientists, animal rights activists and other qualified members. It is hoped that France's actions will be an example to other European countries which now have few controls regarding the treatment of animals.

Dear John,

I'm just writing to tell you about an article I read that says the French government (1) *is going/ about* to introduce a new (2) to (3) and (4) the use of animals in experiments. What (5) to do is (6) a new standard for (7) of Europe. They promise that they will inform the public (8) animals are kept, and that scientists (9) to justify (10) live animals (11) they could find substitutes. They (12) a council (13) of scientists, animal rights activists and other experts. Everyone (14) that this (15) other countries that they need to control the way they treat animals.

Yours,
James

Word usage

26 Fill in the blanks with one of the words from the box below in the correct form.

laugh - smile - giggle - chuckle - sneer - grin - snigger - smirk - beam - titter - guffaw

- Mr Jones **chuckled** to himself as he read a funny story in the newspaper.
- The students when they saw that their teacher had sat on some chewing gum.
- I hardly ever at jokes. I just don't find them funny.
- The woman with pleasure when she saw her daughter get off the plane.
- Fiona pleasantly at her neighbour when she saw her walking through the park.
- When he at the joke, everyone in the theatre turned to look at him.
- The boy was so embarrassed he could do nothing but speechlessly.
- It's disgusting the way she at everyone who doesn't dress as well as she does.
- Mr Smith always when he sees me; I get the feeling he knows something I don't.
- Those teenage girls do nothing but when they see boys they like.
- The women at their friend's rather lewd joke.

27 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- A small dog ran at my ankles but I managed to **dodge** it. (dodge, evade, shirk, duck)
- He's so lazy! We all have to work harder because he's always (evading, shirking, ducking, dodging)
- The Prime Minister managed to any tricky questions asked by the interviewer. (shirk, duck, dodge, evade)
- Smoking has his health; he coughs all the time. (swayed, influenced, affected, impressed)
- I'm sure that living with a vegetarian has me to eat less meat. (swayed, affected, influenced, impressed)
- Before I pay for the painting, I need proof that it is a(n) Picasso, not a copy. (real, authentic, genuine, natural)
- He may appear to be but in fact he doesn't mean what he says at all. (authentic, genuine, natural, real)
- If you have stomach-problems it is best to avoid food. (wealthy, affluent, rich, opulent)
- I was rather embarrassed when John gave me such a(n) gift. I had only bought him a box of chocolates for Christmas. (well-off, rich, opulent, affluent)
- Brazil earns the majority of its income from one: coffee. (goods, merchandise, commodity, ware)

28 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

challenge	scrape	lead	disclose	pledge
subscribe	show	be hooked	release	bend

- to **disclose** a secret,
- to to a magazine,
- to the rules,
- to someone's authority,
- to your loyalty to someone,
- to a piece of news,
- to sympathy to someone,
- to on gambling,
- to through an exam,
- to a group of people.

29 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	teeth	alarm	flowers	note	limbs	light	hair	tears	pearls	impression	passport
artificial	✓										
false	✓										

Practice Test One

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

Although many people who have sleeping (1) , either chronic (2) occasional, automatically reach for the sleeping tablets when they see a difficult night (3) of them, there are a number of so-called "folk" remedies which are not (4) cheaper but also much safer in the long (5) Most people have tried (6) a hot drink such as milk or one of a number of herbal infusions before going to bed, (7) there are other, less well-known (8) , which can help you on your way to a restful night's sleep. One unusual but (9) technique involves, not warmth as you might (10) , but cold. Before going to bed, run very cold water for several minutes over your forearms and legs from the knee (11) , then dry yourself quickly and hop into bed. You will find yourself feeling totally relaxed and drowsy. Another unusual (12) has to do with eating or, to be more (13) , chewing. Take a large apple, wash it and eat it slowly, taking particular (14) to chew the peel thoroughly. Chewing is not only relaxing in (15) , but the peel of the apple (16) a natural substance which (17) relaxation. Meditation, stretching, walking and even (18) sheep are also effective methods for many people. Clearly, there are many ways to (19) the pill-popping route and still (20) a good night's sleep.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. Although John studied harder than anyone, he failed the exam.
In spite
- b. What a pleasure to see you here!
How
- c. It was only when I got home that I realised I had forgotten my keys.
Not until
- d. There has been a large increase in unemployment this year.
Unemployment
- e. This matter is no concern of yours.
This matter does not
- f. Applications are accepted until June 3rd.
The final date
- g. The only reason I am late is that the traffic was so heavy.
Had it not
- h. I certainly don't mean to do it before tomorrow.
I have

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use **crying over** spilt milk.

- 1. Your manners are terrible. You really about them.
 - 2. That Marilyn Monroe you saw yesterday. She's been dead for years.
 - 3. I didn't answer the phone it would be a wrong number.
 - 4. Don't you realise things cost these days? You can't buy a car for £100!
 - 5. good saying that now - it's too late.
 - 6. guilty, the murderer denied everything.
4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence **as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence**, but using the word given. This word must **not be altered** in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: **Were they given permission to go?**

- | | |
|---|----------|
| 1. My boss says I can use his yacht whenever I want to. | DISPOSAL |
| 2. The news was a shock to us. | ABACK |
| 3. James realised that he could never be an architect. | CUT |
| 4. They chose not to drive because they thought there would be too much snow. | FEAR |
| 5. I'm sick of that programme; I've watched it too often. | OFF |
| 6. I never have enough time. | SHORT |
| 7. They tried very hard to finish by midnight. | BEST |
| 8. The criminal got away through the back window. | ESCAPE |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Cheiro's contribution to palmistry was to bring the art to the attention of the multitudes in the best possible light. He neither innovated, as the Fowlers did in the field of phrenology, nor systematized, as Lavater did in physiognomy. He was a brilliant publicist who stuck close to methods that had been around for millennia.

According to Cheiro and palmist tradition, the left hand of a right-handed person reveals inborn nature; the right shows how the nature has been applied to the circumstances of the person's life. The reverse would be true for a left-handed individual. A rounded hand with tapering fingers - such as those of Sarah Bernhardt, for example, "must necessarily be used in some artistic emotional career," as Cheiro wrote of the actress. A blunted, square-shaped hand indicates a person possessing more practical or scientific talents.

Palmists examine the shape of the fingers and the fingernails, the prominence of the joints, the relative size of the fingers and palm, and the size and shape of the hand's mounts - the fleshy cushions

at the heel of the hand and at the base of the thumb and fingers. And, especially, palmists consider the length, definition and prominence of the lines that criss-cross the hand in predictable patterns but with individual variations of detail. Of these, the major and best known are the life line, which circles the base of the thumb, the head and heart lines, which traverse the upper half of the palm, and the fate line, which rises from the wrist to the middle finger. 15

Some palmists insist that their art cannot be reduced to memorizing the placement and meaning of various lines. What the palmist is really doing, they maintain, is setting up a subliminal, telepathic contact that permits the plumbing of the subject's inner nature, worries and potential. This mental contact requires conscious concentration on the part of both reader and subject and it is enhanced by physical contact. Some critics feel however, that a palm reader's talent does not lie in any sort of psychic gift or interpretation of the lines of the hand, but in the ability to respond almost intuitively to non-verbal clues supplied unwittingly by the subject. 20

- 1. Explain the use of the phrase "in the best possible light". (lines 1 - 2)
- 2. In what way was Cheiro's contribution different to that of the Fowlers and Lavater?
- 3. What differences are exhibited by the left and right hands?
- 4. How did the shape of Sarah Bernhardt's hand apparently relate to her career?
- 5. Rephrase "the fleshy cushions at the heel of the hand". (lines 12 - 13)
- 6. What aspects of the lines do palmists examine?
- 7. Where exactly are the head and heart lines?
- 8. What alternative view of the nature of palm reading do some palmists hold?
- 9. Replace "maintain" (line 19) with a suitable word.
- 10. Explain in your own word(s) "plumbing", as used in this context. (line 20)
- 11. In what way do critics feel that the sitter may help the palmist?
- 12. Give one or two examples of "non verbal clues" (line 24) which the subject may supply.
- 13. Summarise in a paragraph of 80-100 words how palmists use the hand to make their interpretations.

Presentation 2

Modal Verbs

The modal verbs are:

can - could - may - might - must - ought to - will - would
- shall - should - have to - need - dare - used to

► Functions of Modal Verbs

Ability/Inability	Possibility/Impossibility	Permission/Concession
<i>I can see smoke in the distance. She can't speak German.</i> <i>When I was at school, I could play a lot. (repeated action) He was able to escape through a window. (single action) She wasn't able to/couldn't eat the sandwich. (Both types can be used in the negative for either a repeated or a single action.)</i>	<i>You can have a piece of cake if you want one.</i> <i>We could ask someone for help. He may be lucky this time. She might come with us. (But I don't think so.) You can't rely on British weather. Is she likely to come? Is it likely that she'll come?</i>	<i>Can I ask you a question? Could you give me some advice? May I make a suggestion? Might I borrow your newspaper? (formal) You can sit here if you'd like to. You may take the last sweet.</i>
Obligation / Duty	Necessity	Prohibition
<i>She must pay the rent by Friday. (strong obligation or duty) I have to speak to the boss. (obligation / necessity) He had to have an X-ray.</i>	<i>I need to improve my French. The house needs cleaning. He has to make up his mind soon. Must I go with you? Do I have to finish this now? Need he sign the form?</i>	<i>You mustn't eat in this room. You are not to eat in this room. (= it's against the rules) You can't join the tennis club. (= you aren't allowed to join the tennis club)</i>
Absence of Obligation or Necessity	Logical Assumption (affirmative)	Logical Assumption (negative)
<i>You needn't worry - everything's under control. I don't have to leave until 3 p.m. You needn't have waited for me. (But you waited) They didn't need to make any more food. (And they didn't)</i>	<i>He must be nervous about the test. You must be feeling very sad. She must have left by now. He must have been lying all along.</i>	<i>It can't be yours - I'm sure it isn't. She can't be enjoying herself; she looks so bored. He can't have broken the window. You can't have been listening properly.</i>
Advice	Criticism	Requests, Offers, Suggestions
<i>You should take a holiday. You ought to try harder. You ought not to complain so much.</i>	<i>We should have made sure that the tickets were valid. (but we didn't) He ought to have cooked dinner. (but he didn't)</i>	<i>Can you hurry up, please? Would you pass me the salt? I'll give you a lift. Shall I make the tea? She should go to the dentist's. I might as well watch T.V.</i>

Characteristics of the Modal Verbs

- 1. They take no -s in the third person singular except for **have to**, **need** and **dare**.
- 2. They have **no infinitive** or **participle** forms so they cannot be used in the continuous tenses except for "need", have to" and "dare".
- 3. They are followed by **bare infinitive** except for **ought to**, **have to** and **used to**.
- 4. They form their negative and interrogative forms the same way as the auxiliaries (e.g. **may not**, **may I ...?**) apart from "need", "have to" and "dare".

Notes

- 1. **Need** and **dare** are followed by a **bare infinitive** if they are used as **modals**, otherwise they are followed by a **full infinitive**.
e.g. *You needn't come.* or *You don't need to come.*
- 2. **Be able to**, **be allowed to** and **have to** are used to fill in the missing tenses of **can**, **may** (when expressing permission) and **must** respectively.
- 3. **Was able to** is used to refer to a past single action whereas **could** is used to refer to a past repeated action.
e.g. *Although he was tired, he was able to swim to safety.*
When he was young, he could swim well.
- 4. **Have to** expresses external obligation whereas **must** expresses obligation imposed by the speaker.
e.g. *According to the law, all motorcyclists have to wear a helmet when riding their motorcycles.*
I must wear my helmet when I ride my motorcycle or I'll be fined.
(It's my decision to take the risk.)
- 5. **may** expresses possibility whereas **might** increases the doubt.
e.g. *He may come if you ask him to.*
She might come if she has time. (slight possibility)

30 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of "can", "be able to", "must" or "have to".

- 1. One **has to** pass certain exams to be accepted by this college.
- 2. Although the room was full of smoke, he phone the fire brigade.
- 3. If I go by train, I buy a ticket.
- 4. You be careful with electricity.
- 5. As a child he play squash for hours.
- 6. If you want to be a member of the club, you register in time.
- 7. In the end we use all the meat we'd bought so we threw it away.
- 8. She was so short she reach the door handle.
- 9. we really stay so late at the party?
- 10. Our father told us that we be home by 10 p.m.

31 Rewrite the following sentences using the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 1. You have to fill in a form before joining the club. **MUST**
You must fill in a form before joining the club.
- 2. It's not right that children are not allowed to play on the grass. **SHOULD**
.....
- 3. Please turn on the light! **COULD**
.....
- 4. What are we going to do with them when they arrive? **SHALL**
.....
- 5. Do you want to come to dinner with me? **WOULD**
.....

6. It isn't necessary for you to stay any longer.	NEED
7. Is there any possibility of the flight being cancelled?	LIKELY
8. Is it necessary for me to speak to her in person?	HAVE
9. She's such a talented musician. She should have been a professional.	OUGHT
10. Do you believe that he will pass the exam?	LIKELY
11. I don't believe she's an actress; she looks so ordinary.	CAN'T
12. It is necessary for governments to take action against tax evasion.	MUST
13. It wasn't necessary for him to be quite so extravagant but he was.	NEED
14. It's important to brush your teeth regularly.	SHOULD
15. You can attend the meeting if you wish.	MAY
16. Please, answer the door!	WILL
17. I don't believe he's dead. I saw him only yesterday.	CAN'T
18. Please, sit down!	WOULD
19. As a child he had the habit of biting his nails.	USED
20. I don't believe he's only twelve.	CAN'T
21. Mozart was able to compose and play music before he was ten.	COULD
22. Give this message to Mrs Bates, please!	WILL
23. Do you think that she will go away this weekend?	LIKELY
24. There's no need to do the ironing now.	HAVE
25. Do you know how to play the piano?	CAN

► May - Must - Can't

May	(= <i>perhaps</i>)
Must	(= <i>I think, I suppose</i>)
Can't	(= <i>I don't think, I don't suppose</i>)

She **must** be at work.

She **can't** be at home.

She **may** have gone out.

I think she is at work.

I don't think she is at home.

Perhaps she went out.

► Must - Can't - May + Infinitive

Simple Present

Perhaps he **works** as a teacher.

Future

I don't think he **will** win.

Present Continuous

I suppose he **is working** hard.

Future Continuous

Perhaps they **will be playing** tennis.

Simple Past

I don't think he **worked** very hard.

Present Perfect

Perhaps he **has left** work.

Past Continuous

I don't believe she **was working** last week.

Perfect Continuous

I think they **have been living** here a long time.

Present Infinitive

He **may work** as a teacher.

Present Infinitive

He **can't win**.

Present Continuous Infinitive

He **must be working** hard.

Present Continuous Infinitive

They **may be playing** tennis.

Perfect Infinitive

He **can't have worked** very hard.

Perfect Infinitive

He **may have left** work.

Perfect Infinitive

She **can't have been working** last week.

Perfect Continuous Infinitive

They **must have been living** here a long time.

32 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before.

- Perhaps he was feeling tired yesterday.
He **may have been feeling tired yesterday**.
- I don't think he is revising for his test.
He
- I suppose you've already met Charlie.
You
- I'm sure the ferries leave once a day for that island.
The ferries
- Perhaps they decided not to come after all.
They
- I don't think the hostages have been released yet.
The hostages
- Perhaps you'll need some help with that.
You
- I don't think she was sleeping when you called her.
She
- I think she's going abroad.
She
- I suppose he's had a lot of experience in management.
He

► Mustn't - Needn't

Mustn't (= it's forbidden / not allowed)

You **mustn't** smoke in hospitals.

You **are not allowed** to smoke in hospitals.

Needn't (= it's not necessary)

You **needn't** learn it by heart.

It's **not necessary** for you to learn it by heart.

33 Rewrite the following sentences using "mustn't" or "needn't".

1. You are not allowed to overtake on the inside lane.
*You **mustn't** overtake on the inside lane.*
2. It isn't necessary for him to wash up now; he can do it later.
.....
3. He doesn't have to leave until 6 o'clock.
.....
4. It isn't necessary for you to send a taxi to pick me up from the station.
.....
5. Taking photographs in the museum is prohibited.
.....

▶ Didn't Need to - Needn't Have

Didn't need to shows that it wasn't necessary for something to happen and it **didn't happen**.

Needn't have shows that it wasn't necessary for something to happen but it **did happen**.

*He **didn't need to** go to work on Sunday.*

It wasn't necessary for him to go to work because it was Sunday.

*She **needn't have** bought so many eggs.*

It wasn't necessary for her to buy as many eggs as she did.

34 Rewrite the following sentences using "didn't need to" or "needn't have".

1. It wasn't necessary for Paul to have studied for so many hours because the exam was cancelled.
*Paul **needn't have** studied for so many hours.*
2. It wasn't necessary for mother to cook as we had been invited out to dinner.
.....
3. It wasn't necessary for Andrew to take so much money on holiday as he did.
.....
4. It was unnecessary for him to have got so angry yesterday; it was only a joke after all.
.....
5. It wasn't necessary for Mr Jones to collect his wife because his son said he would do it.
.....

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Perhaps she is abroad.</i>
<i>She may be abroad.</i> | 8. <i>It is certain that she (has) attended the ceremony.</i>
<i>She is certain to have attended the ceremony.</i>
<i>She must have attended the ceremony.</i> |
| 2. <i>Perhaps she wasn't taking a bath.</i>
<i>She may not have been taking a bath.</i> | 9. <i>I must reject this plan.</i>
<i>I have no option but to reject this plan.</i>
<i>I will have to reject this plan.</i> |
| 3. <i>Perhaps he has been/was studying.</i>
<i>He may have been studying.</i> | 10. <i>I don't think she'll pass the test.</i>
<i>She can't pass the test.</i> |
| 4. <i>I think she has lost her way.</i>
<i>She must have lost her way.</i> | 11. <i>I'm sure he isn't lying to us.</i>
<i>He can't be lying to us.</i> |
| 5. <i>I suppose he has left Austria.</i>
<i>He must have left Austria.</i> | 12. <i>It wasn't necessary for you to buy so many roses as you did.</i>
<i>You needn't have bought so many roses.</i> |
| 6. <i>I think he was in Germany.</i>
<i>He must have been in Germany.</i> | 13. <i>Was it necessary for her to behave like that?</i>
<i>Did she need/have to behave like that?</i> |
| 7. <i>It is certain that he'll fail.</i>
<i>He is bound to fail.</i> | |

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>14. It wasn't necessary for me to walk to work as he gave me a lift.
I didn't need to walk to work as he gave me a lift.</p> <p>15. There's no need to correct the tests today.
Don't bother to correct the tests today.
It isn't necessary to correct the tests today.
You needn't correct the tests today.
You don't need to correct the tests today.</p> <p>16. He isn't obliged to tell you the truth.
He needn't tell you the truth.
He doesn't need/have to tell you the truth.</p> <p>17. It is important for you to learn to drive.
You need/have to learn to drive.</p> <p>18. Are tests compulsory at this school?
Do you have to take tests at this school?</p> <p>19. Senior students don't have to take tests.
It's optional for senior students to take tests.</p> <p>20. It is against the rules to write your answers in ink.
You mustn't write your answers in ink.</p> <p>21. It is forbidden to smoke in most public places.
You mustn't smoke in most public places.</p> <p>22. He couldn't go out because it was raining.
The rain prevented him from going out.</p> <p>23. It is advisable to speak politely to your teachers.
You should speak politely to your teachers.
You had better speak politely to your teachers.</p> <p>24. It would be a good idea to go on a diet.
You had better go on a diet.
You should/ought to go on a diet.
It is advisable to go on a diet.</p> | <p>25. Why didn't you consult your lawyer?
You should have consulted your lawyer.</p> <p>26. Let's work out the details.
Shall we work out the details?
Why don't we work out the details?</p> <p>27. Shall I help you with the dishes?
Would you like me to help you with the dishes?</p> <p>28. Could you come on Monday?
Would Monday be convenient for you to come?
How does coming on Monday suit you?</p> <p>29. May I borrow your car?
Do you mind if I borrow your car?
Would you mind if I borrowed your car?
Could I borrow your car, please?</p> <p>30. Would you like to open a bank account?
Would it interest you to open a bank account?
Would you be interested in opening a bank account?
How would you feel about opening a bank account?</p> <p>31. She is unlikely to pass her exams.
It is unlikely/not likely that she'll pass her exams.
There's little likelihood/possibility of her passing her exams.
It's doubtful whether she'll pass her exams.</p> <p>32. He is likely to win the prize.
It is likely that he will win the prize.
It is very possible that he will win the prize.
He could certainly win the prize.
There is every likelihood that he will win the prize.</p> |
|--|--|

35 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

- Let's review what we've done so far.
Shall **we review what we've done so far?**
- I'm sure it wasn't his fault.
It
- Shall I tell you my opinion?
Would
- He is unlikely to be promoted.
There
- It is forbidden to enter that room without permission.
You
- Is it likely that he will return this afternoon?
Is he
- They couldn't understand the message because of the interference on the radio.
The interference
- Perhaps she has forgotten about the meeting.
She

9. I suppose my mother left this message.
My mother
10. You should have signed this form at the bottom.
Why
11. Did you need to spend so much money?
Was
12. He is certain to have noticed our absence by now.
He
13. You need to be more careful.
You
14. Could he have been telling the truth?
Is it
15. You mustn't play ball games inside the school.
It is
16. I suppose she has seen the newspaper today.
She
17. It wasn't necessary for you to apologise. After all, it wasn't your fault.
You
18. Perhaps they have made alternative arrangements.
They
19. How does Saturday suit you?
Would
20. How do you feel about going on an excursion?
Would
21. Was it necessary to invite so many people?
Did
22. I don't think we're near the village yet.
We
23. It is very possible that he'll pass his tests.
There is every
24. You'd better consult the map.
You
25. Could we meet on Friday?
Would Friday
26. It is certain that the ship will arrive at 7 o'clock.
The ship is

36 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising modals.

1. He **must be quick** or he'll miss his appointment.
2. You you couldn't come; I waited for ages.
3. If it snows, we skiing.
4. He on time, but I doubt it.
5. This room; look at the state of the walls.
6. She; she looks exhausted this morning.
7. We jogging in order to improve our stamina.
8. He at the cinema that evening, although no one is quite sure.
9. You me a present; you could have just sent a card.
10. We to the bank after all; we had enough cash.
11. You all night. I didn't think you'd finish the work in time!
12. Do we or have you got enough to feed everyone?
13. You me; I can do it alone.
14. They here by now; I wonder what's happened.
15. the pleasure of this dance, madam?

- 37** For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. You needn't clean up now.
NECESSARY
.....
2. May I borrow your typewriter?
MIND
.....
3. You mustn't ride motorbikes in the park.
FORBIDDEN
.....
4. They couldn't go to the Middle East because of the war.
PREVENTED
.....
5. Shall we eat now?
WHY
.....
6. You should be careful what you say to him.
ADVISABLE
.....
7. Perhaps it wasn't John who rang.
MAY
.....
8. We don't have to go to the party.
OBLIGED
.....
9. You ought to phone the manager tonight.
IDEA
.....
10. Would you like to go out with us?
INTEREST
.....
11. Why didn't you let me know you were coming?
SHOULD
.....
12. He must have heard the news by now.
CERTAIN
.....
13. He may not be at home.
PERHAPS
.....
14. They aren't likely to come with us.
WILL
.....
15. You mustn't open your book once the test has started.
RULES
.....

Consolidation 2

38 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

Until half a century (1), the basic physical structure you were born with was, (2) you suffered an accident, the one you died with. Apart (3) normal wear and tear or the possibility of a broken nose or other disfigurement, you (4) not expect to change your appearance drastically.

However, people have not always been (5) with their lot. Fortunes have been (6) by selling corsets, wigs and miraculous wrinkle removers. Magazines have been full of (7) on how to disguise the shape of your face by (8) blushers and foundations (9) the day these products were invented.

Then fresh hope appeared in the (10) of cosmetic surgery. Although general practitioners warn their patients not to (11) their lives to be transformed when they (12) their noses remodelled or their ears tucked back, nevertheless there is a constant supply (13) willing victims streaming (14) the plush clinics of the knife-wielders.

It is the people in the public (15) who normally have the most drastic changes made. However, many ordinary people dream of looking dramatically (16), save for years to (17) their dream come true, and are willing to (18) up with the inevitable swelling, scarring and black eyes. While some people sell stories to the tabloid press about (19) their lives have changed, many others are sadly (20) with the results.

Phrasal Verbs 1

39 Match the phrasal verbs in bold italics with the definitions given.

1. The prisoner **broke away** from his captors in a bid for freedom.
2. I wish you wouldn't keep **breaking in** while I'm speaking.
3. The two countries **have broken off** diplomatic relations.
4. War in the Falklands **broke out** in the early 1980's.
5. The car **broke down** just as we were leaving the house.
6. Burglars **broke in** while we were away and stole all our jewels.
7. When accused she **broke down** and confessed her guilt.
8. After centuries Parliament **broke with** tradition and elected a lady speaker.
9. Scientists **are breaking through** in the fight against AIDS.
10. Since they did nothing but quarrel they decided to **break up**.

- A. to end sth suddenly
- B. to fail to function
- C. to enter a building by force
- D. to end a relationship
- E. to escape from
- F. to make a discovery
- G. to give up sth
- H. to start suddenly (of violent events)
- I. to lose control of feelings
- J. to interrupt

1. **E** 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

What other meanings can you find for the following? a) **break down**, b) **break out**, c) **break up**.

Phrasal Verbs 2

40 Replace the words in bold italics with one of the phrasal verbs in the correct form from the box below:

break through, bear out, blink at, blow up, bank on,
brush up, blow over, become of, build up, book up

1. What **has happened to** John? I haven't seen him for ages.
2. He didn't even **show surprise at** his daughter's punk hairstyle.

has become of
.....

Consolidation 2

- 3. He may come tomorrow but don't **depend on** it.
- 4. Their disagreement about where to spend their holidays soon **stopped**.
- 5. The tables in that restaurant were **all reserved** so we went to another.
- 6. I accept your excuse. His statement **supports the truth of** your story.
- 7. Fortunately no one was in the car when it **exploded**.
- 8. I must **improve** my Italian before going to that meeting in Rome.
- 9. After days of rain the sun finally **appeared** from behind the clouds.
- 10. Over the years he **has collected** an impressive collection of artifacts from all over the world.

What's the difference between **burn down** and **burn up**?

Idioms 1

41 Match the idioms with the definitions.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. black and blue all over | A. fed up | 1. F |
| 2. behind bars | B. very lively | 2. |
| 3. full of beans | C. sudden clever idea | 3. |
| 4. drop a brick | D. show neither loss nor profit | 4. |
| 5. browned off | E. be very expensive | 5. |
| 6. a brainwave | F. covered with bruises | 6. |
| 7. out of the blue | G. suddenly and unexpectedly | 7. |
| 8. break even | H. in prison | 8. |
| 9. cost a bomb | I. on the whole | 9. |
| 10. by and large | J. do / say sth tactless | 10. |

Idioms 2

42 Look at Appendix 2 and explain the following idioms in bold italics.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. He killed her in cold blood simply to get her money. | 13. Our neighbour is very old and ill. He's going to kick the bucket soon. |
| 2. Stop beating about/around the bush! Come to the point. | 14. He's always playing practical jokes on us; we have to get our own back . |
| 3. You should take the bull by the horns . Don't wait any longer. | 15. Being fired from my job was a blessing in disguise as I soon found a better one. |
| 4. The name rings a bell but I can't remember who she is. | 16. My parents' attitude towards me makes my blood boil . |
| 5. The scandal was laid bare by an ambitious journalist. | 17. It's going to rain; I feel it in my bones . |
| 6. Tom is mother's blue-eyed boy . She likes him a lot. | 18. That's the wrong person to ask; you are barking up the wrong tree . |
| 7. His life was hanging in the balance . We didn't know if he would live or die. | 19. Butter the boss up before asking for a rise. |
| 8. I'm afraid I'm broke . I can't lend you any money. | 20. Don't hold your breath waiting for him; he'll never show up now. |
| 9. Being the school bully, he was in the teachers' black books . | 21. The thief was caught red-handed while he was trying to open the safe. |
| 10. The criminal decided to make a clean breast of it . | 22. John's injury dealt a blow to his hopes of getting onto the Olympic swimming team. |
| 11. The bad news came as a bolt from the blue . | 23. He has his faults but by and large he's a good worker. |
| 12. Your ideas must be set out in black and white so that everyone can understand them. | 24. We were relieved to see the back of our houseguests because they never stop complaining about trivial matters. |

Idioms 3

43 What sort of person would you describe as

- a) a chip off the old block?
- b) a wet blanket?
- c) big headed?
- d) above board?

Prepositions

44 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- Please take care *of* your sister while I'm out.
- Your story is consistent our reports.
- Does this record belong anyone?
- The gunman aimed the policeman and then fired.
- My husband was agreeable my plans for a summer holiday.
- You're very careless not locking the house; anyone could walk in.
- She was bored the tedious conversation and wanted to go home.
- If you concentrated more your school work, your grades would improve.
- My mother is confined a wheelchair and doesn't go out very much.
- She didn't like flying and was apprehensive making the journey alone.
- If you can bear me a little longer, I'll give you all the information at once.
- You have no choice the matter. You have to do what he says.

45 Look at Appendix 3 and choose the best alternative.

- Did you notice the "*for sale* / *on sale*" sign outside the house next door?
- There's no point trying to talk to Stuart; he's totally *absorbed by* / *absorbed in* that magazine.
- He was arrested at the airport for being *in possession of* / *in the possession of* a dangerous weapon.
- The director of the firm received an anonymous letter, warning him not to *meddle with* / *meddle in* other people's business.
- As soon as the leopard came *in sight* / *on sight*, the hunter raised his rifle and shot.
- This letter is to *advise you of* / *advise you on* the fact that your overdraft currently stands at £64.35.
- Some people believe that the end of the world is *at hand* / *in hand*.
- The most upsetting part of her relationship with her parents was that they rarely *supported her with* / *supported her in* her decisions.
- Even though they knew each other *on sight* / *by sight* they never exchanged words.
- When the magician was asked the secret of his trick, he *responded with* / *responded to* a smile.

46 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

- His father was very angry with him when he heard he had damaged the car.
BLEW

- His speech was so confusing that nobody got anything out of it.
BAFFLED

- My best friend's birthday is on the longest day of the year.
COINCIDES

Consolidation 2

- 4. Some children treat their pets badly.
CRUEL
- 5. I bought a new jacket without having planned to.
SPUR
- 6. His views on religion aren't the same as mine.
DIFFERENT
- 7. Winning the lottery has definitely had its good and bad points.
BLESSING
- 8. He's a pleasant man socially but he is a tough businessman.
BARGAIN
- 9. He has an obsession about the dishonesty of lawyers.
BEE
- 10. The young actress was very nervous before the audition.
BUTTERFLIES

47 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes **in case it gets** cold.

- 1. If you have this matter, I think you should tell the police.
- 2. It three days to paint my flat.
- 3. A: Did you pay a lot for your new bicycle?
B: No, it only £100.
- 4. I wish David guitar so loudly. I can't sleep.
- 5. Congratulations promotion.
- 6. Don't tell me what to do. It's none
- 7. The more we walked, ... we became.
- 8. Despite French, he was able to make himself understood.
- 9. It's going to rain. You a raincoat.
- 10. It isn't worth her. She won't turn up.

48 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. She studied French with the aim to ~~become~~ a bilingual secretary.
- 2. She's an alive child and popular with everybody.
- 3. He appreciates all the different kinds of music.
- 4. We all were devastated by the news of his death.
- 5. She was adopted by her aunt when all her parents were killed in an accident.
- 6. All the building had to be evacuated.
- 7. I haven't done it already.
- 8. Although I tried several times, but I couldn't contact him.
- 9. Although his grief, he put on a brave face.
- 10. He piled the files on the desk, as he wasn't all together sure what to do with them.
- 11. She detested him more than always when she discovered his deceitfulness.
- 12. She has many and keen admirers.
- 13. I don't have the time and the money to go on holiday this year.

of becoming

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

14. Although she's engaged she often goes out with another man.
15. Money could be the answer of all our problems.
16. The cat was curled up on a big armchair.
17. He was laughing as a hyaena.
18. As I can remember, he rejected your previous proposal.
19. I'll tell him as soon as I will see him.
20. He worked in a factory all day as well as worked in a bar in the evening.
21. The man put off his hat and sat down.
22. We stopped to drive and had a drink at a cafe.
23. Please remember me to phone Martin later.
24. As soon as I've finished making the housework I'll call you.
25. Julie prefers science than art.

[illegible]

49 Match the phrases and explain the proverbs.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Too many cooks | A. is worth two in the bush. | 1. <i>F</i> |
| 2. A stitch in time | B. has a silver lining. | 2. |
| 3. A bird in the hand | C. louder than words. | 3. |
| 4. Too many chiefs | D. catches the worm. | 4. |
| 5. The early bird | E. but it pours. | 5. |
| 6. Make hay | F. spoil the broth. | 6. |
| 7. Every cloud | G. and not enough Indians. | 7. |
| 8. It never rains | H. crying over spilt milk. | 8. |
| 9. There's no use | I. while the sun shines. | 9. |
| 10. Actions speak | J. saves nine. | 10. |

50 In most lines of the following text there is a grammatically incorrect item. Read the numbered lines 1 - 13 and then write the correct form in the spaces provided for your answers. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (✓). The first one has been done for you.

	Answers
1. Of the many unexplained phenomena which continue to puzzle	✓
2. scientists and laymen like, the corn circles of Southern England remain	
3. one of the most mysterious. These perfectly-formed circles, who, when they	
4. see from the air appear to have been inscribed with an enormous	
5. carving tool, have seemed to be part of a significant message;	
6. so far, however, nobody managed to decipher it, and it is doubtful	
7. if anyone will ever be able to. But the main question - how the circles	
8. come to be there - is just as far from being solved. Although several	
9. people had come forward claiming to have made the circles themselves,	
10. scientists declare that it would be impossible for even a large group	
11. to create shapes of such precision on so a large scale. These circles	
12. become one of the strongest arguments in support of the existence of	
13. intelligent extra-terrestrial life forms.	

- 51 This is a detective's preliminary report concerning a robbery at the museum. Read it and complete the following press-release using no more than two words for each blank. The words you need do not occur in the detective's report. The first one has been done for you.

I arrived at the museum at 10 p.m. I'm sure the robbery had happened twenty minutes earlier. There were no fingerprints on anything, but I found some evidence: two bullets on the floor. Two of the most valuable paintings were missing - whoever took them knew something before the time of the robbery. At first I suspected James Smith, but he's in jail. It's possible that one of the customers from the pub across the road saw something. It is important that any witnesses come forward, the sooner the better. Callers' identities will be kept confidential.

The museum robbery must have (1) **taken place** at 9.40 p.m. The robbers (2) gloves as no fingerprints (3) on anything left at the (4) of the crime. Evidence (5) that the robbers (6) a gun. The robbers (7) knowledgeable about art, because the paintings which (8) taken are of very high (9) James Smith, who was an immediate (10) (11) been involved as he was in police (12) at the time of the robbery. One of the customers from a nearby pub (13) witnessed the crime. Any witnesses (14) in touch with Westford Police station as soon as possible. All calls will be treated in the strictest (15)

Word usage

- 52 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- Ann's injuries took a long time to **heal** completely and she is now left with several scars. (cure, remedy, **heal**, treat)
- The meat was so that it almost melted in the mouth. (slim, **lean**, skinny, slender)
- By the time they found him, he had been dead for several weeks and had quite badly. (**decayed**, rotted, wasted, decomposed)
- I'm used to being woken in the morning by the birds outside my window. (**snarling**, howling, bleating, twittering)
- After a military trial, the soldier was for desertion. (**assassinated**, slaughtered, executed, massacred)
- We put some of bread every day out for the birds. (**chunks**, crumbs, cubes, chops)
- The ingredients included cheese for the topping. (**diced**, shredded, minced, grated)
- This is a good hair dye but the colour gradually after a few weeks. (**fades**, vanishes, disappears, pales)
- It was impossible for me to make a decision, so I a coin. (**tossed**, threw, hurled, cast)
- The picture looked very impressive but in fact it had been from another. (**imitated**, copied, emulated, faked)

- 53 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

flout	imitate	exterminate	concede	interrupt
devour	crop	raze	squirm	heal

- 1) to **squirm** with embarrassment. 2) to a defeat. 3) to a meal.
 4) to a city. 5) to the grass. 6) to a race of people.
 7) to a speech. 8) to the law. 9) to sb's behaviour.
 10) to a wound.

Practice Test Two

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only *one* word in each space.

One of the (1) problems with holidays, (2) from the usual travel complications and accommodation difficulties, (3) the expectations people have of (4) When we go on holiday we expect to leave all the stresses and strains of our (5) lives behind us. We imagine we will be (6) to escape to such a (7) that we even tend to believe, consciously or not, that we can leave our (8) personalities behind and become completely different people. The (9) business-person, tense, preoccupied, short-tempered, (10) to relax, envisages herself/himself becoming, from the moment of locking the office door, a radically different (11) of person: carefree, good-humoured, ready to relax and enjoy whatever adventures present themselves. (12) practice, we take ourselves with us (13) we go, and the personality that is (14) over years of stress and tension is almost impossible to shake off at a moment's (15) It is no wonder so many holidays are a disappointment, no (16) how smoothly they go or how lovely the weather is. In (17) , the innumerable problems that (18) up during the average holiday are probably a welcome (19) from the nagging feeling that we are not enjoying ourselves as much (20) we should.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means *exactly the same* as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever *she tells them, her parents don't believe her.*

- a. As he gets richer, he spends less money.
The richer
- b. Jane didn't study, and this led to her failure.
Jane's failure
- c. Whales are rarely seen at this time of year.
There are
- d. It is open to question whether the candidate will succeed.
It is not
- e. Everyone left as soon as she started singing.
No sooner
- f. A car like that will cost us at least £20,000.
We won't be able
- g. My story has been rejected.
I have received
- h. My teacher assured me that I would pass the exam.
According

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

- 1. I didn't see who took my bag as my back
 - 2. He is not used his ideas rejected.
 - 3. We don't know to get lost when he had a map.
 - 4. She didn't want any problems so she made the arrangements herself.
 - 5. I wish the children that story - now they're having nightmares.
 - 6. I apologise made you wait - I couldn't get here sooner.
4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. I'm sure I was right to turn down the job. | REGRETS |
| | |
| 2. You'll probably hear from them before Friday. | LIKELY |
| | |
| 3. Joe thinks he is always right. | MISTAKES |
| | |
| 4. We have decided to go to Crete for the summer. | INTENTION |
| | |
| 5. The meeting was held in the Town Hall. | TOOK |
| | |
| 6. It was stupid of you to give up English. | IDIOT |
| | |
| 7. They managed to buy the house only because we lent them the money. | WITHOUT |
| | |
| 8. The only reason I came was to see you. | SOLE |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Rings, generally made of precious metal, may be simply a piece of more important jewellery or a symbol of duty or authority. Among some races rings are also worn on the ears or lips, and in both cases the soft flesh is usually pierced. In Western society the custom of wearing earrings still persists. The lobe of the ear may be pierced, or the ornament can be held in place by the pressure of both ends of an opened ring on the lobe.

As a form of ornament rings are of great antiquity. They were well known among the Egyptians, the Greeks and the Romans (where it was the privilege of citizens alone to wear an iron ring). From Egyptian times onwards the berel (or top surface of the ring) has been decorated with precious stones or engraved with a device which may be used as a seal. The symbolic meaning of rings was taken over by the Medieval Church, and the tradition still survives in the episcopal ranks of the Roman and Anglican Churches. There the ring symbolizes the marriage of the individual to the Church and to Christ, as it does in some orders of nuns. This symbolic overtone gave rise to some of the theoretical arguments in the investiture controversy of the 11th century when the Pope objected to rulers who

held no spiritual authority investing a bishop with the ring and staff as a sign of pastoral office. The ceremony suggested that the laity were thus able to confer spiritual functions. As a token of betrothal the ring has, of course, survived in the West to indicate an engagement or marriage.

It was also common practice in the later Middle Ages for the king of England to authenticate less important documents and instructions by using his signet ring. This became a state seal, but of minor importance, and gave rise to the office of "keeper of the signet". The doges of Venice from early times participated in a ceremony of casting a ring into the Adriatic to symbolize the marriage of the Republic to the Sea. Some of the most fascinating rings are those of the Renaissance in which a hidden or retractable spike, covered in poison, could be used to get rid of an enemy with a mere handshake.

1. According to the passage, what are the two main purposes of rings?
2. What is the "lobe" of the ear? (line 4)
3. What significance did iron rings have in Roman times?
4. What function can the berel have?
5. What part is played by rings in Roman and Anglican churches?
6. In the 11th century, what objection did the Pope have to rings?
7. Give an alternative expression to the word "laity". (line 15)
8. What significance do rings still have in the West?
9. How did the office of "keeper of the signet" come about? (line 19)
10. Give another word or phrase for "authenticate". (line 17)
11. How was the ring used in Venice?
12. Explain the unusual use of rings in the Renaissance.
13. What does the word "retractable" mean? (line 22)
14. Summarize in not more than 80 words the non-church use of rings as explained in the passage.

Infinitive - Gerund

► Tenses of the Infinitive

Active Voice			Passive Voice	
	Regular verb	Irregular verb	Regular verb	Irregular verb
Present	(to) cook	(to) write	(to) be cooked	(to) be written
Present Con.	(to) be cooking	(to) be writing	— — —	— — —
Perfect	(to) have cooked	(to) have written	(to) have been cooked	(to) have been written
Perfect Con.	(to) have been cooking	(to) have been writing	— — —	— — —

Full Infinitive is used

1. with certain verbs

advise, afford, agree, allow sb, appear, be allowed, compel, decide, encourage, expect, hope, intend, invite, manage, pretend, proceed, promise, refuse, remind, seem, tell, tend, etc.

*He **advised me to take** a rest.*

2. with certain adjectives

amazed, angry, delighted, difficult, disgusted, easy, first, glad, happy, last, likely, obliged, sad, sorry, supposed, surprised, unable, etc.

*I was **glad to hear** he had been promoted to manager.*

3. with impersonal construction + adjective

*It was **nice of him to send** you roses.*

4. with **only** (unsatisfactory result)

*He phoned **only to say** that he wouldn't be coming.*

5. at the beginning of a sentence in expressions such as: **to tell you the truth**, **to cut a long story short**, **to be honest / fair** etc.

***To tell you the truth**, I haven't seen him since Monday.*

6. after nouns

*It's a **pleasure to see** you.*

7. after question words ("who", "where", "what" etc.)

*I don't know **what to do**.*

Bare Infinitive is used

1. with **modals** (can / could, may / might, shall / should, must, will / would)

*He **can go** if he wants to.*

2. with **need, dare** (as auxiliary verbs)

*You **needn't work** today.
I **daren't talk** to him.*

Notes

a. **Dare** expressing **courage or lack of courage** can be followed by **bare** or **full infinitive**.

*I **don't dare (to) tell** her the truth.
He **dared (to) attempt** it again.*

b. **Dare** expressing **threats, warning, anger** etc. is followed by **bare infinitive**.

***Don't you dare lie** to me again!
How **dare** you **speak** to me like that!*

c. **Dare** expressing **challenge** is followed by **full infinitive**.

*I **dare you to climb** up that tree.*

3. with **had better/would rather/would sooner**

*You'd **better go** to bed.*

4. with **make, let, see, hear, smell, feel, watch, notice** (in Active Voice)

*He **let me watch** TV.*

Note

notice, make, see, hear, feel, watch in Passive Voice are followed by **tull infinitive**.
*The baby was **made to eat** all his soup.*

5. after **why not**

***Why not meet** again some day?
(Why don't we meet ...)*

Notes

too + adj/adverb + full infinitive	He is too young to get married .
adj / adverb + enough + full infinitive	He isn't old enough to get married .
enough + noun + full infinitive	He's got enough money to get by .
so + adjective + as + full infinitive	She was so gullible as to believe his story .

54 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the infinitive.

- Will you remind me **to cancel** (cancel) the meeting next week?
- Don't you dare (touch) that vase!
- He is said (work) for many months on this project.
- The prisoner claims that the police made him (sign) the confession.
- Hooligans are said (smash) several shop windows during the riot.
- The children really should (go) to bed by now.
- Apparently criminals tend (return) to the scene of the crime.
- You ought (study) for your exam now. Why aren't you?
- This play is thought (write) by Christopher Marlowe, not Shakespeare.
- Several factors need (consider) before we make a decision.

Infinitive and Present Participle with verbs of perception and other phrases

see hear listen watch	+ bare infinitive (complete action)	a.g. I saw her lock the car and put the key in her bag.
	+ present participle (incomplete action/ action in progress)	a.g. I saw her walking down the street.
go, come (when used to refer to physical activities)	+ present participle	a.g. He went skiing last winter.
spend / waste time		a.g. He spent an hour fixing the tap.
be busy		a.g. He was busy cleaning the car.

55 Put the verbs in brackets into the bare infinitive or the present participle.

- John has gone **walking** (walk) in the hills.
- The assistant saw the woman (put) the necklace in her bag and (leave).
- We spent three weeks (decorate) the house before we could move in.
- He heard the clock (strike) one before he went to bed.
- My son enjoys going to the airport to watch the planes (take off) and (land).
- I'll be busy (clean) the house at the weekend.
- I heard someone (open) the door and (slam) it behind them. Who could it be?
- Why have you wasted half an hour (talk) instead of finishing the work?
- The neighbours saw smoke (pour) out of the house and called the fire brigade.
- He watched her (get) on the train and then he left.
- Frank asked me if I wanted to go (swim).
- She heard someone (break) a plate in the flat above.
- I felt the dog (bite) me twice before it ran away.
- "Come (dance)" used to be a popular TV programme.
- No one saw him (steal) the car so he was acquitted.

Tenses of the Gerund

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	cutting	being cut
Perfect	having cut	having been cut

The -ing form is used after

prepositions	+ -ing form
detest, dislike, enjoy, hate, like, loathe, love, prefer, resent (hate, like, love, prefer when used in the conditional are followed by full infinitive)	
begin, cease, continue, finish, start, stop (Note: these verbs, except stop and finish, can also be followed by an infinitive with no difference in meaning.)	
it's no use/good; it's (not) worth; there's no point (in); feel like; can't stand; can't help; be/get used to; be/get accustomed to; have difficulty (in); in favour of admit, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, consider, defer, delay, deny, detest, endure, entail, escape, envisage, evade, fancy, forgive, imagine, incur, involve, keep, look forward to, mention, mind, miss, pardon, postpone, practise, prevent, recall, recollect, report, risk, save, shirk, stand, suggest, understand etc.	

Verbs taking Infinitive or Gerund without a change in meaning

1. begin, start, continue, cease, commence, omit	e.g. He continued listening to the radio. He continued to listen to the radio.
2. advise, allow, permit, recommend, intend followed by an object take a full Infinitive whereas they take a gerund when not followed by an object. (intend can also take a gerund whether the object is mentioned or not)	e.g. He allowed us to eat in the classroom. He allowed eating in the classroom. He recommended us to take plenty of exercise. He recommended taking plenty of exercise.
3. it needs / requires / wants can be followed by a gerund or by a passive infinitive	e.g. The car needs servicing/to be serviced.
4. can't / couldn't bear	e.g. I can't bear telling people bad news. (general) I can't bear to tell him the bad news. (specific)

56 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of infinitive or gerund.

1. The police allowed him **to leave** (leave) after he had made a statement.
2. The doctor recommended (follow) a diet of fresh fruit and vegetables.
3. She's a really bad sport; she can't bear (lose).
4. I don't mind (help) you with your homework.
5. This room needs (tidy) before we can use it.
6. He omitted (tell) us about the meeting.
7. Jane started (have) bad dreams when she was six.
8. She recommended us (take) the short cut through the woods.

Verbs taking Infinitive or Gerund with a change in meaning

1. **forget + to-infinitive** = not remember (future action)
Don't forget to visit the museum.
forget + gerund = not to recall (past action)
I'll never forget visiting that museum.
2. **go on + to-infinitive** = stop one action and start another
They first discussed the items on the agenda and went on to discuss the budget.
go on + gerund = continue
He went on playing the piano in spite of the neighbours' complaints.
3. **like + to-infinitive** = find sth good to do
I like to go to the market very early in the morning so that I can pick out the best vegetables.
like + gerund = enjoy
I like swimming; it's my favourite pastime.
would like to + infinitive = want to
I would like to meet your friend; he sounds interesting.
4. **mean + to-infinitive** = intend to
She means to discuss the matter with the headmaster.
mean + gerund = involve
It means changing the original plans.
5. **propose + to-infinitive** = intend
I propose to complain about his behaviour.
propose + gerund = suggest
I propose trying that new Chinese restaurant.
6. **regret + to-infinitive** = be sorry to
I regret to inform you that your application has been rejected.
regret + gerund = feel sorry about (past action)
I regret buying this car because it is always breaking down.
7. **remember + to-infinitive** = not forget (future action)
Remember to lock the door before you leave the house.
remember + gerund = recall (past action)
She remembers locking the door before leaving the house.
8. **try + to-infinitive** = attempt
We tried to persuade him not to go, but he wouldn't listen.
try + gerund = do as an experiment
They tried advertising their business in the local newspaper.
9. **stop + to-infinitive** = stop temporarily, pause
They stopped to admire the view as they drove along the mountain road.
stop + gerund = finish, stop permanently
They stopped talking when the teacher came into the class.
10. **(be) understood + to-infinitive** = give the impression
He is understood to agree that negotiations are necessary.
understand + gerund = to understand sb else's feelings or actions.
I can understand his feeling angry about their decision.
11. **want + to-infinitive** = wish
I want to extend my visa.
want + gerund = to need sth done
The battery's flat; it wants recharging.
12. **dread + to-infinitive** = be afraid (specific)
I dread to think how much he may suffer.
dread + gerund = to fear greatly (general)
I dread going to the doctor.
13. **hate + to-infinitive** = hate what one is about to do
I hate to interrupt you but I need some help.
hate + gerund = to feel sorry for what one is doing
I hate causing you inconvenience.
14. **be sorry + to-infinitive** = regret
I am sorry to hear of his illness.
be sorry for + gerund = apologise
I am sorry for shouting at you.

Notes

1. be afraid to + infinitive (the subject is too frightened to do) be afraid of + gerund (the subject fears that the action expressed by the gerund may happen)	e.g. She was afraid to drive the car. She didn't want to drive the car; she was afraid of causing an accident.
2. be ashamed to + infinitive (the infinitive refers to a subsequent action) be ashamed of + gerund (the gerund refers to a present or previous action)	e.g. She was ashamed to admit that she had lied. She's ashamed of lying , and swears she'll never do it again.
3. would prefer to + infinitive (specific action) prefer + gerund (in general)	e.g. I would prefer to be left alone just now. I prefer swimming to running .

57 Put the verbs in brackets into the “-ing” form or infinitive (full or bare) adding any necessary words.

- The board members went on **to discuss** (discuss) the next item on the agenda.
- If you don't stop (make) that noise, I'll send you outside.
- I would like to propose (discontinue) this line of equipment since it is selling so badly.
- She was sorry (inform) us of the bad news.
- Let's try (mix) these two ingredients and see what happens.
- They don't really like (eat) in restaurants.
- Generally I prefer (go) to the cinema to (watch) films on TV.
- She was ashamed (tell) her parents that she had used up all the money in her account.
- He dressed very warmly as he was afraid (catch) a cold.
- I'm sure he didn't mean (cause) us all this trouble.

58 Put the verbs in brackets into the “-ing” form or infinitive (full or bare).

- They intend **to invest** (invest) most of their money in a new business.
- Much as I dislike my neighbour, I couldn't help (feel) sorry for him.
- She put out one cigarette and went on (light) another.
- I once tried (bake) my own bread but it was a disaster.
- I dread (think) what has happened to Mike - he's over two hours late.
- If you don't stop (worry), you'll make yourself ill.
- Do you remember (meet) your husband for the first time?
- Installing new computers in the office will involve (retrain) the staff.
- He was made (confess).
- My father was a proud man and ashamed (ask) for charity.
- Would you prefer (think) about the offer and telephone us next week?
- The driver was going so fast that he couldn't avoid (hit) the stray cat.

59 Put the verbs in brackets into the “-ing” form or infinitive (full or bare).

If you are considering (1) **taking** (take) a trip to the countryside this weekend, why not (2) (book) one of the excursions offered by Exotours? You'll be surprised (3) (find) how many different trips we offer and we promise (4) (give) you value for money. In fact you can't afford (5) (not/take) advantage of our special offer. You deserve (6) (give) yourself a treat and once you've had a look through our brochure, you won't be able (7) (resist) (8) (choose) at least one of our trips to some beautiful part of the country. We recommend (9) (book) early (10) (avoid) disappointment.

60 Put the verbs in brackets into the “-ing” form or infinitive (full or bare).

Although I love (1) **eating** (eat) at restaurants, I remember (2) (go) to one particular place which was just about bad enough (3) (put) me off them for life! We were driving home on a wintry day and stopped in a small village (4) (get) some petrol. We decided (5) (have) something (6) (eat); at the same time we began (7) (look) for somewhere (8) (park). Unfortunately we had (9) (leave) the car so far from the village square that it meant (10) (walk) for at least ten minutes. However, after a couple of minutes we were lucky enough (11) (notice) a pub advertising bar meals. Too cold (12) (go) any further, we made up our minds (13) (try) it out.

61 Put the verbs in brackets into the “-ing” form or infinitive (full or bare).

The mystery of the Loch Ness Monster continues (1) **to fascinate/fascinating** (fascinate) scores of tourists every year, who come to Scotland in the hope of (2) (capture) on film some proof that the monster exists. Literally hundreds of people have reported seeing strange shapes in the waters of Loch Ness, but the majority have turned out (3) (be) hoaxes. A new scientific investigation is scheduled (4) (begin) next month and researchers hope (5) (reveal) whether the story has any truth in it. However, if the results mean (6) (announce) to the world that there is no “Nessie”, will people cease (7) (visit) one of Britain’s leading tourist attractions? Perhaps it would be better (8) (not/know) and risk (9) (remain) ignorant of the truth in the interest of (10) (maintain) an international mystery.

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Driving fast is dangerous.
<i>It is dangerous to drive fast.</i> | 9. Do you intend to go / going to her party, tomorrow?
<i>Will you be going to her party tomorrow?</i>
<i>Are you thinking of going to her party tomorrow?</i> |
| 2. She is too young to get married.
<i>She isn't old enough to get married.</i> | 10. It's out of the question to expect me to apologise.
<i>I have no intention of apologising.</i>
<i>Fancy even suggesting that I apologise!</i>
<i>I don't mean/intend to apologise.</i>
<i>I most certainly won't apologise.</i> |
| 3. He couldn't help noticing that she was upset.
<i>It didn't escape his notice that she was upset.</i> | 11. Mary objects to lying.
<i>Lying is something that Mary objects to / hates / loathes.</i> |
| 4. The prospect of a short holiday fills me with pleasure.
<i>I look forward to (having) a short holiday.</i> | 12. I'm not in the habit of waking up early.
<i>I'm not used to waking up early.</i> |
| 5. It's quite unnecessary to answer his letter.
<i>Answering his letter is quite unnecessary/ pointless.</i>
<i>There's no point (in) answering his letter.</i>
<i>It's no use answering his letter.</i> | 13. He made me open my suitcase.
<i>I was made to open my suitcase.</i> |
| 6. It was difficult for her to do it.
<i>She had difficulty (in) doing it.</i>
<i>She could hardly do it.</i>
<i>She found it difficult to do.</i> | 14. I can't remember reading this novel.
<i>I have no recollection of reading this novel.</i> |
| 7. Would you be so kind as to pass the salad?
<i>Do/Would you mind passing the salad?</i>
<i>Could you pass the salad, please?</i> | 15. It's a waste of time trying to make yourself understood.
<i>It's not worth trying to make yourself understood.</i> |
| 8. It took me an hour to do my hair.
<i>I took an hour to do my hair.</i>
<i>Doing my hair took (me) an hour.</i>
<i>I spent an hour doing my hair / on my hair.</i> | |

62 *Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the infinitive or present participle.*

Last week I finally decided (1) **to take** (take) my driving test. I expected (2) (fail) as I had only been driving for a few weeks, but my friends encouraged me (3) (try) and I was delighted (4) (hear) them (5) (say) such nice things about my driving. They reminded me (6) (do) everything strictly by the book and helped me (7) (learn) the Highway Code. On the day of the test I was so busy (8) (concentrate) on what I was doing that the time seemed (9) (pass) very quickly. Afterwards I watched the examiner (10) (come) along the line of candidates and heard him (11) (give) the good or bad news to each one. I'm glad (12) (say) that I was one of the lucky ones and I am hoping (13) (buy) my first car next month.

63 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. Spending all your money was foolish.
It was foolish
2. Keeping your eyes open when you sneeze is impossible.
It is impossible
3. He is too poor to afford a house.
He isn't
4. Jane isn't experienced enough to be considered for the post.
Jane is
5. I can't remember having met him before.
I have no
6. Do you intend to go out with us?
Are you?
7. It took him three hours to correct the papers.
He spent
8. She has no intention of helping out.
She doesn't
9. Could you deliver this message for me?
Would you?
10. It's not worth going there just for a couple of hours.
It's a
11. It was difficult for us to get into the club.
We had
12. We are looking forward to meeting again.
The prospect
13. I'm not in the habit of exercising.
I'm not used
14. He couldn't help noticing that she had bought a new car.
It didn't escape
15. I don't intend to act according to his wishes.
I have

64 *Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising the -ing form or infinitive.*

e.g. We are looking forward to going on holiday.

1. Please be quiet! I'm trying talking about.
2. Despite a large breakfast, she was hungry again by 10 a.m.
3. He regrets her secret. Now everyone is talking about her.
4. British Airways regret cancellation of flight BA671 from Madrid.
5. They prefer to Indian food.

6. I don't really to the cinema tonight; I'm not in the mood.
7. I'm sorry bag; I mistook it for mine.
8. I hope you didn't the fire before you left the campsite.
9. He was the army; he had no choice in the matter.
10. If you can't dress, get a cheaper one.
11. He's really to Spain this summer. He has never been there before.
12. They apologised for the meeting but they were held up by heavy traffic.
13. After redundant, he had to go out and hunt for a new job.
14. I'm afraid I'll the meeting. Can we have it next Friday instead?
15. She regrets in the test; she swears she'll never do it again.

65 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. Do you remember seeing that play?
RECOLLECTION
2. I couldn't help noticing that she had lost weight.
ESCAPE
3. Fancy even suggesting that she lend him money!
QUESTION
4. He made us re-do the exercise.
FORCED
5. There's no point in saying that now.
UNNECESSARY
6. I can hardly read her writing.
DIFFICULTY
7. It took us half the day to drive into town.
SPENT
8. It isn't worth trying to convince him.
WASTE
9. She's looking forward to changing jobs.
FILLS
10. Will you be coming to the meeting?
INTEND
11. John proposed that we should go together in his car.
SUGGESTED
12. Do you have to pay a membership fee at that gym?
NECESSARY

Presentation 3

13. We succeeded in getting the piano up the stairs.
MANAGED
14. I don't want to go to the cinema.
FANCY
15. Do you think anyone will mind if I park here?
PARKING
16. There's no point in asking him questions like that.
WORTH
17. Jenny got ill again because she went out in the cold.
CAUSED
18. I never buy that sort of spray-can.
AVOID
19. It's too late for tears now.
USE
20. It's not fair that he should be punished like that.
DESERVE
21. Joan says that she didn't dent the car.
DENIES
22. It surprises me to hear that she makes so much money.
SURPRISED
23. Going on holiday now would mean that I'd miss the exams.
INVOLVE
24. She thinks she might apply for a job in Spain.
CONSIDERING
25. My aim is to buy my own house one day.
INTEND
26. I object to the way she changes all my designs.
RESENT
27. I tell him all the time that he should be more careful.
KEEP
28. His lawyer told him that he should take the matter to court.
ADVISED
29. He finds it hard not to eat sweets when they're offered to him.
RESIST
30. She has difficulty in working out this kind of problem.
DIFFICULT

Verbal Constructions

There are certain verbs which can be followed by two or more of the following constructions:
a) full infinitive, b) -ing form, c) noun and d) that - clause.

Study Appendix 4 and then do the following exercises.

66 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. I advise you to make a quick decision.
I advise
2. I often imagine meeting the President.
I often imagine
3. Why don't you try this new washing powder?
Why don't you try
4. He remembered that he had received the letter.
He remembered
5. She hopes that she will move house soon.
She hopes
6. I found that it was difficult to persuade him to accept the offer.
I found
7. She reminded me to feed the goldfish.
She reminded me
8. The children started opening their presents.
The children started
9. He admitted that he had stolen the car.
He admitted
10. The teacher encouraged them to study in the library.
The teacher encouraged

67 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. The police decided not to search for more evidence.
The police decided
2. He explained why he had refused the offer.
He explained
3. It's likely that she'll be late.
She's likely
4. I heard them quarrel about whose fault it was.
I heard them
5. He pretends that he knows all about Buddhism, but he doesn't.
He pretends
6. I apologise for my thoughtlessness.
I apologise
7. She described the process of changing a punctured tyre.
She described
8. She promised that she would return the money.
She promised
9. Your hair needs to be cut.
Your hair needs
10. They seem to have got lost on the way here.
It seems

68 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. I told her that she should accept the job offer.
I told her
2. She showed us the different stages of making Christmas pudding.
She showed us
3. He demanded that the travel agent should give him a refund.
He demanded
4. I fancy a cocktail.
I fancy
5. They won't allow you to smoke in the theatre.
They won't allow
6. I recommend that you should attend the lecture.
I recommend
7. She appears to have persuaded him to accept the offer.
It appears
8. I insist on signing the contract before I leave.
I insist
9. The police suspected that he had deliberately destroyed the evidence.
The police suspected
10. He wondered how he could explain what had happened.
He wondered
11. They love listening to their grandmother describe her childhood.
They love
12. The soldiers helped to save the villagers after the flood.
The soldiers helped

69 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. The manager proposed to introduce stricter rules in the workplace.
The manager proposed
2. The doctor loathes telling patients bad news.
The doctor loathes
3. The moment the play ended, the audience began to clap.
The moment the play ended, the audience began
4. I expect that I will receive some news fairly soon.
I expect
5. I believe that one should always be punctual.
I believe
6. He couldn't understand her angry reaction.
He couldn't understand
7. He denied that he had revealed the secret.
He denied
8. As we approached the house, the dog ceased to bark.
As we approached the house, the dog ceased
9. The doctor suggested that the man should eat less meat.
The doctor suggested
10. She prefers to eat vegetables.
She prefers
11. My mother always dreamed of returning to her old home.
My mother always dreamed
12. The customer asked to speak to the manager.
The customer asked

Consolidation 3

70 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

A hundred years ago, the principal (1) of communication for individuals and for businesses was (2) letter and telegram, but nowadays telephones are used daily in private houses, offices and factories. This is certainly the (3) widespread and convenient way for people to communicate (4) one another.

With the telephone, business deals can be arranged and completed rapidly. In (5), financial centres and stock exchanges, by constant use of the telephone system, can be assured (6) getting the very latest, up-to-the-minute information (7) the ever changing currency and share values. This type of information is essential (8) economic stability worldwide.

The telephone network also (9) a direct line into the homes of friends and relatives. For old and infirm people, and for (10) lonely people living on their (11), the telephone is a friend. At (12), families are often scattered, not only throughout the country (13) also throughout the world. (14), a few minutes' conversation with a loved one who may be thousands of miles away is a source of great comfort to (15)

Of course, very often the telephone can be a nuisance. Some will say that it intrudes too much (16) people's privacy, always ringing at the most inconvenient times. (17), obscene callers can make life a misery for some of the more vulnerable members of society, particularly for elderly women living alone.

But, on the (18), I think that the changes brought about by the introduction of the telephone have been of great (19) to everyone. The telephone has helped to (20) people closer together in a difficult world and has made life, for many, much easier and much more enjoyable.

Phrasal Verbs 1

71 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in one of the prepositions from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

at, up, off, on, about, in, round, out, over, through

- The rioting was brought **about** by a huge increase in the price of bread.
- He brought the business deal through sheer persistence.
- He brought the car to the kerb.
- Don't forget to bring the matter of the new park at the meeting.
- CBN has just brought a collection of songs from the sixties.
- She brought everything she had eaten on the funfair ride.
- He was brought by his grandmother as both his parents had died.
- We brought the unconscious woman with smelling salts.
- The cold weather has brought his cough again.
- That law was brought during the 19th century.
- The young actress carried the performance without a hitch.
- Carry with your work, please. There's no time to waste.
- The soldier carried his orders doing exactly what he had been told.
- This tradition carries from the days of the Romans.
- He will carry his plan despite all your objections.
- She always carries like a lunatic when she loses something.
- She was walking too quickly for me to catch with her.
- His new song caught right away and entered the top ten.
- He catches any opportunity to meet new people.
- Let's all chip and buy her a gift.

What's the difference between **charge to** and **charge with**?

Phrasal Verbs 2

72 Match the phrasal verbs in bold italics with one of the definitions given.

1. I'll **call at** the travel agency to collect our tickets.
2. As soon as John reached Vienna he **was called back** to Paris.
3. His condition **calls for** immediate medical attention.
4. The meeting **was called off** due to the chairman's illness.
5. You'd better **call in** a solicitor before writing your will.
6. My cousin **was called up** at the age of 19 and died in Vietnam a year later.
7. The union **has called out** its members to try to get better pay.
8. The thieves **cleared off** when they heard the guard approaching.
9. They **cleared out** the garage to make room for their new car.
10. It's been raining all morning but it seems **to be clearing up** now.
11. If you **cleared away** all these books, we'd have room to eat.
12. She **was cleared of** the charges of negligence but some people still believe she's guilty.

- A. to cancel
- B. to conscript
- C. to ask to return
- D. to run away
- E. to brighten up (of the weather)
- F. to visit briefly
- G. to get rid of unwanted things
- H. to remove
- I. to cause one to go on strike
- J. to find innocent
- K. to consult
- L. to require

1. F 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12.

Idioms 1

show one's true colours : reveal one's character

lost cause : hopeless situation or case

chair a meeting : preside a meeting

off colour : slightly unwell

have the cheek : dare to complain

get a bit hot under the collar : get angry / upset

keep one's chin up : not to be discouraged

with flying colours : with great success

get a problem off one's chest : confide in sb

different as chalk and cheese : very different

call sb names : insult sb

a close shave : narrow escape

play one's cards right : act cleverly

73 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. Trying to make them understand is a **lost cause**. They are so conservative.
2. Laura passed her exam She came top of the class.
3. He when he started making rude jokes about women.
4. I don't know how he to moan about my spelling when his is even worse.
5. You look Would you like me to call a doctor for you?
6. John managed to despite his illness.
7. If you and speak nicely to your father, he might take you to the fair this afternoon.
8. Bert and Tom are as different as It's hard to believe that they are brothers!
9. Those boys are very rude to me. They are always
10. The two cars just avoided having a head-on collision. It was a very
11. Instead of just sitting there feeling bad, why not talk about it and ?
12. She when a colleague started criticising her work.
13. Paul was asked to as the director was away on business.

What is meant by "don't count your chickens before they are hatched"?

Idioms 2

a wild-goose chase : hopeless pursuit

be caught red-handed : be caught while committing a crime.

crocodile tears : false tears

a piece of cake : (sth) easily done

down the drain : wasted; lost

down in the dumps : not cheerful

on the dole : receiving unemployment benefit

go to the dogs : fail; deteriorate

a red-letter day : a very important day

let sleeping dogs lie : avoid mentioning a subject or taking action which could cause trouble

74 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. Fred thought the test was **a piece of cake**; he has no doubt that he has passed it.
2. Kate is feeling because her boyfriend has left her.
3. 12 June is a for my sister. It's the day she launched her own business.
4. Looking for Susan in New York is simply She could be anywhere.
5. You can't fool me with your ; I know you're not really upset.
6. Please don't bring up that old argument with Joe when you see him. Just
7. While some people claim the country is, others think the new government will be able to improve matters.
8. The thief as he was leaving the bank with the money.
9. All the money I'd invested went when the company failed.
10. I have plenty of spare time but very little money because I am

Prepositions

75 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the correct preposition.

1. The children were late and had to make a dash **for** the school bus.
2. We'll have to economise heating or we won't be able to pay the bill.
3. I dream becoming a millionaire and buying a big yacht.
4. The student was eligible a full grant from the authority.
5. The employee showed total disregard the company rules and was dismissed.
6. The man was distracted a commotion and didn't notice the pick-pocket taking his wallet.
7. John was so engrossed the film that he burnt the dinner.
8. We were totally entranced the prima ballerina's dancing.
9. The doctor told me I was deficient iron and would have to take supplements.
10. My brother eloped his girlfriend because her parents had forbidden them to marry.
11. The woman exulted her son's success as a writer.

76 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the correct preposition.

1. We sold our house **at** a profit; we made £2,000.
2. She's working as a waitress the time being, but her ambition is to become an actress.
3. I've met Elizabeth Taylor the flash. I even shook her hand.
4. She's been a diet for weeks, but she hasn't lost much weight.
5. We have a car loan until ours has been repaired.
6. Strictly the record, his work is below standard.
7. The workers have been strike for three weeks.
8. That performance was really of the ordinary.
9. We were shocked when she called him an idiot his face.
10. He was pain after the operation.
11. times he wishes he had never become a doctor.
12. all accounts, he is the best basketball player in the Association.
13. He put the car gear and drove off.

Consolidation 3

77 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.
FIND
I find photography interesting.

- 1. Have you ever thought of changing jobs?
CROSSED
- 2. These two cars are not in the same class at all.
COMPARISON
- 3. He never stops criticising people.
LIMIT
- 4. It's not our habit to eat so early.
USED
- 5. Eventually the injured dog ceased to howl.
STOPPED
- 6. How does his appearance strike you?
THINK
- 7. That man has no pity whatsoever!
DEVOID
- 8. He is likely to be promoted.
CARDS
- 9. I tried to speak to him but he ignored me.
DEAD
- 10. We were elated by the birth of our first grandchild.
MOON

78 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

- 1. Whether you approve going to do it.
- 2. The more he drinks, ... his health gets.
- 3. Is 10 o'clock convenient or later?
- 4. How long fly from New York to London?
- 5. She locked all the doors for in while she was away.
- 6. There is nothing more annoying interrupted when you are speaking.
- 7. He fishing but he doesn't any more.
- 8. You'd today. The sea is very rough.
- 9. Twenty people are during the earthquake last night.
- 10. A: Did you see Jane at the theatre last night?
B: No, but because I saw her car parked outside.
- 11. the report, inflation had risen by 10%.
- 12. We queued up for five hours in getting some sale bargains.
- 13. In our hard work, the project still isn't finished.

79 Find the mistake and correct it.

1. Whenever he smiles at me, I just can't ~~avoid~~ laughing.
2. She tried to avoid her only son from emigrating to Australia.
3. That child always shows off and behaves bad.
4. I recognised the man sitting right before me.
5. "Did I say you what happened to me last week?" he asked.
6. At the beginning I thought he was following me but then I realised that he lived in my apartment block.
7. I asked the woman sitting besides me to let me out.
8. If you are feeling poorly, you would better not go out.
9. He described his ordeal in big detail.
10. She left her job because it was so bored.
11. The bank has borrowed her a substantial sum of money.
12. Neither Alice nor Susan were absent.
13. Don't break too suddenly on icy roads.
14. The doctor asked him to take several deep breathes.
15. They ran down the street and got into the bus.
16. They have cancelled their wedding until next summer.
17. He's not very willing to take care after the children.
18. The victim was carried to hospital in an ambulance.
19. After a brief introduction he went on giving a speech.
20. The librarian chequed the expiry date of my ticket.

help

80 Use the following notes to prepare a short article for a careers leaflet, giving some practical advice on interview skills.

Write complete sentences for each numbered set of notes, using connecting words and phrases as appropriate. You must use all the words in the same order as the notes. You may add words and change the form of words where necessary. The first point has been expanded for you in the example.

e.g. Double-check date - time of interview / telephone - confirm details.

It is advisable to double-check the exact date and time of your interview. It is a good idea to telephone to confirm the details.

1. Preparation / relevant documents - exam - degree certificates - references from past employers.
2. Before interview - gather information company / important choose appropriate wear - impression smart, efficient / early night - fresh, alert.
3. Essential - punctuality / least fifteen minutes beforehand - remain calm, relax - also good impression.
4. Interview - natural and relaxed / confident you say - open, honest / not afraid - expand answers.

- 81** After having written a letter to Claire asking for advice, Mary has received a reply. Now Mary wants to tell her friends about it. Fill in the blanks using no more than two words for each blank. The words you need do not occur in the first letter. The first one has been done for you.

Dear Mary,

I can certainly understand your problem, as anyone who has been brought up in a family can. But I must say I think you are underestimating your parents' concern and understanding. If they appear to be interfering in your personal concerns, it is only because they consider themselves to be wiser and more experienced than you are. If you dislike being questioned, you must convince your parents by your actions that you are to be trusted. You can encourage them to trust you by being honest and dependable, and if you feel unfairly treated, consider discussing the problem with them. It is extremely important not to hesitate to approach your parents with any problem you may have. If you trust them, they are more likely to trust you.

Claire

Well, I have just received an answer to my letter to Claire. In it she says that she can understand (1) **my situation** as she has experienced (2) problems herself. However, she (3) to tell me that I didn't (4) my parents' (5) me. The fact that they seem to interfere in (6) is only because they regard themselves as being (7) and experienced than I am. She goes on to say that if I (8) all their questions, I (9) to make them (10) me by my actions. It (11) that I should make them trust me by acting (12) and (13) and if I ever feel that they are (14) me, then I (15) talk it over with them. She (16) me not hesitating to (17) to them by discussing any problems that I may have. It (18) to trust them because then it is (19) that they'll trust me too.

Word usage

- 82** Fill in the blanks with one of the following words:

heritage inheritance legacy will

- The two brothers of the family fell out over the **inheritance** when the head of the family died.
- The family were called to the solicitor's office for the reading of the
- The old man's back trouble was a of a childhood fall.
- The Acropolis is part of Greece's national
- His will be held in trust until he is an adult.

- 83** Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- I was **coached** intensively for two weeks before the tennis tournament.
(educated, coached, trained, taught)
- Before the parachute jump I was carefully in safety procedures.
(tutored, instructed, taught, educated)
- She her daughter to the care of a babysitter for the evening.
(entrusted, consigned, confided, resigned)
- The woman the burglar across the head with a heavy vase and knocked him out. (slapped, smacked, clouted, punched)

5. Fighting among rebel soldiers last night and a curfew has now been imposed. (**enhanced, aggravated, heightened, intensified**)
6. While other companies collapsed in the economic recession, Cartwright Ltd. and share prices rose. (**benefited, took advantage, profited, gained**)
7. Rebecca her fiancé across the face during an argument and walked out of the restaurant. (**hit, slapped, struck, punched**)
8. The judge's ruling a wave of protest campaigns across the country. (**initiated, instigated, launched, commenced**)
9. Although I was able to hobble, having a broken ankle it my movements considerably. (**barred, hindered, hampered, blocked**)
10. Our journey was by the icy roads which forced us to drive very slowly. (**obstructed, impeded, barred, blocked**)

84 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	a jungle	a town	Mr Smith	a murder	an idea	an ocean	a possibility
investigate							
explore	✓						

	tea	attempt	boy	cry	woman	argument	defence	old man	supports
weak	✓								
feeble									

85 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

curb betray cuddle stagger accuse
charge sprinkle disperse blab slip

- 1) to **stagger** under the weight of sth. 2) to one's behaviour. 3) to the baby. 4) to on the ice. 5) to the secret. 6) to sb of stealing. 7) to with sugar. 8) to sb with a crime. 9) to sb's trust. 10) to a crowd.

86 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	between school lessons	for coffee	in the middle of a film	in conversation	for lunch	between two acts of a play
interval						
intermission						
break	✓					

	eye	on music	about travelling	kiss	sense of smell	greeting	swimmer
keen	✓						
enthusiastic							

Practice Test Three

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

While some people (1) cooking to be the ultimate drudgery, especially those who are (2) daily with the task of feeding a large family on a small (3), others find it a creative and fulfilling activity. Cooking for a family (4) members are not only choosy (5) also have limited tastes, an endless round of baked beans, chips and fish fingers, hardly gives the cook much (6) scope; but for the person with more (7) of choice and real interest, cooking can be (8) satisfying and enjoyable. For the dedicated cook, the pleasure (9) with shopping; a (10) to the market to choose the perfect (11) for a favourite dish is an (12) which brings all the senses (13) play, as all the other stages of the process (14) Washing, cutting and slicing, weighing and measuring, can all be enjoyable when (15) in the right spirit. And then there is the actual cooking, with (16) delicious aromas. The opportunity to (17) the food as it cooks, the satisfaction when you (18) that a dish has come (19) perfectly. But the ultimate satisfaction comes when you (20) your creation on the table and sit down to enjoy it with your family.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. I'd prefer you not to shout.
I'd rather
- b. So long as they see your badge they will let you in.
Provided you
- c. You should really be able to cook!
It's high time
- d. It is said that she stole the diamond herself.
She
- e. John was painting the house.
The house
- f. In spite of her accident she won the race.
Although
- g. The man only woke up after the fire was out.
Only after
- h. It seems that Linda has left her new job.
Linda

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use **crying over** spilt milk.

1. I don't believe that story! You've up.
2. You better than to trust that man with your money.
3. I can't go out to eat tonight., I don't like Mexican food.
4. It is said that the less one worries one is likely to live.
5. worn that dress to a party would have been ridiculous.
6. Please change your tone of voice. I can't bear like that.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence **as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence**, but using the word given. This word must **not be altered** in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go?

PERMISSION

Answer: **Were they given permission to go?**

- | | |
|--|------------|
| 1. You will have to give up the house. | OPTION |
| | |
| 2. The man's briefcase was stolen. | ROBBED |
| | |
| 3. Not many people came to the meeting. | TURNOUT |
| | |
| 4. There's an odour of burnt meat in the kitchen. | SMELLS |
| | |
| 5. They have definitely agreed to lend us the money. | COMMITTED |
| | |
| 6. Have you got to wear uniforms to school? | COMPULSORY |
| | |
| 7. Don't pay any attention when she complains. | NOTICE |
| | |
| 8. Which is your favourite pop group? | LIKE |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Until comparatively recent times the selection of happenings which a writer thought worthy of record were mainly those which had some direct bearing on the evolution of his own society or of that which he or she chose to study. This meant that political history was generally taken to be the same as history. Only in the last century or so has there been a great expansion in the scope of historical writing, to include constitutional, economic, local and social history. This has meant that somewhat arbitrary divisions have grown up, dictated by the increasingly exact standards demanded in historical research, so that the centuries-old ambition of writing "total" history is no longer pursued.

In theoretical terms history includes the whole field of past human actions, so that what happened to a remote nomadic tribe in the depths of central Asia a thousand years ago is just as much a part of the subject as an analysis of the rise and fall of the German Third Reich. Selection of the subject and the imposition of a chronological framework, however, mean that the majority of historians are willing to reject large areas of human activity, mostly because such a study is not really profitable. In the words of a noted professor, "darkness is not a subject for history." This reflects what Voltaire said in the 18th century: "If all you have to tell us is that one barbarian succeeded another on the banks

5

10

of the Oxus, what benefit have you conferred on the public?" This preoccupation with the history of civilised and settled societies has tended to make historians Eurocentric, which is understandable since the type of society evolved in Europe over the past five centuries has profoundly affected the rest of the world. Such an attitude has meant that the study of societies which remained unsettled or who have left no written record is generally classified as pre-history, and so ignored, or that it has become the province of the anthropologist.

The civilisations of Egypt and Mesopotamia can be studied more or less in isolation, while those of Greece and Rome, though styled as "ancient history", have had a much more direct bearing on Europe and so come in for more general study. Further divisions have taken on the civilisations of the East and the Americas. Thus divided by subject and rough chronological limits, the study of history breaks down into more or less manageable proportions. The question is whether this delineation of history limits the possibility of making illuminating connections between one period or phase and another, thus hindering the study of history from shedding light on our own times.

1. What has most influenced most historical writers' choice of subject?
.....
2. In what sense can "political history be taken to be the same as history"? (lines 3 - 4)
.....
3. Explain the phrase "somewhat arbitrary divisions". (lines 5 - 6)
.....
.....
4. Why is the ambition of writing "total" history no longer pursued? (line 7)
.....
5. Explain the use of the word "profitable" in this context. (line 12)
.....
6. Explain in your own words what is meant by the phrase "darkness is not a subject for history". (line 13)
.....
.....
7. Why have historians tended to become "Eurocentric"? (line 16)
.....
8. Replace "evolved" with an alternative word or phrase without changing the meaning of the sentence. (line 17)
.....
9. Explain the meaning of the word "province". (line 20)
.....
10. Why can certain civilisations be studied "more or less in isolation"? (line 21)
.....
11. Explain the phrase "taken on" in this context. (line 23)
.....
12. To what does "this delineation" (line 25) refer to?
.....
13. Summarise in 50 - 100 words why the pursuit of a "total history" has been dropped.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Passive Voice

We form the passive voice by putting the verb to **be** into the same tense as the active verb and adding the past participle of the active verb. The direct object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb. The subject of the active verb becomes the "**agent**" of the passive verb and if it is mentioned, is preceded by "**by**". Only transitive verbs can be used in the passive.

Tenses	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Simple Present Simple Past	<i>She makes dresses.</i> <i>She made the dress.</i>	<i>Dresses are made.</i> <i>The dress was made.</i>
Present Continuous Past Continuous	<i>She is making the dress.</i> <i>She was making the dress.</i>	<i>The dress is being made.</i> <i>The dress was being made.</i>
Present Perfect Past Perfect	<i>She has made the dress.</i> <i>She had made the dress.</i>	<i>The dress has been made.</i> <i>The dress had been made.</i>
Future Future Perfect	<i>She will make the dress.</i> <i>She will have made the dress.</i>	<i>The dress will be made.</i> <i>The dress will have been made.</i>
Conditional Conditional Perfect	<i>She would make the dress.</i> <i>She would have made the dress.</i>	<i>The dress would be made.</i> <i>The dress would have been made.</i>
Present Infinitive Perfect Infinitive	<i>She ought to make the dress.</i> <i>She ought to have made the dress.</i>	<i>The dress ought to be made.</i> <i>The dress ought to have been made.</i>
Gerund Perfect Gerund	<i>He hates people asking him to sing.</i> <i>He remembers his boss having reprimanded him.</i>	<i>He hates being asked to sing.</i> <i>He remembers having been reprimanded by his boss.</i>

Notes

- In colloquial English **be** can be replaced by **get** in the passive voice in some expressions.
e.g. *He'll **get** (=be) fired if he continues to be late for work.*
- have + object + past participle** can be used colloquially to replace a passive verb when we want to talk about an accident or misfortune.
e.g. *She **had her leg broken**. (= Her leg **was broken**.)*
- The **agent** is omitted when it is a) a pronoun, b) words like **one, someone, people**, etc. or c) **can be easily understood**.
e.g. ***Someone** destroyed the evidence. ⇒ *The evidence was destroyed.**

Use

The passive voice is used:

- when the person who performs the action ("agent") can easily be understood.
e.g. *He **has been arrested**. (The police have arrested him.)*
- when the subject of the active verb is "**people**", "**he**", "**she**", "**they**", "**one**", "**somebody**" etc.
e.g. *People say he's wealthy. ⇒ **It is said that he's wealthy.** / **He is said to be wealthy.***
- when we are interested in the **action itself** rather than the person who performs it.
e.g. ***The new hospital will be opened tomorrow (by the Minister of Health).***
- when we mean to be tactful by not naming the agent.
e.g. ***All my shampoo has been used.** (instead of: You've used all my shampoo!)*

Further points on the passive voice

1. **make, hear, see, help** are followed by **to + infinitive** in the passive.

e.g. *He made her leave.* ⇒ *She was made to leave.*

2. “**let**” becomes “**was/were allowed to**” in the passive. When the subject of “let” and the object of the infinitive that follows “let” are the same, then “let”, when used in the passive voice, is followed by a reflexive pronoun + bare passive infinitive.

e.g. *She let me go out.* ⇒ *I was allowed to go out.*
Don't let him tease you. ⇒ *Don't let yourself be teased.*

3. The passive with verbs such as **assume, believe, consider, feel, know, report, say, think, understand**, etc. is formed in two ways.

a) **It + passive + that - clause**

e.g. *They believe she is a spy.*
It is believed that she is a spy.

b) **subject + passive + to - infinitive**

e.g. *They believe she is a spy.*
She is believed to be a spy.

4. Verbs which take two objects such as **allow, ask, give, lend, send** etc. have two passive forms.

e.g. *He showed me the way to the door.* ⇒ *I was shown the way to the door.*
The way to the door was shown to me.

5. **Passive voice with “by” or “with”.**

by + agent

e.g. *The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.*

**with + instrument
 material
 past participles
 (such as filled, packed etc.)**

e.g. *She was killed with a knife.*
Irish coffee is made with whisky.
The stadium was filled with thousands of spectators.

6. Verbs followed by a certain preposition take the preposition immediately after them when put into the passive.

e.g. *She accused me of theft.* ⇒ *I was accused of theft.*

7. Prepositional verbs of movement when turned to the passive change to other synonymous verbs which take no preposition.

e.g. *Columbus reached/arrived in America in 1492.* ⇒ *America was reached (NOT arrived in) by Columbus in 1492.*
The royal couple entered/went into the room arm in arm. ⇒ *The room was entered (NOT gone into) by the royal couple arm in arm.*

8. **Modal verb + active infinitive** → **Modal verb + passive infinitive**

e.g. *They can't repair the bombed building.* ⇒ *The bombed building can't be repaired.*

87 Turn the following sentences from active into passive or vice versa.

1. They will have finished redecorating by the time we get back from Spain.
.....
2. Which picture did he sell?
.....
3. The company is going to increase our wages.
.....
4. While she was moving the furniture she damaged the table.
.....
5. He is known to have stolen the money.
.....
6. Don't let them make fun of you.
.....
7. Will he be made to obey the rules?
.....
8. I wasn't allowed to stay out late.
.....
9. He ought to have revealed all the information he had been given.
.....
10. She hates being followed by fans everywhere.
.....
11. They believe he has left the country.
.....
12. He had his house broken into.
.....
13. Don't let her mock you.
.....
14. Who assassinated President John F Kennedy?
.....

88 Turn the following from active into passive.

1. As soon as Jane joined the magazine they showed her the basics of all the jobs in the Editorial Department, and before two years were out they had made her assistant editor.
.....
.....
2. They've reduced the prices of many things in the shops. The problem is that my firm hasn't paid me, so I can't buy anything.
.....
.....
3. Sarah says that the government has offered her a post in the Middle East, but she's decided to turn it down as a private company has promised her a better job in London.
.....
.....
4. Someone gave me a book of 18th century French drama which has inspired me to do some translation.
.....
.....
5. The shopkeeper overcharged me and now he'll have to give me a refund. I just hope he has given me a receipt.
.....
.....

Presentation 4

6. I believe they should do away with military conscription. I don't think they should take boys away from their families and friends.
.....
.....
7. From the way the management talk about Mr Smith, you'd think they'd fire him, but instead of that they've just promoted him.
.....
.....
8. Has anyone ever broken into your house? They have mine, and they took all my most valuable possessions.
.....
.....
9. They took Paula's child away from her last week. I don't imagine they'll return it to her until they can prove her capability as a mother.
.....
.....
10. It seems they have accused her husband of drug-running, and they are implicating her in the crime too.
.....
.....
11. The writer made John his literary executor, but he didn't leave him any money so he had to sell the manuscripts.
.....
.....
12. Someone told me how to make bread; it's a shame I've forgotten since the children are always asking me to make it.
.....
.....
13. If you feed children properly, they grow up to be strong and healthy; it's a pity that we deprive half the children in the world of proper nutrition.
.....
.....
14. Our washing machine broke down yesterday and they had to take it to the repair shop. They won't charge me for the repairs, but if they have to replace any parts, I'll have to pay as the guarantee doesn't cover them.
.....
.....
15. When they made Peter president of the club, they gave him the freedom to change any one of the club's rules which they had made more than ten years before.
.....
.....

89 Turn the following from passive into active.

1. When John was hired he was told that he would have to serve a six-month apprenticeship, but as it turned out he was promoted at the end of three months.
.....
.....
2. I was overheard by Sally saying that I'd been given a rise, and now she wonders why she's being treated unfairly.
.....
.....
3. It is said that America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, but in fact it has been decided that Amerigo Vespucci landed there first.
.....
.....

4. I was given an article by which I was motivated to take up jogging, but I've been told by my doctor to be careful about how much I do.
.....
5. I was told that the repairs on my car would be done by Friday, but as it turns out I was told a lie because they still haven't been done.
.....
6. Have you ever been interviewed by a journalist? I have been, but unfortunately everything I said was misrepresented.
.....
7. People are being told that the dangers of chemical pollution have been exaggerated by some scientists and confusion has been caused by this.
.....
8. The last time Olivia was seen she was said to be wearing a black leather jacket and red tights, but what people say they remember can't always be relied on.
.....
9. Joan was left some property by her grandfather, but it was discovered later that the land tax had never been paid and the property had to be sold.
.....
10. Although Julie was allowed to go out that night by her parents, she was reminded that if she wasn't back by midnight she would be severely punished.
.....
11. I've been instructed several times how to use this machine, but every time I'm shown how it's used, I'm left more confused than I was before.
.....
12. Although she was offered several jobs in the fashion field, she was persuaded to turn them down by her colleagues.
.....
13. While she had been given every possible advantage by her parents, she was encouraged by some of her friends to reject the help she was offered by them.
.....
14. If this law is not done away with in the near future, this government is bound to be accused of being reactionary and a lot of support will be lost.
.....
15. Nobody knows who this gadget was invented by, but it has been claimed by several people that the original idea was theirs.
.....
16. It is said that this candidate has been accused of tax evasion by the government, but he swears that his taxes have always been paid in full.
.....
17. While most of the trees in this garden were planted by the owners in the 1950s, the entire garden was redesigned by a professional in 1972.
.....
.....

Structural Conversion

1. *It is said that this poem was written by Elytis.*
This poem was written by Elytis, so it is said.
Elytis is said to have written this poem.
This poem is said to have been written by Elytis.
They say that Elytis wrote this poem.
2. *Nothing more can be done about this matter.*
There's nothing more to be done about this matter.
With regard to this matter, there's nothing more to be done.
3. *My jewels were stolen.*
I was robbed of my jewels.
Someone stole my jewels.
I had my jewels stolen.
4. *They don't allow smoking in hospitals.*
Smoking isn't allowed in hospitals.
Smoking is forbidden in hospitals.
5. *I'd love you to take me out.*
I'd love to be taken out (by you).
6. *No actor can be expected to remember all the plays he has acted in.*
No one can expect an actor to remember all the plays he has acted in.
7. *Your contract says that you are to be present by 8 every day.*
You are expected to be present by 8 every day according to your contract.
8. *I wasn't taken in by her story.*
Her story didn't deceive me.
9. *He wore a hat so that no one would recognise him.*
He wore a hat to avoid being recognised.
10. *I love people asking for my autograph.*
I love being asked for my autograph.
I love it when I'm asked for my autograph.
11. *They couldn't hear him.*
He couldn't make himself heard.
12. *They saw him steal the money.*
He was seen to steal the money.
13. *Who made this dress?*
Who was this dress made by?
14. *He lets people laugh at him.*
He lets himself be laughed at.

90 **Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.**

1. It is said that she was the greatest singer of all time.
 She is
2. Who painted this picture? Who was
3. He lets himself be taken advantage of. He lets people
4. She locked the door so that nobody would disturb her.
 She locked the door to
5. His claim that he was starving didn't deceive me.
 I
6. My aunt's car has been stolen. Someone
7. She was seen to enter the restaurant. They
8. Parking isn't allowed here. They
9. No student can be expected to know every word in the book.
 Nobody can
10. The agreement states that you are to pay once a month.
 You are
11. There's nothing further to say about this.
 Nothing
12. I hate people asking me personal questions.
 I hate being
13. They couldn't understand him.
 He couldn't
14. She allows people to distract her from her work.
 She allows herself
15. I'd love you to give me some time off. I'd love to

91 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising passive voice.

e.g. When she was ill her children **were looked after** by her mother.

- 1. The car, which last week, was used in a getaway attempt.
- 2. The goods to you as soon as we receive them.
- 3. James was quite upset that he to Stan's party.
- 4. The break-in until the staff returned to work on Monday morning.
- 5. The construction of the bridge after a delay of two years.
- 6. The security alarm when someone tries to force the door open.
- 7. All our records on computer.
- 8. The dead man as unemployed electrician, Keith Smith, from Wimbledon.
- 9. While we were talking in the living room, our dinner by the dog in the kitchen.
- 10. The incident until he reminded us of it again.

92 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.
FIND
I find photography interesting.

- 1. She bribed the judge so that he wouldn't convict her.
AVOID
.....
- 2. They say that this book was written by two people.
SAID
.....
- 3. She was robbed of all her money.
HAD
.....
- 4. How could you be taken in by such a story?
DECEIVE
.....
- 5. There's nothing we can do about it now.
DONE
.....
- 6. You are expected to finish the book by next week.
EXPECT
.....
- 7. No professor can be expected to recognise every student.
NOBODY
.....
- 8. I'd hate them to leave me behind.
LEFT
.....
- 9. Who were the jewels stolen by?
STOLE
.....
- 10. Using notes is forbidden in this exam.
ALLOW
.....
- 11. She lets people criticise her.
HERSELF
.....

Consolidation 4

93 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

The 1990s has been hailed (1) the environmental decade; the world and the environment are now firmly (2) the political agenda. The citizens of planet Earth are waking (3) to the knowledge that action is (4) not only by governments but also by all mankind, to preserve the world as we know it.

The ozone layer, environmental pollution, global warming, the rainforests are topics discussed (5) -wide from the newsroom to the café. Environmental pollution is an area which is of direct (6) to all of us, from the chemical waste (7) out by factories to the rubbish we throw (8) every day. Industrial pollution is being emitted continually (9) the world's cities, clogging up the atmosphere, poisoning the rivers and destroying nature's balance.

New environmental awareness is already evident: young children are (10) educated about recycling household waste, housewives are becoming green-shoppers, concerned (11) the contents and packaging in their shopping baskets, and governments are at (12) beginning to take serious and effective (13) Although this environmental awareness is laudable, it could be (14) that perhaps it has all come a bit too (15) Man has been polluting the environment in (16) damaging ways for the past 150 years. The methods and processes which cause so (17) of the pollution form the core of "civilised" living. In trying to cope (18) the problems which the Earth faces, we must also (19) at the causes and re-evaluate our way of living, turning to natural, environmental ways of producing energy, and living our (20) closer to nature.

Phrasal Verbs 1

94 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in one of the prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

round, off, across, through, down to, to, into, out, up,
up with, by, up to, forward, on, over, in, round to, out in

- I'm not sure how the accident came **about** but I suspect somebody was being careless.
- He came a collection of valuable old coins in the attic.
- How did you come this painting? It's a Picasso, you know.
- This diamond came me from my great-grandmother.
- After she hit her head, it took her several minutes to come
- How much did the food bill come this week?
- Did the new play come your expectations?
- Those seeds I planted haven't come yet.
- He came several thousands when his grandfather died.
- The party came rather well. Everyone enjoyed themselves.
- The students are coming very well in Maths this term.
- It came that Sue's husband had been arrested for theft.
- I don't know what's come him; he's acting very oddly.
- He came a rash after eating a kilo of strawberries.
- Her latest novel is coming soon.
- Long hair for men is coming again. More and more wear their hair long.
- After the flood, hundreds of volunteers came with offers of assistance.
- We don't know yet how we'll solve the problem but I'm sure someone will come a solution soon.
- Most of the companies which came the economic crisis are now operating very successfully.
- They've come our way of thinking at last.

Phrasal Verbs 2

deal in :	trade in sth
deal with :	tackle a problem, cope with
do away with :	abolish
do down :	criticise
be done for :	be in serious trouble
do out of :	deprive of
do up :	fasten (a coat etc)
do with :	tolerate
do without :	manage in spite of lack of sth (opp.: do with)
drive at :	imply

What's the difference between **care about** and **care for**?

Idioms 1

96 Match the idioms with the definitions.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--|-------------|
| 1. keep an eye on sth | A. have a feeling that sb is talking about one | 1. F |
| 2. take it easy | B. within the rules | 2. |
| 3. feel one's ears burning | C. manage to look serious | 3. |
| 4. (keep) a straight face | D. be inexperienced | 4. |
| 5. be flat out | E. very quickly | 5. |
| 6. one's flesh and blood | F. guard sth | 6. |
| 7. fair and square | G. insist | 7. |
| 8. in a flash | H. be very tired | 8. |
| 9. put one's foot down | I. family member | 9. |
| 10. be green | J. calm down | 10. |

Now make sentences using the above idioms.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

95 Fill in the correct phrasal verb.

1. Can you **do up** my dress please?
2. The death penalty should have been long before it was.
3. I can't his indifference any more.
4. What were you when you said you might not see Mark for some time?
5. He antique furniture and paintings.
6. The old man was his life's savings by a confidence trickster.
7. Surely you can sugar in your coffee for once?
8. How do you an unruly class when they are disobedient?
9. You shouldn't your classmates just because they're not as quick as you.
10. We're now - here come the police!

Idioms 2

97 Look at Appendix 2 and explain the meaning of the idioms in bold italics.

1. There were so many **gate crashers** at the party that I didn't even recognise the people I invited.
2. Don't **take your mother for granted**; she does a lot of work for you.
3. She **cooked my goose** when she refused to provide an alibi for me.
4. Most politicians **have the gift of the gab**.
5. "**It's all Greek to me**," she said as the professor was explaining the new maths problem.
6. In politics, there is always a little **give and take**.
7. I **heard it through the grapevine** that we are going to get a rise next month.
8. He met Jennifer and **fell head over heels in love**.
9. He **put his foot in it** when he mentioned Sally's ex-boyfriend to her new one.
10. I was asked to make a speech but I couldn't because I **had a frog in my throat**.
11. After our break-up, I was comforted by the fact that **there are plenty more fish in the sea**.
12. My teacher and I **got off on the wrong foot**, but now we are good friends.

Prepositions

98 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. My cousin has a flair **for** languages and can speak more than six.
2. All the animals in the forest fled the fire.
3. If you have a grievance the company, please lodge a formal written complaint.
4. My car is guaranteed rust for eight years.
5. The teacher told me to stop fiddling and to sit still and concentrate.
6. My brother is always gibing me about my weight.
7. I was furious my sister her continual lies to our mother.
8. His glee the news of his success was a joy to see.
9. You musn't grieve one trivial mistake.
10. He has a fixation becoming the best doctor in the world.
11. She does nothing but fret her lack of money.
12. His fidelity the firm has won him great respect.
13. He is always gloating his sudden success as an actor.
14. He is certainly good maths, if not much else.
15. The factory owner is not in the habit of fraternising his workers.

99 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. He is out of jail **on** bail until the trial begins.
2. Her sales methods are odds with company policy.
3. I found the ring purely luck.
4. I didn't go to see him fear of catching his cold.
5. That house has been sale for two years.
6. Come to the party, ... all means.
7. You shouldn't take such a valuable employee granted.
8. all, I spent £500 on holiday.
9. You will receive the listed items demand in a week's time.
10. He went to the meeting disguise so as not to be recognised.
11. There were a lot of problems, but the end everything was all right.
12. He was so surprised that he was a loss for words.
13. Our teacher was a bad mood today; he shouted everyone.
14. Try to get the photograph focus this time.
15. They were the trail of the Yeti when the blizzard started.
16. answer to your question, the meeting will take place next Tuesday.
17. Torturing people is an offence humanity.

100 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.
FIND
I find photography interesting.

- 1. "That meal would have satisfied a king!" he exclaimed.
FIT
- 2. You shouldn't take delight in other people's failures.
GLOAT
- 3. My grandmother can hardly hear at all.
VIRTUALLY
- 4. Take care not to spill the milk.
MIND
- 5. The war has caused emigration to increase.
RESULTED
- 6. The board met secretly to discuss changes in company policy.
DOORS
- 7. I really want an ice-cream.
DYING
- 8. Could someone answer my question?
THERE
- 9. She is likely to come before the end of next month.
LIKELIHOOD
- 10. It is usual for young children to ask a lot of questions.
APT

101 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. There are many underprivileged ~~chids~~ in the world.
- 2. She did very good in the test.
- 3. He enjoys listening to the works of classic composers.
- 4. Her eyes have the same colour as her mother's.
- 5. The shape of the earth can be compared with an egg.
- 6. As a conclusion, I'd like to say thank you for your help.
- 7. The committee is consisting of twelve members.
- 8. There was a continual flow of traffic into the town centre.
- 9. The cooker in this restaurant is renowned for his excellent cuisine.
- 10. He purchased several items, which costed £200 all together.
- 11. You may have to bear the price of any damage.
- 12. All the passengers and crew were dead in the plane crash.
- 13. The departure of the flight was postponed because of the rain.
- 14. The employee was dismissed for denying to work overtime.
- 15. He was rushed to hospital because he had it difficult to breathe.
- 16. They took a quiet, candlelit dinner together.

children
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Consolidation 4

- [illegible]

102 Fill each of the numbered blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

1. Never before such a boring film.
2. She doesn't like crowded cities and her husband.
3. I don't remember to do something like that before.
4. Even if I had studied more, I pass such a difficult exam.
5. John pick up the children from school today but he completely forgot.
6. as to pour me another cup of coffee?
7. The teacher warned Billy that talking he would be sent out of the classroom.
8. He finally succeeded his driving test after six unsuccessful attempts.
9. It's going to take him a long the death of his father.
10. A: "I really must be going. me later?"
B: "Sure. That would be fine. What about 7.00?"

103 Match the items from column A with those from column B and then fill in the blanks with the correct idiom.

Column A	Column B	Answers
1. as silent as	A. a dog	1. G
2. as right as	B. a rake	2.
3. as sick as	C. a sheet	3.
4. as strong as	D. old boots	4.
5. as thin as	E. a cucumber	5.
6. as tough as	F. a post	6.
7. as white as	G. the grave	7.
8. as cool as	H. chalk and cheese	8.
9. as deaf as	I. a horse	9.
10. as different as	J. rain	10.

1. You couldn't make her cry if you tried. She's **as tough as old boots**.
2. She turned when she realised there was a burglar in her house.
3. Let him carry the trunk. He's
4. You may not feel well now, but you'll be in a few days.
5. I promise to be about your secret.
6. Why is she dieting? She's already
7. After eating twelve chocolate bars he was
8. Although everyone else was shaking with nerves, Betsy was
9. John and his brother are not at all alike; they're
10. You'll have to speak louder; he's

- 104 Read the following notes on a school excursion and complete the announcement below, using no more than two words to fill each blank. The words you need do not occur in the notes. The first one has been done for you.

Dates :	15 - 17 March
Destination :	Stratford-upon-Avon - Special study excursion - Shakespeare's Historical plays
Accommodation :	two per room, B + B (breakfast & dinner incl.)
Price :	£59.00
Extras :	lunch, pocket money, museums
Advice :	Notify secretary by end of next week if going Guests may come if space allows Meet at school entrance 8 am 15/3

Limpton School wishes (1) **to announce** this year's Special Study Excursion to Stratford-upon-Avon, (2) number of Shakespeare's historical plays are (3) this season. The excursion is (4) take (5) 15th - 17th March, and coach, room [double (6)] with (7) board, theatre tickets and a guided tour (8) at the price of £59. (Students will be (9) to pay for one meal per (10) museum (11) fees and any personal expenses.) The secretary must (12) by the end of next week if students (13) go. Guests may be (14) space is available. Departure will be at 8 am, 15th March from the school entrance. (15) information (16) obtained from the secretary.

- 105 Use the following notes to prepare a short health guide for tourists travelling abroad. Write in complete sentences for each numbered set of notes, using connecting words and phrases as appropriate. You must use all the words in the same order as the notes. You may add words and change the form of words where necessary. The first point has been expanded for you in the example.

e.g. Inquire - travel agent's - vaccinations necessary - country visit.
Inquire at a/your travel agent's which vaccinations are necessary for the country you are visiting.

- Utmost importance - take holiday insurance - duration holiday.
.....
.....
.....
- Not advise drink local tap-water / bottled water easy available local supermarkets - or able take supply - sterilising tablets.
.....
.....
.....
- Well-advised - take anti-mosquito device or similar type - repel - insects.
.....
.....
.....

Consolidation 4

4. Mini first-aid kit - a must - when travel abroad / especially - supply tummy-upset - travel-sickness tablets.
.....
.....
.....
5. If - travel - hot climates - essential - take plenty - high-factor sun-tan protector lotions.
.....
.....
.....

Word usage

106 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

1. I'm very sorry, but these **goods** are out of stock at the moment. (**goods, wares, commodities, merchandise**)
2. My father has decided to a beard to cover a small scar he has on his chin. (**rear, bring up, breed, grow**)
3. The farmer makes money by pedigree horses. (**bringing up, rearing, breeding, growing**)
4. For months I sat with my binoculars watching a bird its young. (**rear, breed, bring up, grow**)
5. " 'E me rubber, miss!" shouted the boy. (**pilfered, ripped off, pinched, swiped**)
6. As soon as I turned my back, somebody my book. (**ripped off, pilfered, swiped, pinched**)
7. You were really when you paid \$100 for those shoes. They're not even leather! (**swiped, ripped off, pinched, pilfered**)
8. Many forest - animals were killed in the fire. (**dwelling, residing, inhabiting, settling**)
9. This city has four million (**residents, dwellers, inhabitants, settlers**)
10. Each of the house must pay his own tax. (**dweller, resident, settler, inhabitant**)

107 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	soldiers	cards	geese	lions	monkeys	wolves	fish	ants	bees	cows	grapes	sheep
a gaggle of			✓									
a shoal of												
a pride of												
a swarm of												
a colony of												
a herd of												
a flock of												
a pack of												
a troop of												
a school of												
a bunch of												

Practice Test Four

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only one word in each space.

Life (1) a small island may look very (2) to the tourists who spend a few weeks there in the summer, but the (3) of living on what is virtually a rock (4) by water are quite different from what the casual visitor imagines. While in summer the island villages are (5) of people, life and activity, (6) the tourist season is over many of the shop owners shut (7) their business and return to the mainland to spend the winter in (8) Those who remain on the island, (9) by choice or necessity, face many (10) One of the worst of these is isolation, with (11) many attendant problems. When the weather is bad, which it often is in winter, the island is (12) off entirely; this means not (13) that people can not be (14) goods but also that a medical emergency can be fatal to someone (15) to an island. At times (16) telephone communication is cut off, which (17) that no word from the outside world can get (18) Isolation and loneliness are the basic reasons (19) so many people have left the islands for a better and more (20) life in the mainland cities.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever she tells them, her parents don't believe her.

- a. He is proud of being such a good gardener.
He prides.....
- b. We only deliver after we have received the money.
Only after the money
- c. I'm sure he broke the vase by accident.
I'm sure he didn't
- d. He'll get used to it. Then his work will improve.
Once
- e. Despite his huge muscles he is very gentle.
Although
- f. My request was ignored.
Nobody
- g. "Please don't kill me!" the woman begged her attacker.
The woman pleaded
- h. You pay £60 a month for a period of two years.
You pay in 24 successive

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

- 1. We met in 1980. By this time next year each other for ten years.
 - 2. If I'd known it was so dull, I to read it.
 - 3. We would sooner than to the cinema.
 - 4. Stop talking so loud! If you get into trouble, it right.
 - 5. You only started studying twenty minutes ago; you finished so soon.
 - 6. We have got a fair money in the bank.
4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|---|------------|
| 1. I find his books hard to understand. | DIFFICULTY |
| | |
| 2. Some people accept that life is full of problems. | RESIGNED |
| | |
| 3. He makes too many mistakes to suit me. | FREQUENT |
| | |
| 4. The jewel box was completely empty. | LEFT |
| | |
| 5. He will not be put off taking that trip. | DETER |
| | |
| 6. Neil frequently breaks his promises. | GOES |
| | |
| 7. Virtue is of little value in a corrupt government. | COUNTS |
| | |
| 8. Could you tell me where the lobby is? | DIRECT |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

It doesn't take us long to realise that everyday life involves risk, or more accurately speaking, that risk is part and parcel of everyday life. From the moment we are found tottering on the table top trying to reach the cookie jar and roughly bundled back into our playpens by our wide-eyed, white-faced mothers we understand.

Living becomes an even more dangerous business as we move into adulthood and out of the relative safety of our own homes. Just getting to work this morning involved putting my life in the hands of two total strangers (and for all I know, suicidal maniacs hell-bent on havoc) in the guise of London Transport employees. But this kind of risk is unavoidable; it is the type that is rationalised by number-crunching insurance company personnel throughout the country, packaged into neat statistics and proudly presented at board meetings. Those poor people with an "anti-social" fear of buses, trains or the like are commonly regarded as freaks: fringe elements of society. Their inability to take a risk interferes with their normal social functioning and so we scorn or pity them according to our nature.

There seems to be some kind of norm in operation. Look at the opposite extreme. Hang-gliders, racing drivers and deep-sea divers (in action, as it were, above, on and below the level

of everyday life) are often regarded incredulously - especially if they risk their lives purely for recreational purposes - but there is always an air of awe in the often repeated question, "Why on earth do you do it?" If the high-risk activity is the person's occupation, then forget the incredulity and you are left with out-and-out respect. But what of other forms of risk-taking? Gamblers, for instance? Gambling is certainly frowned upon by that large and "respectable" proportion of the British population despite its legalised status and huge popularity. Why should this be so? The answer, I think, lies in the nature of the gambler's risk in comparison to other types. 20

Firstly, the gambler's risk is not the dare-devil, respect-commanding physical type of the racing-driver; "all" that is at stake is money. Furthermore, there is an underlying feeling that the risk being taken is not strictly personal. We wonder where the money has come from, what will happen when the gambler loses it all and how friends and relatives feel about the habit. Even (or especially) if a large sweepstake is won, we know that it was chiefly a matter of happening to have the right number at the right time, that was responsible for the windfall and not the continuous practice and trained skill of the gliders, drivers and divers. 25

At the end of the day we are left with a multi-faceted concept, the nature of which cannot be defined in isolation but only in terms of society and its norms. Look at those fear-filled individuals mentioned earlier. Can you honestly assure them that getting into your car is perfectly safe and totally risk-free when clearly it is not? 30

1. What is it that we "understand" (line 4)?
.....
2. What do the words "wide-eyed" and "white-faced" (lines 3 - 4) suggest?
.....
3. In what sense do we put ourselves at risk using public transport?
.....
4. Why are the statistics described as being "proudly presented" (line 10)?
.....
5. Why are those people with certain fears described as "fringe elements of society" (lines 11 - 12)?
.....
6. What does the phrase "above, on and below the level of everyday life" (lines 15 - 16) suggest?
.....
7. What word or phrase could be used instead of "an air of awe" (line 17)?
.....
8. What is meant by the phrase "frowned upon" (line 20)?
.....
9. Why is the word "all" (line 24) in inverted commas?
.....
10. In what sense is the gambler's risk not strictly a personal one?
.....
11. According to the writer, what is the principal factor contributing to a gambler's win?
.....
12. In what sense can you not "honestly assure" (line 32) the people who get into your car that they are not at risk?
.....
13. In a paragraph of 70 - 90 words, summarise the various types of risk described and people's attitudes towards them.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Presentation 5

Reported Speech

Direct speech is the exact words someone said or wrote.
Reported speech is the exact meaning of what someone said or wrote without using his/her exact words.

There are three types of Reported speech

A. **statements**
B. **questions**
C. **commands**

Direct speech	Reported speech
1. STATEMENT "The plane will be late," they said.	THAT-CLAUSE They said (that) the plane would be late.
2. QUESTION "Why are you late?" she asked. "Are you feeling well?" he asked me.	WH-CLAUSE or IF-CLAUSE (if there is no question word) She asked why I was late. He asked me if I was feeling well.
3. COMMAND "Don't touch it!" he said. "Turn on the light, please," he said.	TO-INFINITIVE He told me not to touch it. He asked me to turn on the light .

The most common reporting verbs are **say, tell, talk, speak** and **ask**.

1. We use "say" in Direct speech. We also use "say" in Reported speech when we don't mention who we are talking to.	"I don't know what to do," he said to Mary. He said (that) he didn't know what to do.
2. We use "tell" in Reported speech if we mention who we are talking to.	She told Mary to wait. They told me that they didn't know her.
3. We can use say + infinitive but never say about .	The teacher said to study harder. He spoke/talked about his experiences. He told us about his experiences.
4. We use "ask" in reported questions and commands.	He said to me, "Please, stay!" He asked me to stay. He said , "Do you like strawberries?" He asked me if I liked strawberries.

There are some common expressions with **say, tell** and **ask**. These are:

say	say good morning etc., say a few words, say no more, say one's prayers, say sth, say so, say for certain, etc.
tell	tell the truth, tell a lie, tell sb the time, tell sb one's name, tell sb's fortune, tell a story, tell a secret, tell sb so, tell sb the way, tell one from another, tell the difference, etc.
ask	ask a favour, ask the time, ask a question, ask the price, etc.

108 Fill in the blanks with "say", "tell", "speak" or "ask" in the right tense.

- "I don't think he will be on time," he **said**.
- She the price of the hairdryer that was on sale.
- He goodbye and left for school.
- Father used to us a story before we went to bed.
- My grandfather likes about his childhood.
- "I can't her secret", she to me.
- Mark always about his schooldays.

Changing from Direct into Reported speech

1. Verb tenses change as follows:

Direct speech	Reported speech
Simple Present "I can't stand that boy," she said.	Simple Past She said that she couldn't stand that boy.
Present Continuous "I'm having a nice time," she said.	Past Continuous She said that she was having a nice time.
Present Perfect "I've booked my summer holiday," he said.	Past Perfect He said that he had booked his summer holiday.
Present Perfect Continuous "I've been waiting for you all morning," he said.	Past Perfect Continuous He said that he had been waiting for me all morning.
Simple Past "I failed my driving test," he said.	Past Perfect He said that he had failed his driving test.
Future "I'll tidy my room tomorrow," she said.	Conditional She said that she would tidy her room the next day.
Future Continuous "I'll be working in Paris next year," he said.	Conditional Continuous He said that he would be working in Paris the following year.

2. The following words also change:

Direct speech	Reported speech
this / these	that / those / the
here	there
come	go
bring	take
He said to me, " Come and look at this bird."	He told me to go and look at that bird.
She said to me, "Stand here and wait for me."	She told me to stand there and wait for her.

3. Pronouns and possessive adjectives change according to the meaning of the sentence.

Direct speech	Reported speech
He said, "I can't do it myself ."	He said (that) he couldn't do it himself .

4. Changes of time expressions:

Direct speech	Reported speech
tonight	that night
now	then, at that time, at once/immediately
now that	since
today	that day
yesterday	the day before, the previous day
tomorrow	the day after, the following day, the next day
tomorrow morning	the morning after, the next morning
last night	the night before, the previous night
the day before yesterday	two days before
the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
this week / month / year	that week / month / year
last week / month / year / Monday etc.	the previous week/month/year/Monday etc.
next week/month/year/Monday etc.	the following week/month/year/Monday etc.
two days / years etc., ago	two days / years etc., before
<i>"He left last week," she said.</i>	<i>She said that he had left the previous week.</i>

There is no change in the verb tenses in Reported speech when:

	Direct speech	Reported speech
1. the sentence expresses a general truth or permanent states and conditions.	<i>My mother said, "It gets dark earlier in the winter."</i>	<i>My mother said that it gets dark earlier in the winter.</i>
2. the introductory verb is in the Present, Future or Present Perfect tense.	<i>She says/will say/has said, "I can cook well."</i>	<i>She says/will say/has said that she can cook well.</i>
3. the verb of the sentence is in the Unreal Past (e.g. 2nd type conditionals, wishes, "it's time", "would rather", "suppose" etc).	<i>He said, "I would rather go out for dinner."</i>	<i>He said that he would rather go out for dinner.</i>
4. the following verbs are used: had better, could, would, used to, needn't have, should, might and ought to.	<i>Her boyfriend said, "I really ought to go home."</i>	<i>Her boyfriend said that he really ought to go home.</i>
5. there is Past or Past Continuous in a Clause of Time.	<i>She said, "When I was swimming, I got cramp."</i>	<i>She said (that) when she was swimming, she got cramp.</i>
6. the sentence expresses sth which is believed to be true. In this case the verb tense can either change or remain unchanged. However, if the sentence expresses sth which is not true, then the verb changes.	<i>He said, "Ethiopia is a third-world country." (true)</i> <i>He said, "Ethiopia is a highly developed country." (false)</i>	<i>He said that Ethiopia is / was a third-world country.</i> <i>He said that Ethiopia was a highly developed country.</i>

109 Rewrite the following sentences in Reported speech.

1. "Don't touch those ornaments!" said the old lady to the little boy.
2. "Do you think you'll be in tonight?" Sophia asked me.
3. She said, "The servant has washed the dishes."
4. "Stop fooling around, will you?" he said to the boy.
5. "Would it be possible to extend my overdraft?" I asked my bank manager.
6. "I have no intention of admitting my guilt," said the old man.
7. "What did the doctor tell you?" she asked me.
8. "When I woke up, the room was full of smoke," he said.
9. "I'd rather not sign it before the boss sees it," she said.
10. "China is a densely populated country," he said.
11. He says, "I have been working all morning and haven't finished yet."
12. "Greece has a very long recorded history," he said.

Modal verbs in Reported speech

Modal verbs generally remain unchanged in Reported speech. Some of them, however, change as follows:

Must

	Direct speech	Reported speech
1. When must expresses obligation , it changes into had to (when the sentence in Direct speech refers to the present) or would have to (when the sentence in Direct speech refers to the future).	<i>He said, "You must try harder."</i> <i>He said, "I must get my hair cut."</i>	<i>He said I had to try harder.</i> <i>He said he would have to get his hair cut.</i>
2. When must expresses advice, duty or logical assumption , it does not change or it changes into should .	<i>He said, "You must try that new restaurant." (advice)</i> <i>He said, "You must always lock the door before you leave." (duty)</i> <i>He said, "You must be tired." (logical assumption)</i>	<i>He said (that) I must/should try that new restaurant.</i> <i>He said (that) I must always lock the door before I leave.</i> <i>He said (that) I must be tired.</i>
3. Mustn't usually remains unchanged or it is expressed by wasn't / weren't to / couldn't as a negative infinitive .	<i>He said to me, "You mustn't enter that room."</i>	<i>He told me that I mustn't / wasn't to enter that room.</i> <i>or He told me not to enter that room.</i>

Can changes into:

	Direct speech	Reported speech
1. could (when the sentence in Direct speech refers to the present).	He said, "I can help you."	He said (that) he could help me.
2. would be able to (when the direct sentence refers to the future).	He said, "I can finish it tomorrow."	He said (that) he would be able to finish it the following day.

Shall changes into:

	Direct speech	Reported speech
1. offered (when it expresses willingness to do sth).	He said, "Shall I open the door?"	He offered to open the door.
2. should (when it asks for advice).	He said, "What shall I do?"	He wondered what he should do.
3. would (when it is used to ask for information).	He said, "When shall we arrive?"	He asked when they would arrive.

Needn't changes into:

	Direct speech	Reported speech
1. didn't need to / didn't have to (when the sentence in Direct speech refers to the present) or remains the same.	She said, "You needn't worry."	She said I didn't need to / didn't have to / needn't worry.
2. wouldn't have to (when the sentence in Direct speech refers to the future).	She said, "You needn't give me a lift tomorrow."	She said I wouldn't have to give her a lift the following day.

110 Rewrite the following sentences in Reported speech.

1. The assistant said, "Shall I wrap this for you?"
.....
2. Her father said, "You needn't come home early tomorrow."
.....
3. The teacher said, "You mustn't make that mistake again."
.....
4. Sandra said, "When shall I see him again?"
.....
5. Pam said, "I can organise that next week."
.....
6. The policeman said, "You needn't make a statement now."
.....
7. He said, "I can't afford to waste my time."
.....
8. Patrick said, "You must submit all the information by Sunday."
.....
9. She said, "What shall I do with the shopping?"
.....
10. She said, "You must be very disappointed."
.....

Exclamations - "Yes" and "No" short answers - Question tags

- A. Exclamations are introduced in Reported speech by **exclaim, say or give an exclamation, with an exclamation of surprise / horror / disgust / delight, thank, wish, call, etc.** They usually become statements when reported and the exclamation mark becomes a full stop.

Direct speech	Reported speech
<i>She said, "Happy Birthday!"</i>	<i>She wished me (a) happy birthday.</i>
<i>"Yuk!" she said when she saw the mouldy cake.</i>	<i>She gave an exclamation of disgust when she saw the mouldy cake.</i>
<i>He said, "You idiot!"</i>	<i>He called me an idiot.</i>

- B. "Yes" and "No" short answers are expressed in Reported speech by
subject + appropriate introductory verb

Direct speech	Reported speech
<i>"Will you come with me?" he said.</i>	<i>He asked me if I would go with him and I said</i>
<i>"Yes," I said.</i>	<i>I would.</i>
<i>"Can I have a pay rise?" he said.</i>	<i>He asked (the boss) if he could have a pay</i>
<i>"No," the boss said.</i>	<i>rise and the boss said he couldn't.</i>

C. Question tags

Question tags are omitted in Reported speech. However, we can use the verb **reminded** as a suitable introductory verb in order to retain their effect.

Direct speech	Indirect speech
<i>"This isn't the first time she has made the same mistake, is it?" he said.</i>	<i>He reminded me that that wasn't the first time she had made the same mistake.</i>

111 Turn the following sentences into Reported speech.

- "Will you lend me your car?" he said. "No," his father said.
.....
- "You liar!" she said.
- "Well done! That was a wonderful performance," they said.
.....
- She said, "Be careful with that knife. It's very sharp."
.....
- "Good luck with the test," he said.
- "Will you remind me to phone Jim later?" he said. "Yes," I said.
.....
- "This isn't the first time she has lied, is it?" he said to me.
.....
- "You clumsy fool!" she said.
- "Eeel" she said when she saw the mouse.
.....
- "That's revolting!" he said when he tasted the soup.
.....

Mixed Types of Reported speech

In everyday conversation we use a mixture of statements, commands and questions. To turn them into Reported speech, we can join them with "and", "as", "adding that", "and he added that", "because", "but", "since", "and he/she went on to say", "and he/she continued", "explaining that", etc. or the introductory verb in present participle form. Language features such as "Oh", "well" etc., which are used in Direct speech, are omitted in Reported speech.

Direct speech	Reported speech
"Oh, it's very cold," he said. "Shall I close the window?"	He remarked that it was very cold and offered to close the window. (Oh is omitted.)
"He can't come," she said. "He has a meeting."	She said that he couldn't go as he had a meeting.
"Why don't you buy a Mini?" he said. "They're very economical."	He suggested that I should buy a Mini, explaining that they're very economical.

Introductory Verbs

Introductory Verbs	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
agree demand offer promise + infinitive refuse threaten	"Yes, I'll take the job." "I must be informed of your decision immediately." "Shall I help you?" "I will write to you soon." "No, I won't tell you the answer." "Slow down or I'll get out of the car."	He agreed to take the job. He demand ed to be informed of my decision immediately. He offer ed to help me. He promis ed to write to me soon. He refus ed to tell me the answer. He threaten ed to get out of the car if I didn't slow down.
advise allow ask + sb + inf beg command	"You should see a doctor." "You can leave early." "Please, don't shout." "Please, please, don't punish me." "Turn around slowly!"	He advis ed me to see a doctor. He allow ed me to leave early. He ask ed me not to shout. He beg ged me not to punish him. He command ed her to turn around slowly.
encourage forbid instruct invite sb order + infinitive permit remind urge warn want accuse sb of + gerund	"Go on, buy yourself a new car!" "You mustn't talk during the test." "Turn left at the traffic lights." "I'd like you to come to my wedding." "Stop talking at once!" "You may enter the palace." "Don't forget to post the letters." "Think about it very seriously." "Don't believe everything she says." "I'd very much like you to come." "You lied to me."	He encourag ed me to buy a new car. He forbade us to talk during the test. He instruct ed me to turn left at the traffic lights. He invit ed me (to go) to his wedding. He order ed me to stop talking. He permitted me to enter the palace. He remind ed me to post the letters. He urg ed me to think about it very seriously. He warn ed me not to believe everything she said. He very much want ed me to go. He accus ed me of lying/having lied to him.
admit apologise for deny + gerund insist on suggest	"Yes, I'm the thief." "I'm sorry I'm late." "I didn't lose the tickets." "You must let me help you." "Let's go to the park!"	He admitt ed (to) being the thief. He apologis ed for being late. He deni ed losing/having lost the tickets. He insist ed on me/my letting him help me. He suggest ed going to the park.

complain to sb about + gerund / noun	"Your work is not good enough."	He complained to me about (the quality of) my work.
agree claim	"Yes, it is a foolish idea." "I've never seen her before."	He agreed that it was a foolish idea. He claimed that he had never seen her before / never to have seen her.
complain deny exclaim explain + that-clause	"You never listen to me." "No, I didn't see him." "What a horrible colour!" "It is a very serious matter."	He complained that I never listened to him. He denied that he had seen him. He exclaimed that it was a horrible colour. He explained that it was a very serious matter.
inform sb	"Your cheque is in the post."	He informed me that my cheque was in the post.
promise suggest	"I'll be very careful." "You ought to try harder."	He promised that he would be very careful. He suggested that I should try harder.
explain to sb + why / how + clause	"That's how I recognised him."	He explained to me how he had recognised him.
wonder where / what / why / how + clause (when the subject of the introductory verb is not the same as the subject in the indirect question)	He asked himself, "Why is she unhappy?"	He wondered why she was unhappy.
wonder where / what / how + infinitive (when the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the verb)	He asked himself, "Where shall I buy her a present from?"	He wondered where to buy her a present from.

112 Rewrite the following sentences in Reported speech using an appropriate introductory verb.

- "Would you like to come to a show with me?" he said.
.....
- "Shall we buy some new furniture?" she said.
.....
- "He's always moaning about everything," she said.
.....
- "I'll give you the money back tomorrow," she said.
.....
- She asked herself, "When shall I talk to him again?"
.....
- "Give us the money or we'll reveal your secret," the blackmailer said.
.....
- "Don't forget you have a doctor's appointment at 11 a.m.," I said to him.
.....
- "Please, please, give me one more chance," the boy said to me.
.....
- "You will apologise to the lady," my father said.
.....
- "It was John who wrote that graffiti," said his brother.
.....
- "Why don't we postpone the meeting?" the boss said.
.....
- "We know you were involved in the robbery," the policeman said.
.....

Presentation 5

113 Fill in the space with an appropriate introductory verb.

Yesterday, the boss's secretary (1) **apologised** for not having typed all the letters, but (2) that she'd had too much work to do. The boss (3) that she always made that excuse and (4) that perhaps she hadn't been working hard enough which she (5) although she (6) that she had arrived rather late. Her boss (7) to cut her pay unless she started working properly, but she (8) him not to and (9) to be at work on time in future. She even (10) to stay on late to get the letters done and the boss (11) that it might be a good idea. Afterwards, the boss (12) if he'd been a bit hard on her.

114 Turn the following into Reported speech.

1. "I know that John's an adventurous businessman," Paul said. "I'd never have expected him to get mixed up with that sort of firm, though."
.....
.....
2. "When I first came here," Susan said, "I had a hard time with the language, but now that I've been here for five years, I find I can get on very well."
.....
.....
3. She went on to say, "I usually only teach a class of beginners, but since we're missing a teacher at the moment, I'm also taking an advanced class."
.....
.....
4. "I hope," he said, "that you'll consider taking over the shop when I retire as you've developed an excellent eye for antiques. And that's quite a compliment, I assure you, coming from me."
.....
.....
5. "Who are you going to leave the house to?" I asked my uncle. "Perhaps," I went on, "you should leave it to Sarah as she seems to be the most attached to it."
.....
.....
6. "Don't imagine that because I've criticised you, I don't think you're a good musician," he said to me. "With enough practice, I have no doubt that you will be able to work as a professional."
.....
.....
7. "Is he going to accept the job offer," she asked, "or will he just moulder on here until it's time for him to retire?"
.....
.....
8. "I've heard her claim that she may give up her job and open a restaurant," he said. "She's certainly a good enough cook to do it."
.....
.....
9. "I didn't even need to open the second bottle of oil," she said, "so I needn't have worried about running out."
.....
.....
10. "I couldn't believe my ears when I heard they'd split up, " she said to me. "Could you phone Jane to see if it's really true?"
.....
.....
11. "It looks as if we'll have to cancel the meeting if Julia is going to be away," he said. "Do you know when she'll be back?"
.....
.....

12. "What would you think about going to a new restaurant tonight?" he said to his wife. "I've just read about one that's meant to be very good."
13. "By the way, if anyone rings while I'm out," she told her secretary, "please take a message and tell them that I won't be in until tomorrow afternoon."
14. "I might be able to come," he said to Sarah, "although I won't be able to let you know until tomorrow."
15. "Shall I pass on the news," I asked him, "or would you prefer I didn't until you've had a chance to see them?"
16. "Paul couldn't have said a more compromising thing," the manager said to us. "You'd think he was trying to undermine the whole business."
17. "I'd love to take a long holiday," she said to David, "but as things stand, I'll have to wait at least until next summer before I can leave my new assistant in charge."
18. "You mustn't ask such questions," she said to me, "or you're likely to find yourself in serious difficulties one day."
19. "I really must get going," Jane said to the family, "or I might miss the last train."
20. "Although I'm afraid I must reject your offer," Paul said to Philip, "I do appreciate your kindness in bringing it to my attention."
21. "I'm sorry that I didn't phone you yesterday," said Jane, "but you see I had to take my dog to the vet's."

115 Rewrite the following dialogue in Reported speech.

Mr Jones: Mr Smith, would you come into my office please?

Mr Smith: What can I do for you?

Mr Jones: We have a problem with the office Christmas party. Mrs White was organising it, but she has been taken sick.

Mr Smith: Would you like me to do it instead?

Mr Jones: That would be wonderful! And you'll definitely get a free ticket for yourself and your wife.

116 Rewrite the following dialogue in Reported speech.

Sally: I'm sorry to bother you Jackie, but I've run out of sugar. Do you think you could let me have some?
Jackie: Yes, of course. Would you like brown or white?
Sally: I'd rather have white please. Here's some money for it.
Jackie: Don't be silly! I won't take any money.
Sally: Well, I'll give you some sugar back tomorrow after I've been shopping.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

117 Rewrite the following dialogue in Reported speech.

Frank: Tracy, don't forget to pick the children up after school!
Tracy: Oh no, I'd completely forgotten about it! I don't suppose you could do it instead?
Frank: No, I can't. You see, I've got a lot of work to do.
Tracy: Please, please won't you do it? You could always go into work early in the morning.
Frank: Oh, all right. I suppose I can collect the children after all.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

118 Rewrite the following passage in Direct speech.

The postman asked Mr Wood to sign for the parcel, explaining that it had been sent by Recorded Delivery. Mr Wood exclaimed that it was the gardening book he had been waiting for and wondered whether the postman was interested in gardening. The postman said that he was and that he had a very large garden that was difficult to look after. He asked if Mr Wood could give him any advice on the subject and Mr Wood offered to lend him the book. The postman accepted his offer gladly and thanked him.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

119 Rewrite the following passage in Direct speech.

The doctor told Mr Green to sit down and asked him what was wrong. Mr Green replied that he had a pain in his knee, which hurt when he walked and was keeping him awake at night. The doctor asked him to roll his trousers up so that he could examine his knee. Mr Green enquired whether it was anything serious and the doctor assured him that he had just strained a muscle, and if he rested his leg it would be better in a few days.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

120 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

1. She **boasted / claimed that she could** write before she was two but really she didn't learn until she was five.
2. He touch the wire with wet hands or I would be electrocuted.
3. She lend her £10 and I said I couldn't.
4. After ten hours of questioning Robert stolen all the money from the safe.
5. Mother bring me another cup of tea.
6. The doctor down on fats or she would develop heart problems.
7. He suggested excursion the following day.
8. The fireman evacuate the building at once.
9. He said that if things got worse, they the house and move to another.
10. She gave at the sight of so much blood, and then fainted.

121 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. He mentioned all the details to the chairman.
TOLD
2. "I disapprove of people who lie," he said.
DISAPPROVAL
3. She refused to go to bed until she had seen her favourite soap opera.
INSISTED
4. He wondered where his friends had gone.
HIMSELF
5. "I'm sorry that I kept you waiting," he said to me.
FOR
6. "Don't forget to buy some more milk," he said.
REMINDED
7. "No, I didn't kill him," he said.
DENIED
8. "I am the one who broke the window," she said.
BEING
9. "That's the way to install the light," the shopkeeper said to us.
EXPLAINED
10. "Let's go to the zoo," he said.
GOING
11. "The food is awful here," she said.
ABOUT
12. "Don't talk during the lesson!" the teacher said.
FORBADE

Consolidation 5

122 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

As its name suggests, junk food has more negative effects (1) the human system than positive. Eaten (2) as a snack and at meal times, junk food contains little more (3) carbohydrates, saturated fats and false calories. Potato chips, hamburgers and carbonated drinks all fall (4) the guise of "junk food" and most people in Western society have sampled some in one form or (5)

Junk food began in (6) United States during the 1960s and (7) its harmful effects have been public knowledge for years, it is (8) a popular food. Common diseases (9) as overweight, tooth decay, intestinal problems and constipation are not the only side (10) of a poor diet. Prolonged poor eating can (11) to such diseases as diabetes, heart attacks, diverticular disease and colon cancer.

So why do people continue to (12) in junk food? Promoted (13) American popular culture, "fast-food hangouts" have (14) an international meeting place for teenagers to (15) their free time. Fast food is convenient worldwide, although in (16) it is neither economical (17) substantial.

Good health stems (18) healthy food. The Department of Health and Social Security and more than fifty independent medical committees have (19) the importance of healthy eating. It's (20) to listen!

Phrasal Verbs 1

123 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the blanks with one of the prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

out of, off, into, for, back, on, up, down on, in, out, at, up on

- The government have decided to cut **back** spending on health services.
- He was told to cut smoking or he would suffer serious health problems.
- The announcer cut the programme to give the alarming news.
- During the power workers' strike all the electrical services were cut
- This composition would be better if you cut the second paragraph.
- Their house was cut from the village by the flooding river.
- Winter is coming. The days are really starting to draw
- He had to draw his savings when he was made redundant.
- She drew the lecture to nearly three hours although it was supposed to last an hour.
- The limousine drew in front of the theatre and the actress got out.
- Yes, I've heard the news. Simon dropped to tell me this morning.
- Sales of records and cassettes have dropped considerably this year.
- He was forced to drop of college when his father died.
- The unforeseen expense ate my savings but it was worth it.
- I truly feel you in your terrible misfortune.
- She's trying to get on with her schoolmates but she doesn't really fit
- They've fitted their workshop with new equipment.
- I wish you wouldn't fly me like that every time I forget something.
- I'm afraid their business is on the verge of folding
- We'll have to organise a workers' meeting if we want to head a strike.
- Could you check the children and see what they're up to?
- We had to wait to check at the hotel as the receptionist was not at his desk.
- All guests should check by 12 o'clock or they will be charged extra.
- He was cheated his full holiday due to a change in company policy.

Phrasal Verbs 2

124 Match the phrasal verbs in bold italics with the definitions given.

1. The soldiers **fell back** when the enemy appeared on the horizon.
2. She **fell back on** her own ingenuity when all else failed.
3. John **fell for** Susan at first sight. They got married a month later.
4. The roof of the house **fell in** during the earthquake.
5. To avoid an argument she **fell in with** her husband's plans.
6. When Tom saw the food he **fell on** it and ate it greedily.
7. Attendance **has fallen off** severely during the Christmas period.
8. They always **fall out with** each other over the household accounts.
9. Their holiday plan **fell through** when the children became ill.
10. During the war many men **joined up** in order to defend their country.

- A. to fall in love with sb
- B. to decline
- C. to agree
- D. to fail to happen
- E. to retreat
- F. to quarrel
- G. to collapse
- H. to attack
- I. to join the army
- J. to turn to sth for help

1. **E** 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

What's the difference between a) embark-embark on, b) enter-enter into, c) enter for-enter on?

Idioms 1

125 Look at Appendix 2 and explain the following idioms in bold italics.

1. She has been **eating her heart out** since her boyfriend started dating her best friend.
2. She has lived here so long that she knows the town **like the back of her hand**.
3. Would you **hold your horses**? I'll be ready as soon as I can!
4. All the praise he's got from his teachers had **gone to his head**; now he thinks he's the best student in the school.
5. I'd appreciate it if you could **lend me a hand** with these bags; I can't carry all of them myself.
6. When she told her father she had dented the car, he **flew off the handle** and told her she could never drive it again.
7. When he failed the exam for the third time he **lost heart** and decided not to try again.
8. Mary **is hand in glove with** her supervisor, and as a result knows everything that's going on in the office.
9. When they heard the sound of sirens the burglars **took to their heels** and managed to escape.
10. I had the news **straight from the horse's mouth**; John himself told me he was planning to change jobs.
11. I don't dare to tell him my plans; I know he's incapable of **keeping things under his hat**.
12. He **has so much time on his hands** now that he's retired that he's taken up several new hobbies.
13. As the politician hadn't had the chance to prepare a speech he had to deliver one **off the cuff**.
14. She **had her heart in her mouth** all the time the firemen were trying to rescue her child from the building.
15. He had such a pronounced foreign accent that no one could **make head or tail of** what he was saying.
16. Talking this matter over again is just **flogging a dead horse**; we've said everything we can say about it.
17. Someone is going to have to do something about the violence at football matches before the situation **gets out of hand**.
18. You have to drive a car a number of times before you **get the hang of it**.
19. You should be careful about criticizing her as she **takes** everything so much **to heart**.
20. She's a **bit of a dark horse**; nobody knew she was a published poet.
21. Everyone says Maria **struck gold** when she married her millionaire husband.
22. Linda must be lacking in **grey matter** if she can't understand this.

Idioms 2

break the ice: ease the tension when one first meets people

the tip of the iceberg: small evident part of a much larger concealed situation

ill at ease: embarrassed, uncomfortable

the ins and outs: the details

have many irons in the fire: to have a lot of plans / possibilities in progress

be for the high jump: be in serious trouble

have a job: find it difficult

stew in one's own juice: to suffer the consequences of one's own actions

keep up with the Joneses: to compete with others in status / material goods

before one can say Jack Robinson: extremely quickly

126 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

- George has so **many irons in the fire** that if he decides not to accept the sales job he has the pick of at least seven other positions.
- When someone threatened to report him to the police, Peter was out of the house
- Having worked for the firm for years, she knew all the of company policy.
- The children who broke the window will when their father finds out.
- When she introduced her two friends, she tried to by mentioning the interests they had in common.
- Our neighbours do their best by buying the best cars and most expensive furniture.
- She making the pastry as she had never done it before and had no recipe to follow.
- He was at the party as he didn't know anyone who was there.
- The first cockroach I saw in the kitchen was just; there were actually hundreds under the cooker and fridge.
- It's your own fault you got the sack; now you

Prepositions

127 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- You should not use aerosols because they're harmful **to** the environment.
- The mice huddled each other in the corner of their cage.
- The tourists were hunched under the weight of their rucksacks.
- I haggled the shopkeeper over the price of the souvenir.
- I still haven't heard the insurance company about my claim.
- The rioters indulged a bout of looting.
- I've received an invitation the annual nurses' conference in Glasgow.
- I'm becoming increasingly impatient this class; they never pay attention.
- I'm indebted my husband all his support.
- The computer in the reception is inferior the one in my office.

128 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- He says he's feeling a bit **off** colour today.
- regard to your request, I'm afraid there's nothing I can do.
- She wasn't allowed in the bar because she was age.
- The escaped prisoner was liberty for nearly a week.
- He is a solicitor profession.
- This coat was sale when I bought it so it was very cheap.
- He is arrears with his loan payment.
- I will give you the money condition that you pay it back within the month.
- Strawberries are season in May and June.
- He is an expert name only; he actually knows very little.
- Surgeons operated her last night; her condition is said to be satisfactory.

129 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. Everyone was sleeping heavily when the fire broke out.

SOUND

2. She has no talent for art.

HOPELESS

3. She doesn't know whether she should marry him or not.

MINDS

4. He answered immediately.

QUICK

5. She sued the shop as their claim had damaged her reputation.

INJURIOUS

6. It has just crossed my mind that he's not been telling the truth.

OCCURRED

7. She left school when she was sixteen.

AGE

8. He was dismissed for neglecting his work.

LED

9. She looks exactly like her mother.

IMAGE

10. His illness was serious but he managed to get over it.

SEVERITY

130 Find the mistake and correct it.

1. Which of your two sisters is the ~~older~~?

2. His elderly sister is eighteen years old.

3. There aren't a lot of refreshments to go round.

4. There was plenty wood for the fire.

5. A note of sarcasm entered into his voice.

6. He was never very good in Maths.

7. Everybody have the right to freedom of choice.

8. Every one admired her beauty.

9. It is said that "everything come to he who waits".

10. I wouldn't be saying this except I were sure of the facts.

11. The lawyer will explain you where you stand legally.

12. He is fairly friendlier than his wife.

13. It's far enough to go on foot.

14. There is nothing farther to be said on this matter.

15. The dog hasn't eaten his food still.

elder

Consolidation 5

131 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case **it gets cold**.

- The child is reported since last Tuesday.
- Do you feel hungry? Not really, but I could a light snack.
- He had to going to the party but found it to be quite boring.
- Considering his motivation, he did quite well at school this term.
- After the manager had made such a generous offer, the employee but to accept it.
- I have written several letters to the company but they have paid my complaints.
- It was a lifetime to be offered such an important position.
- Reading the newspaper daily is a good way of keeping yourself current affairs.
- In spite the students protested, the teacher set the exam for Friday.
- Had Jane so quickly, an accident would have happened.

132 Match the phrases and explain the proverbs.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Better late | A. before they hatch. | 1. F |
| 2. Absence makes the heart | B. shouldn't throw stones. | 2. |
| 3. People in glass-houses | C. keeps the doctor away. | 3. |
| 4. All's well | D. on the other side (of the fence). | 4. |
| 5. An apple a day | E. wait for no man. | 5. |
| 6. Don't count your chickens | F. than never. | 6. |
| 7. The grass is always greener | G. killed the cat. | 7. |
| 8. A new broom | H. grow fonder. | 8. |
| 9. Curiosity | I. sweeps clean. | 9. |
| 10. Time and tide | J. that ends well. | 10. |

133 In most lines of the following text there is an incorrect item. Read the numbered lines 1 - 11 and then write the correct form of the word in the spaces provided for your answers. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (✓). The first one has been done for you.

	Answers
1 The latest, most comfortable credit card is the Europersonal Loan Card,	convenient
2 with who you can increase your spending power by up to £20,000. This	
3 can be lent at low interest rates and with a minimum of complicated	
4 red-tape. Major purchases can be done with the freedom this card	
5 provides. In addition, the card can be used to act with unexpected	
6 emergencies. The bank requires some form of proof that the customer	
7 will be able to repay some money borrowed. A previous bank or building	
8 society statement will serve this reason. Provided the loan is repaid	
9 within three months, the interest rate will be only 2%. Moreover, in the	
10 event of this time limit expiring, the rate will increase at 3.5%. The	
11 Europersonal Loan Card is a secure, easy way to stretch your budget.	

- 134** This is a part of a speech given by a political candidate, followed by the newspaper report printed the next day. Complete the report, using no more than two words to fill each blank. The words you need do not appear in the speech. The first one has been done for you.

A. "... And so ladies and gentlemen, I would like you to know that if I am elected, I will do everything in my power to ensure that the voters of this constituency will be fully and fairly represented in all phases of the governmental process. While your beliefs have been misrepresented if not completely neglected in the past, I shall consider it my duty to make your voices heard in the corridors of Whitehall as they have never been heard before, clearly stating the dissatisfaction which you have every right to feel. Furthermore, I shall consider my duty unfulfilled until I have done everything in my power to remove every cause of your dissatisfaction and resentment. I thank you, ladies and gentlemen, and I look forward to what I hope will be many fruitful meetings where together we can face the problems of this great country.

B. ... approaching the height of his condescending pomposity, Mr Whyte neared his conclusion by (1) **addressing** his listeners and (2) them that he would do all he could to assist them as their (3) He referred to (4) misrepresentations and neglect of the voters' beliefs and (5) to bring to the Government's (6) their dissatisfaction, which, he said was quite (7) He (8) to say that he would not be (9) until he had done everything (10) to (11) the situation. After thanking the (12), he expressed (13) that in future he would be able to (14) with his constituents in meetings which would (15) worthwhile results.

Word usage

- 135** Fill in the following collocational grids.

	money	dog	property	opportunity	bullet	cat	child	hope	youth
lost	✓								
stray									

	cars in a factory	discussion	energy	warmth	offspring	bad feelings	a play
produce	✓						
generate							

	teeth	money	fur	cream	sympathy	pearls	hair	passport	jewellery
fake									
counterfeit									
sham									
mock									
false	✓								

Practice Test Five

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

It is often said that the British (1) about the weather more than any (2) people in the world; some extremists (3) that they talk about nothing else. But in fact, even in countries with (4) less changeable climates (5) Britain's, the weather is an endless, if not varied, (6) of conversational fodder. This seems only natural when you (7) that the weather is (8) of the few things we all have in (9) It affects our senses, and (10) our moods, so directly and, at times, so intensely (11) it is only natural we should talk about (12) After several days (13) even weeks of dark, gloomy weather, a bright day (14) to bring out the best in everyone; people recognise the relief (15) others' expressions which they feel inside themselves, and (16) it hard to resist commenting (17) a change which is having such an evident (18) on everyone. "Nice day, isn't it?" is much more than simply a comment on the state of the weather; it is a comment on the human state (19) , an acknowledgement that the tenability of our place in the universe (20) on the existence of a community of human feeling.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. In spite of his absent-mindedness, he is a good teacher.
Although
- b. He was sentenced to two years in prison for drunken driving.
Drunken driving earned
- c. Many people were doubtful about the new rules.
There was
- d. There was no precedent for the chairman's dismissal.
Never
- e. It is a mystery what happened to the passengers.
The fate
- f. John moved to Ireland a year ago.
It is
- g. The family was informed of the whereabouts of their son.
The whereabouts
- h. For an athlete of his strength and speed, winning should be easy.
For such

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

- 1. If I hadn't stopped you, you run over.
- 2. In order to remember the text, ... repeating it to yourself.
- 3. If you gamble, you run losing all your money.
- 4. You should of that car. It keeps breaking down.
- 5. As you're home by midnight I don't mind your going out.
- 6. That dress is too short; I were you.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. The director knows a lot about modern art. | WIDE |
| | |
| 2. His behaviour at the party was incomprehensible to us. | BEYOND |
| | |
| 3. I consider him my worst enemy. | LOOK |
| | |
| 4. That Mary will pass the exam is a foregone conclusion. | BOUND |
| | |
| 5. They may think you killed him. | SUSPECTED |
| | |
| 6. Len tried to do the exercise, but without success. | MATTER |
| | |
| 7. Only Paul succeeded in reaching the goal. | FAILED |
| | |
| 8. They were educated very strictly. | THEIRS |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Someone is knocking at India's door. No one special, just Ravi Khanna, a well-dressed young man who works hard and talks fast. But that unremarkable exterior masks an agent of revolution, arousing passions that are transforming India's tottering socialist order. "Good morning, Mrs Bedi," Ravi says. "May I come in to show you the Mitey-Vac? Is the man of the house in?"

Before Mrs Bedi knows it, Ravi is inside her small apartment, demonstrating his wonder contraption. "It can clean anything," Ravi boasts. Mr Bedi, however, is not impressed by the \$200 price tag - more than two weeks' wages for a senior-grade civil servant such as himself. Ravi, sweating now, promises training, service, lifetime devotion. He says, "For me the customer is like a god." Mrs Bedi looks at her husband. "It's your choice," he says.

Ravi and Mrs Bedi are only drops in the ocean of India's 835 million people, but they are part of a wave that has brought unprecedented change to India's economy and society over the past decade. The participants in this social revolution are the members of India's middle class. A hard working group with rupees to spare, they constitute a marketer's dream, and they are expanding rapidly. It has been predicted that ten years from now about 300 million Indians will be members of the middle class.

In India, social position used to be equated with an English education and a job in the Indian Administrative Service. Today it is money that increasingly defines status, giving rise to a middle class that cuts across caste and religion. The rush to acquire has affected such sensitive traditions as arranged marriages and has allowed middle-class women to emerge in the workforce. It is no longer regarded as shameful to covet the good life and to seek an even better life for one's children. Instead of bowing down under drudgery, as Indians have traditionally done, they now consider that self-gratification is no longer a dirty word. 20

The urge to splurge has been fuelled by several interlocking forces. Apart from limited economic liberalisation, a wealth of consumer items now jam once poorly-stocked shelves. Television advertising deepens middle-class dissatisfaction with the restrictions that remain. 25

The pursuit of a middle-class lifestyle is swiftly altering Indian society. While most marriages are still arranged, restrictions of caste compatibility are giving way to considerations of money. Even more dramatic is the emergence of the working wife, once regarded by the middle class as a sign that her husband could not support his family. Nowadays, 99% of the men who apply to marriage bureaus want wives who are already employed. 30

While many are climbing up the economic ladder, the problem of poverty is as desperate as ever. India remains divided between the barely subsisting poor and the consumer-happy middle class, and an enormous national effort is needed to reconcile these two worlds. The challenge is to provide education, health care and job opportunities for the poor, so they too, can participate in India's revolution before resentment erupts among the have-nots. 35

1. In what sense is Ravi Khanna "knocking at India's door" (line 1)?
.....
2. What are the "passions" (line 3) that are being aroused?
.....
3. What is meant by "wonder contraption" (lines 5 - 6)?
.....
4. Why is Ravi described as "sweating" (line 8)?
.....
5. In what sense are Ravi and Mrs Bedi "drops in the ocean" (line 10)?
.....
6. How are the changes described "unprecedented" (line 11)?
.....
7. Explain the phrase "rupees to spare" (line 13) in your own words.
.....
8. In what way are the middle class a "marketer's dream" (line 13)?
.....
9. What is meant by "no longer a dirty word" (line 22)?
.....
10. Explain the phrase "the urge to splurge" (line 23).
.....
11. Explain in your own words the change in attitude towards working wives.
.....
12. What are the "two worlds" (line 33) referred to?
.....
13. In a paragraph of 70-90 words, explain what changes are taking place in Indian society and what problems they present.
.....
.....
.....
.....

Presentation 6

Adjectives

Adjectives describe people, places, things, ideas etc. They have only one form in all genders, singular and plural, and can be placed before nouns or after verbs such as **appear, keep, make, feel, sound, smell, look, taste** etc.

e.g. *She is a **pretty** girl.*

*It smells **horrible**.*

*They are **hard-working** students.*

*Keep **quiet**, please!*

Most common adjectives (e.g. **large, long, heavy, late** etc) do not have a particular ending. However, there are certain common endings for adjectives which are formed from nouns and verbs. These are:

- **able** fashionable
- **al** classical
- **ant** hesitant
- **ar** angular
- **ary** imaginary
- **ate** fortunate
- **ent** dependent
- **ous** courageous

- **esque** picturesque
- **ful** careful
- **ian** Canadian
- **ible** possible
- **ic** historic
- **ical** historical
- **ious** hilarious
- **ish** reddish

- **ist** racist
- **less** careless
- **like** businesslike
- **ly** friendly
- **ory** introductory
- **ous** famous
- **some** quarrelsome
- **y** lucky

The most common prefixes used with adjectives are:

a - amoral
ab - abnormal
anti - anti-aircraft
dis - dishonest
hyper - hypersensitive
il - illegal

im - impossible
in - intolerant
ir - irregular
mal - malnourished
non - non-stop
over - overgrown

pre - premature
pro - pro-American
sub - subtropical
super - superhuman
un - untrue
under - undermanned

136 Write the adjectives made from the following words:

day	<i>daily</i>	rust	.....	energy	.....
victory	.....	accident	.....	sun	.....
base	.....	responsibility	.....	hesitate	.....
fear	.....	affect	.....	circle	.....
use	.....	life	.....	glory	.....
beauty	.....	fool	.....	humour	.....

Compound adjectives are formed with:

1. present participles
2. past participles
3. cardinal numbers + nouns
4. prefixes and suffixes
5. well, badly, ill, poorly

long-standing debt, long-playing record
self-employed carpenter, candle-lit restaurant
one-year-old girl, three-day course, a £30 pair of shoes
non-stop show, waterproof watch
well-paid clerk, ill-mannered person, poorly-paid assistant

Special Notes on Adjectives

- 1. Some adjectives ending in **-ly** look like adverbs (friendly, motherly). These adjectives form their adverbs by adding the word "way".
e.g. *She behaved **in a very friendly way**.*
- 2. Some adjectives such as **poor, late** and **old** have different meanings according to where they are placed in the sentence.
e.g. *My grandfather is very **old**. (in years)*
*Tony is an **old friend** of mine. (I've known him for a long time.)*
- 3. Certain adjectives can be used with **the** to represent a group as a whole.
e.g. ***the rich, the dead, the young, the unemployed, the homeless, the blind** etc.*
- 4. Present and past participles can be used as adjectives.

Present participles

describe the quality of a noun.

Past participles

describe how the subject feels.

- e.g. **annoying** behaviour (What kind of behaviour? annoying)
- e.g. **annoyed** teacher (How does the teacher feel? annoyed)

- 5. Nouns describing materials, substances, purpose and use can be used as adjectives but they do not have comparative or superlative forms and cannot be modified by very.

e.g. a **cotton** shirt

a **gold** necklace

a **silver** brooch

a **summer** dress

a **stone** wall

a **chopping** board

but

a **wooden** table (not *wood table)

a **woollen** coat (not *wool coat)

However, there are adjectives derived from the above nouns. These adjectives have a metaphorical meaning.

- e.g. **silky** hair (hair like silk)
- golden** hair
- silvery** moon
- stony** look etc.

- 6. There are certain adverbs such as **above, upstairs, downstairs, inside** etc. which can be used as adjectives.
e.g. *an **upstairs** room the **downstairs** bathroom the **above** rule the **inside** page etc.*
- 7. **Little, old** and **young** are often used in fixed adjective-noun combinations, so they are always placed next to the noun they modify.
e.g. *This **young man** drinks too much.* *That **little girl** seems to be lost.*
- 8. Adjectives which describe absolute qualities such as **left, right, single, correct, equal, absent** etc. do not have comparative or superlative forms.

Order of adjectives

A general guide to the ordering of adjectives is given below. However, this cannot be strictly followed since when there is more than one adjective in a sentence, it is rather difficult to say in exactly what order they should be placed as this depends on the speaker's feeling or intention.

	Number	Opinion	Size/Weight	Age	Shape	Colour / Temper.	Verb / participle form	Origin / Nationality	Material	Noun
all/both/	three	nice	small		round	brown	carved		wooden	tables
half	one		large	old	rectangular			Chinese		mirror

Notes

- When two or more adjectives of the same category are used the more general adjective comes before the more specific one.
e.g. a kind, gentle man
- Commas are only used to separate adjectives which are equally important; they are never used to separate the final adjective from the noun it modifies.
e.g. a long, distinguished career a rare, colourful bird

137 Rewrite the sentences putting the words in brackets into the appropriate places.

- I live in that house on the corner. (old, big)
.....
- My boss is a man. (middle-aged, rich)
.....
- He bought a(n) vase at the auction. (blue, antique, glass)
.....
- Sally wore a(n) dress at the wedding. (white, expensive, lace)
.....
- The customers at the restaurant received a meal. (ten, first) (three-course, free)
.....
- We spent our holiday on the coast. (popular, sandy, sheltered, French)
.....
- She bought a(n) lamp at the auction. (china, tall, attractive, round)
.....
- We saw a(n) film at the cinema. (German, recent, entertaining) (local, indoor)
.....
- They arrived in a(n) car. (hired, elegant, old-fashioned, black)
.....
- My uncle is a(n) writer. (mystery, talented, experienced)
.....
- She took a bath. (hot, long, luxurious)
.....
- This is a flower. (wild, rare, European)
.....

Adverbs

Adverbs usually describe a verb but they can also modify adjectives, nouns, sentences or other adverbs.

That is, adverbs tell us	how (adverbs of manner)	how often (adverbs of frequency) or to what extent (adverbs of degree)	something happens or is.
	when (adverbs of time)		
	where (adverbs of place)		

- e.g. She entered the room **slowly**. (how? adverb of manner)
 He was **absolutely** right in what he said. (to what extent? adverb of degree)
 The people **next door** are very unfriendly. (where? adverb of place)
 She types **very fast**. (how? adverb of manner)
 She left **yesterday**. (when? adverb of time)
 She **usually** goes shopping on Fridays. (how often? adverb of frequency)

Presentation 6

Adverbs of manner are usually formed by adding **-ly** to the adjective.

clever - cleverly bad - badly careful - carefully

There are also **adverbial phrases**. These are usually formed with a preposition + noun.
at the cinema, in a mess, in the pub, again and again, now and then, here and there etc.

Spelling of "-ly" adverbs

quick	-	quickly	basic	-	basically	but →	extreme - extremely
beautiful	-	beautifully	sly	-	slyly		
capable	-	capably	busy	-	busily		

Adjectives / Adverbs with the same form

best	cold *	easy	fine	inside	low	right	thick *	wide
cheap *	daily	extra	first	last	monthly	short	thin	yearly
clean	dear	fair	further	late	past	slow *	tight	etc.
clear	deep	far	hard	long	pretty	straight	weekly	
close	early	fast	hourly	loud *	quick *	sure *	well	

He is a fast driver.	⇒	He drives fast .
That was a cheap blouse.	⇒	I bought that blouse cheap . (colloquial)
She was the first guest to arrive.	⇒	She arrived first .

The adverbs having an asterisk (*) can be also found with -ly form, otherwise they are less formal.
e.g. The train went **slowly** through the tunnel.

138 Identify the underlined words as adjectives or adverbs.

- 1. They charged me extra because my luggage was overweight.
- 2. He's a hard worker, and he works fast as well.
- 3. You must draw the lines very fine.
- 4. I'd like you to slice the meat very thin.
- 5. I answered two of the questions wrong.
- 6. They stayed inside the office to discuss some inside information.
- 7. She held tight to the rope.
- 8. Go straight down the road and you'll see the bank on the right side.
- 9. He stopped dead when he saw the dead cat in the road.
- 10. He pays rent weekly, but we pay on a monthly basis.
- 11. I wish you wouldn't talk so loud.

adverb

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

There are certain adverbs which have a different form from the -ly form and therefore different meaning such as:

direct = by the shortest route directly = immediately	right = correctly, completely rightly = wisely	last = after all others / most recently lastly = finally
hard = in a hard way hardly = scarcely	deep = going a long way down deeply = greatly	late = after the usual time lately = recently
high = to a high level highly = very much	free = without cost freely = willingly	pretty = fairly prettily = in a pretty way
short = suddenly shortly = not long, soon	wide = fully widely = to a large extent	wrong = in a wrong way wrongly = mistakenly

Word order of adverbs of manner, place and time

When there is more than one time adverb, the one expressing a shorter time period precedes the one which expresses a longer period.

1.	subject + verb + (object)	manner	place	time	
				shorter period	longer period
	<i>He ate his breakfast</i>	<i>quickly</i>	<i>in the kitchen</i>	<i>at 7.00</i>	<i>yesterday.</i>

2.	subject + verb of movement + (object)	place	manner	time
	<i>He left</i>	<i>home</i>	<i>hurriedly</i>	<i>at 7.30.</i>

3.	time (to emphasise the time)	subject + verb + (object)	place	manner
	<i>Every weekday</i>	<i>he goes</i>	<i>to the office</i>	<i>by car.</i>

Adverbs of frequency are usually placed after the auxiliary verb or before the main verb, but in short answers they precede the auxiliary verb.

e.g. *I have **never** seen such a huge lion.*

*"She is late for work again." "Yes, she **always** is."*

*He **sometimes** goes to the pub after work for a beer.*

Adverbs of degree usually go before the words they modify.

e.g. *She types **quite** fast.* *He gave me **only** £1.*

Certain adverbs such as **probably**, **evidently**, **obviously**, **actually**, **certainly**, **presumably**, **undoubtedly** etc. can be placed at the beginning of a sentence or in the same position as adverbs of frequency.

e.g. ***Obviously**, she suffers a lot.* *I'll **certainly** be on time.*

139 Choose the correct item.

1. Instead of flying **direct** / **directly** to Rome, we stopped over in Paris.
2. We went **direct** / **directly** to the manager as soon as we realised what had happened.
3. She worked very **hard** / **hardly** to get that promotion.
4. You've **hard** / **hardly** eaten anything! Do have some more!
5. After the flood the water levels remained very **high** / **highly** for several days.
6. Police described the situation as "**high** / **highly** dangerous", and warned the public not to approach the area.
7. The arrow fell **short** / **shortly** of the target.
8. The winner of the dance competition will **short** / **shortly** be announced.
9. The sword passed **right** / **rightly** through the knight's heart and pinned him to the floor.
10. The teacher was **right** / **rightly** upset when the students refused to do their homework.
11. I was **deep** / **deeply** touched by everyone's concern after my accident.
12. We walked **deep** / **deeply** into the forest, following the tracks of the deer.
13. Residents may visit the museum **free** / **freely**, but tourists will have to pay.
14. The secretary **free** / **freely** admitted that she had been using company funds for her own benefit.
15. It's **wide** / **widely** believed that Marilyn Monroe died under suspicious circumstances.
16. The dentist said, "Open **wide** / **widely**."
17. He's a cheat, a liar and a fraud and **last** / **lastly** he's extremely rude!

Presentation 6

18. I *last* / *lastly* visited my parents in May 1983.
19. The boss wanted to know who had been in his office *late* / *late*ly, as some papers had been disturbed.
20. "I'll probably be home *late* / *late*ly tonight, darling," was the message left on the answering machine.
21. The picnic was very successful; a lot of people came and the weather was *pretty* / *prettily* good!
22. The church was *pretty* / *prettily* decorated with summer flowers for the wedding.
23. He was *wrong* / *wrongly* arrested as an escaped criminal.
24. If you do it *wrong* / *wrongly* again, you'll be fired.

140 Put the adverbs in the right place in the following sentences.

1. She is on time for work. (never)
She is never on time for work.
2. They go out for dinner. (seldom)
.....
3. Peter is bragging about how rich he is. (always)
.....
4. He won an expensive car. (unexpectedly / amazingly / yesterday)
.....
5. I get the feeling called "deja vu", that something has happened before. (sometimes)
.....
6. A speech was delivered and the film was shown. (first / later)
.....
7. There's been talk of people getting laid off. (late
ly, too much)
.....8. If you use the buses, it's a good idea to buy a bus pass. (frequently)
.....
9. He flew to New York with no stop-overs. (direct)
.....
10. She's praised by her boss though she works. (seldom / hard)
.....
11. People ask me whether I prefer living here to living abroad. (often)
.....
12. I could see the name on the bell as it was very dark. (hardly)
.....
13. He attends church even though he doesn't consider himself a religious person. (regularly)
.....
14. If you believe that you're a failure, you will fail. (always)
.....
15. She was accused of treason and taken to prison. (wrongly / straight)
.....
16. My doctor advised me to have a glass of sherry as it's good as a tonic. (occasionally)
.....
17. It was outrageous of him to speak to the Headmaster. (pretty / rudely)
.....
18. It has been proved who was responsible for the murders of the "Princes in the Tower". (never)
.....

141 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentence printed before them.

1. They're such hard workers.
They work

2. The club has monthly meetings.
The club meets
3. We were surprised by their sudden decision to get married.
We were surprised when
4. If you're careful when you wire the plug, you won't have an accident.
If you wire
5. We asked for an early call in the morning.
We asked to
6. His boss had a very high regard for him.
He was
7. The intruder dealt her a hard blow to the head.
The intruder hit
8. Last night was our best performance.
We performed
9. He's such a brilliant player.
He plays
10. The information was late and no longer useful.
The information arrived
11. It was such a slow bus that we were half an hour late.
The bus
12. There was a sudden flash of lightning across the sky.
Lightning flashed
13. We were early for the play and had to queue outside.
We arrived
14. My brother's a faster swimmer than me.
My brother
15. Give the door a hard push and it will shut.
Push the

142 Underline the correct word.

1. The doctor advised me to take things **easy** / *easily* for a few weeks after the operation.
2. Ladies and gentlemen, we will **short** / *shortly* be passing the Tower of London.
3. Because of the fog they could not see **clear** / *clearly* enough to land the plane.
4. The thorn had worked itself **deep** / *deeply* into the dog's paw.
5. The dart flew **wide** / *widely* of the target and hit the clock!
6. The taxi driver took us **straight** / *straightly* to the hotel.
7. Snow lay **thick** / *thickly* on the ground for days.
8. Surgeons operated on the man too **late** / *lately* to save his life.
9. The athlete came **close** / *closely* to beating the world record.
10. I could **hard** / *hardly* make out his signature on the cheque.
11. Please complete the form **clear** / *clearly* in block capitals.
12. It's **high** / *highly* probable that there will be a baggage handlers' strike at the airport.
13. If you complete and return the form within ten days, you will receive a sample magazine **free** / *freely*.
14. Some people believe that success does not come **cheap** / *cheaply*.
15. I'd advise you to think **hard** / *hardly* before accepting this offer.
16. This particular species of butterfly is **wide** / *widely* seen on Mediterranean coastlines.
17. She was **fine** / *finely* dressed at the wedding.
18. The money, which was **wrong** / *wrongly* paid into his account, must be paid back by the end of the month.
19. The serving suggestion on the packet showed the pâté **thin** / *thinly* spread on biscuits.
20. He checked the contents of the bag **quick** / *quickly*, then left for the airport.

Regular Comparisons

Adjectives

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
one-syllable	small sad nice	smaller (than) sadder (than) nicer (than)	the smallest (of/in) the saddest (of/in) the nicest (of/in)
two-syllable	happy	happier (than)	the happiest (of/in)
more than two syllables	intelligent	more intelligent (than)	the most intelligent (of/in)

Note

Two-syllable adjectives ending in **-er**, **-ly** or **-y** usually form their comparative and superlative by adding **-er** or **-est** to the positive form whereas those ending in **-re** or **-ful** take **more** and **most**.
e.g. *clever* - *cleverer* - *cleverest*
careful - *more careful* - *most careful*

Adverbs

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
one-syllable	fast	faster (than)	the fastest (of/in)
two-syllable	early	earlier (than)	the earliest (of/in)
compound	quickly	more quickly (than)	the most quickly (of/in)

Compound adverbs are adverbs which are formed by adding **-ly** to the adjective form.
e.g. *careful* - *carefully*

Irregular Comparisons

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bad/badly/ill	worse	worst
good/well	better	best
little	less	least
many/much	more	most
far	farther (of distance only) further	farthest furthest
old	older elder (never used with than)	oldest eldest (of members of a family, only implying seniority)

- 143** Put the adjectives given in brackets in the following passage into the correct form, adding "the" or "a" where necessary.

(1) *The best* (good) place I have ever stayed in is also one of (2) (strange) villages in England. Its (3) (interesting) feature is that the buildings there are (4) (small) than average. As a result the doors are (5) (low) and the windows (6) (small) than most, making the rooms very dark. (7) (big) and (8) (impressive) one was there one hundred years before most of the others. Its garden is (9) (pretty) I have ever seen and I have never come across (10) (wide) variety of flowers. When I am there, the sky seems (11) (blue), the grass (12) (green) and the air (13) (fresh) than anywhere else. (14) (bad) aspect is that being one of (15) (peaceful) spots in the country, it is becoming (16) (popular) as time passes. As the pace of life becomes (17) (fast), it seems that (18) (large) numbers of people visit it as it is one of (19) (good) places to go to, to escape from (20) (hectic) pace of life in the city.

Types of Comparisons and Similarities

1. as ... as - not as / so / such ... as

*He is as stubborn as a horse.
It's not such hard work as I thought.*

2. the + comparative ... the + comparative

The older he gets, the more forgetful he becomes.

3. comparative + and + comparative

The lecture was becoming more and more boring.

4. such + ...as + noun / pronoun / clause

I've never seen such a nice baby as theirs.

5. the same ...+ as + (pro)noun + clause

She has the same blouse as the one I was wearing last night.

6. less + positive degree + than

Pam is less helpful than John.

7. the least + positive degree + of/in

She was the least interested of all.

8. comparative + than + clause

He is more tired than he looks.

9. prefer + gerund + to + gerund = like doing (general)

would prefer + full Inf. + rather than + + bare inf. (specific)

*I prefer dancing to singing. (general)
I would prefer to swim rather than sunbathe. (specific)*

10. would rather/sooner + bare inf. + + than + bare inf. = would like to do

I'd rather/sooner be a doctor than a teacher.

11. clause + whereas / while / but + + clause (comparison by contrast)

She can hide her feelings whereas/ white / but he is like an open book.

12. clause + as if + clause

The village looks as if it has been struck by an earthquake.

Note

As is used:	Like is used:
for what sb or sth really is. (jobs or roles) e.g. <i>She works as an air-hostess.</i> (<i>She is an air-hostess.</i>)	for what sb or sth is not really but looks or is like. (similes) e.g. <i>She works like a slave.</i> (<i>She's not a slave.</i>)
+ clauses / phrases. e.g. <i>I'll do as you said.</i>	with nouns / pronouns / - ing. e.g. <i>It was like travelling in a spaceship.</i>
in certain expressions: as usual, as ... as, as much, such as e.g. <i>He came late as usual.</i>	after sound, smell, look, feel + noun. e.g. <i>It feels like velvet.</i>
after accept, describe, be known, class, refer to, treat, use, regard. e.g. <i>She is regarded as an authority on Physics.</i>	

144 Fill in the blanks with "as" or "like".

1. As things were, we had no choice but to accept one that was not exactly the one we had decided on.
2. He's not he used to be; he hasn't got much enthusiasm he once had.
3. The party wasn't such a success I'd expected; it certainly wasn't the one they had last year.
4. I'm afraid this is far we can go. It looks if the bridge has collapsed.
5. If he wasn't his father, he wouldn't be successful he is.
6. After working for years a cook, he decided to open his own restaurant.
7. It's not true that Paul acts an elephant; he's quiet a mouse.
8. There's nothing a nice hot bath when you work a plumber and come home tired a dog.
9. This old house, which was built to look a castle, is now used a hotel.
10. The last time she worked a secretary, her boss treated her so much a slave that she swore she would never do a job that again.
11. His career a police officer was cut short when he was shot while acting a guard outside the bank.
12. I think he's finished a singer; his voice sounds a crow's these days.

145 Put the adjectives or adverbs into the correct comparative form adding "the", "than", "of" or "in" where necessary.

1. This is one of **the most controversial** (controversial) books I have ever read.
2. He's (obstinate) person I have ever met.
3. She was chosen as one of (well-dressed) women in the world.
4. I wish the film started (early) because I'm too tired to stay up and watch it.
5. John is the (old) the five children.
6. He's (lazy) student in our class and hardly ever does his homework.
7. This car is the (luxurious) the shop.
8. Her wedding ring is her (precious) piece of jewellery.
9. The teacher wished she had a (lively) bunch of students to participate in the class discussions.
10. If you were any (meticulous) in your work, you would never get anything done.

11. This assignment is (important) my others so I'm going to spend a minimal amount of time on it.
12. My brother is (old) me by two years.
13. The (recent) Woody Allen's films is called "Alice".
14. The children seemed (quiet) usual so their mother decided to check on them.
15. That boy is the (appealing) all the boyfriends she's had.
16. The (long) she had to wait in the doctor's office, the (impatient) she became.
17. It's a great honour to be a member as it's one of the city's (exclusive) clubs.
18. I find German (demanding) Russian, as it's more like English.
19. She's (bad) typist in the whole office.
20. She's (happy) now she has ever been in her life.

146 Fill in the blanks with "as", "so", "the", "while", "whereas" or "like".

Jim and Jeremy are (1) **so** different in appearance that you would hardly guess that they are twins. (2) Jim is quite tall and thin, Jeremy is rather short and (3) stocky (4) a wrestler. He eats a great deal of course, (5) Jim is quite abstemious, and (6) more he eats (7) heavier he gets, (8) is nearly always the case. It becomes obvious when you meet their parents that Jim is (9) their father, (10) Jeremy is (11) their mother, but it isn't any easier to believe that they are twins.

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I've never tasted such a delicious dish.
<i>It's the most delicious dish I've ever tasted.</i> 2. If you buy a big house, you'll pay a lot of money.
<i>The bigger the house you buy, the more money you'll pay.</i> 3. She is more helpful than her sister.
<i>Her sister isn't as helpful as she (is).</i> 4. Can't you find an easier way than this?
<i>Is this the easiest way you can find?</i> 5. That dress is like this one.
<i>That dress is similar to this one.</i> 6. That skirt is the same as this one.
<i>That skirt and this one are alike.</i> 7. The German car is much better than this one.
<i>This car can't compare to the German one.
There is no comparison between this car and the German one.</i> 8. Can you describe your cousin to me?
<i>Can you tell me what your cousin looks like?</i> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. He is the fastest runner of all.
<i>No other runner is as fast as he (is).</i> 10. Tony has the same number of pens as Chris.
<i>Chris has as many pens as Tony.</i> 11. A colour T.V. set is much more expensive than a black and white one.
<i>A colour T.V. set is far/a lot more expensive than a black and white one.
A black and white T.V. is much / far less expensive than a colour one.</i> 12. A new car is twice as expensive as a second-hand one.
<i>A new car is twice the price of a second-hand one.
A second-hand car is half the price of / half as expensive as a new one.</i> 13. She gave a bitter smile.
<i>She smiled bitterly.</i> 14. Sheila has a friendly smile.
<i>Sheila smiles in a friendly way.</i> 15. I'd prefer to go home now.
<i>I'd sooner go home now.</i> |
|---|--|

147 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. I prefer teaching to working in an office.
I'd sooner
2. The new mixer is much better than the old one.
There is

3. If you work too late, you'll be tired tomorrow.
The
4. I gave him a fatherly talk.
I talked
5. I've never heard such good news.
It's
6. Pigeons are not as rare as eagles.
Eagles
7. As he waited he became increasingly bored.
The
8. I'd rather not get involved in this business.
I'd prefer
9. That car is like mine.
That
10. She'd sooner have been told before.
She'd prefer
11. I'd prefer you to come with me.
I'd sooner
12. They have never put on such an ambitious production.
It's
13. If you praise him, he will do well.
The
14. Couldn't the newspaper have printed a better headline story?
Was that
15. As she practised, she became more confident.
The
16. That dress is very similar to yours.
That
17. Poultry is better for you than red meat.
Red meat
18. Can you describe the robbers to me?
Can you tell
19. He is a good driver.
He drives
20. Those shoes are twice as expensive as these ones.
Those shoes are twice the
21. As he grows older, he becomes more despondent.
The
22. He is more hard-working than his brother.
His brother

148 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising comparisons.

e.g. It's **the most expensive** ring I've ever been given. It must have cost him a fortune!

1. The flight than we had expected so we were late for the meeting.
2. That boy in the class. He always gets the highest marks.
3. The weather should tomorrow; the forecast says that the rain will stop at last.
4. I'd sooner he his money on horses. He wouldn't have lost it all then.
5. Concorde was the first passenger plane the speed of sound.
6. This restaurant is said in London - only the very rich eat there.
7. I wear my sister, so we are able to wear each other's clothes.
8. John prefers his tea that. Can you put another spoonful of sugar in?
9. Your wedding day is meant to be your life.
10. She earns I thought. That's why she can't afford a bigger house.

11. He is the I've ever met. He seems to think that nobody is as clever or handsome as he is.
12. It if we went shopping now or the supermarket will have closed.
13. No one is maths as my brother is. His teachers claim he's a genius.

149 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. I've never heard such a ridiculous claim.
EVER
2. You'd better describe the missing jewels to the police.
LIKE
3. Their furniture is like ours.
SIMILAR
4. She looks more self-assured than she is.
NOT
5. A powerful car uses a lot of fuel.
MORE
6. She has the best pronunciation in the class.
BETTER
7. She's got the same amount of money as I have.
MUCH
8. Their house was half the price of ours.
TWICE
9. Their house is infinitely superior to ours.
COMPARISON
10. Isn't there a quicker way to do this?
QUICKEST
11. He is becoming steadily rich.
AND
12. I'd prefer you to fly to Brazil.
SOONER
13. Peter is twice as strong as John.
STRENGTH
14. Their house is nothing like ours.
ALIKE
15. He is very friendly to everyone.
WAY

Consolidation 6

150 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

Many islands have now become (1) on tourism as their main source of income. The principal industries were (2) farming and fishing, with native islanders living off the land, but in contemporary society these activities have been largely ousted to cope (3) the growing demands of tourism.

Attracted (4) their beaches, the heat and the relaxed atmosphere, islands have now become a popular destination (5) the sun-worshipping holiday-maker. Every aspect of island life has hence been (6) by this influx of foreigners. Restaurants, bars, cafés, discos, hotels and souvenir shops (7) on tourists, and in fact could not exist without them.

Obviously a lot of money can be earned from (8) a flourishing industry. The six months of the peak (9) are a crucial time (10) the businessmen try to earn as much as they can. (11) from the commercial aspect, it can be (12) that islanders improve their ability to speak foreign languages. On the other (13), islands that have shifted the emphasis (14) the land to the tourist run the (15) of obliterating their traditional characteristics and culture. Swamped (16) commercialism, attitudes change and crime and violence increase. New buildings crop (17) to accommodate the ever-growing demands of tourists, (18) spoiling the original architecture and romance of the island.

Islands which have not (19) developed their tourist potential will have to find (20) to balance profit with preservation.

Phrasal Verbs 1

151 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in one of the prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

at, off, down, round, up to, by, ahead, across, about, off with, along,
on, away with, through, round to, out of, over, about, on with

1. What are you getting **at** ? I can't see any point in what you're saying.
2. Instead of being given a ticket, the driver got a warning.
3. She's having trouble getting with her sprained ankle.
4. Do you get with your colleagues?
5. If you don't get those invitations today, they'll never arrive on time.
6. How are you getting at school?
7. He has a talent for getting the most complicated ideas
8. I've been trying to get for ages but the line is always engaged.
9. This awful weather is really getting me
10. Brothers and sisters often have a hard time getting
11. If you aren't well organised, you'll never get
12. I don't know how he gets cheating on his tests.
13. Stop talking and get your work, will you?
14. She has barely enough money left to get
15. I wish I could get this wedding but everybody will be waiting for me there.
16. News of their "secret" wedding got fast.
17. She says she won't help us, but we'll soon get her
18. I don't know if she'll ever get her husband's death.
19. What are the children getting in the garden?
20. I only get watching TV when the children are in bed.

What's the difference between "give away" and "give out"?

Phrasal Verbs 2

give away :	reveal
give in :	1) deliver 2) yield
give off :	send out; emit
give out :	1) announce 2) come to an end
give up :	1) stop doing sth 2) admit defeat
give oneself up :	surrender
hype up :	exaggerate the value of sth

Idioms 1

keep oneself to oneself :	live quietly, unsociably
fine kettle of fish :	confused state of affairs
make a killing :	have a sudden, great success
have kittens :	be upset
bring to one's knees :	destroy, humble
be in the know :	be well-informed
keep one's fingers crossed :	hope that sth will turn out well
pull sb's leg :	tease or trick sb
make/earn a/one's living :	earn money
sleep like a log :	be sound asleep

152 Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition or adverb.

- The chemicals give **off** toxic fumes, so be extremely careful when using them.
- The athlete has decided to give amateur competition and become a professional.
- The murderer was forced to give himself to the police.
- She gave the secret of the surprise party unintentionally.
- Haven't you given your application form yet?
- Eventually their savings gave and they were forced to apply to the state for assistance.
- I can't guess the answer. I give !
- On the news last night it was given that war is imminent.
- They have hyped this car to such an extent that it should be the biggest seller of the year.
- After being asked five times he gave and took the children to the cinema.

153 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

- She **kept her fingers crossed** all the time they were announcing the winners of the contest, hoping that her brother would get a prize.
- I'm sure he was when he told me he was 50 years old; he doesn't look more than 30.
- Starting with only a few thousand pounds, Tom on the Stock Market and within a year was a millionaire.
- The enemy were by a surprise air attack.
- She as a freelance journalist.
- She when she got home and saw the mess the children had made in the sitting room.
- "The tap is dripping, the bath's overflowing, the plumber's on holiday; what this is!"
- David; I'm not sure if even an explosion would wake him up.
- If you want to know about recent theatre and musical events you should ask someone who is
- Although she enjoys an occasional evening out, as a general rule she

Idioms 2

the lion's share : the biggest part/portion

turn over a new leaf : make a new start

at large : free, not caught

on the level : honest

drop sb a line : send sb a letter

go to any lengths : do anything necessary to get sth desired

shed light upon : give new/further information

make light of : treat sth as unimportant

bury one's head in the sand : to avoid or ignore reality/responsibility

come to a head : to reach a critical point

154 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. The suspected murderer has been **at large** for three days now, but the police are doing their best to catch him.
2. You shouldn't people's problems even if you don't consider them to be very serious.
3. Although she had several people to help her, Susan still did of the work.
4. John has a tendency to whenever he's faced with problems when he ought to try to face up to them.
5. After years of involvement in criminal activities, David has decided to and get a decent job.
6. Their research has some aspects of the reproduction of cancer cells, but there is still much to be discovered.
7. Tensions in the office when one of the workers walked out in the middle of the working day.
8. If you have time, ... while you're on holiday. I'd love to hear from you.
9. That man would to get money; I suspect he would even commit murder if he felt he had to.
10. I wouldn't have any doubts about trusting him; I'm sure he's completely

Prepositions

155 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. I'm sure there's a jinx **on** this dress. Whenever I wear it I have a terrible time.
2. Several flights were delayed and so the departure lounge was jam-packed angry travellers.
3. The harassed mother juggled four bags of shopping, a pushchair and a dog in the middle of the busy high street.
4. Many vegetarians argue that there is no justification eating meat in this day and age.
5. I've been asked to key this information the computer immediately.
6. The businessman insisted that he had no knowledge the missing currency.
7. When I was abroad I longed a traditional English Sunday lunch.
8. My husband's always lazing while I'm always busy.
9. The donkey climbed the steep track laden bags of oranges.
10. Sarah is jealous her sister because she is much more popular.
11. She is looking for a new job, but hasn't found anything yet.
12. No one is kinder children than he is.
13. I think we should limit this discussion the facts.
14. My uncle lectures Art History at the university.
15. You mustn't judge people the way they dress.
16. Their new baby is being named his father.
17. Terry McWoddle has been named the new chairman of the football club.

156 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- The man kept his child **by** his side throughout the journey.
- He's not very clever, but he's a good worker all events.
- That actress only appears the beginning of the film.
- He is far the best dancer in the company.
- The performance will be repeated popular request.
- view of your excellent references, we've decided to give you the job.
- She shot the burglar self-defence.
- impulse, she gave up her career and moved to France.
- She gave me a television exchange for the work I did on her house.
- We did the washing up and drying turn.
- Bonnie and Clyde were notorious their nefarious exploits.

157 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

- Why don't you give all these old clothes away?
RID
- Severe weather conditions have had a serious effect on traffic.
AFFECTED
- She decided to start her own business because she wanted to be independent.
VIEW
- Old people tend to be forgetful.
APT
- Despite being tired he went to the party.
THOUGH
- He felt that his employers didn't appreciate him.
GRANTED
- Paula spoke clearly so that no one would misunderstand her.
AVOID
- The loss of the account was not our fault.
BLAME
- She said she was worried about the problem of pollution.
CONCERN
- Tom's presence at parties adds to everyone's enjoyment.
SOUL

158 Find the mistake and correct it.

- The cake has two pounds of dried ~~fruits~~ in it.
- He made his fortune dealing in antique furnitures.
- She doesn't mix with other people very good.

fruit

Consolidation 6

- 4. He won't be back for another one and a half week.
- 5. In the other hand, many employees support his decision.
- 6. Hardly had he began to speak when someone interrupted him.
- 7. Society shouldn't punish these people too hardly.
- 8. If I work too long at the computer I get headache.
- 9. Which judge will listen to the case?
- 10. Here the bus comes at last!
- 11. Last night we went to a new club. His name is "Roxy".
- 12. He is renowned for writing historic novels.
- 13. They visited many interesting historical places during their stay in Rome.
- 14. The family have gone on holidays to France.
- 15. He returned at home shortly before midnight.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

159 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

- 1. I wish those children would stop making so much noise. It's starting my nerves.
- 2. He's so out of shape that he doesn't stand winning the race.
- 3. She first came to work here in 1975. When she retires at the end of the year she here for 17 years.
- 4. In or another, he has spent all his money.
- 5. I was disappointed to hear that tickets left for the concert.
- 6. I think he's a very kind person no other people may say about him.
- 7. The man life imprisonment for murdering the old women.
- 8. We really have outstayed our welcome. It's went.
- 9. I wish you to my party. It won't be the same without you.
- 10. My keys aren't in my bag. I them at work.

160 Match column A with column B and then fill in the blanks with the correct idiom.

Column A

- 1. as clear as
- 2. as fresh as
- 3. as hard as
- 4. as heavy as
- 5. as large as
- 6. as stubborn as
- 7. as sober as
- 8. as steady as
- 9. as thick as
- 10. as red as

Column B

- A. lead
- B. life
- C. a mule
- D. a rock
- E. a bell
- F. a beetroot
- G. nails
- H. a daisy
- I. a judge
- J. thieves

Answers

- 1. E
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.
- 7.
- 8.
- 9.
- 10.

- 1. I never expected to actually meet such a great actress, but when I arrived at the party, there she was as large as life.
- 2. Although she had been up all night, after a quick wash she looked
- 3. He's nice enough as a neighbour, but as a businessman he's
- 4. Those boys are You hardly ever see them apart.
- 5. Although he had drunk two bottles of wine, he claimed to be
- 6. When she realised she had insulted her boss she turned
- 7. I don't think I can move this sofa. It's
- 8. She has a lovely voice; it's
- 9. You'll never convince John to do it if he doesn't want to. He's
- 10. Compared with her shiftless, changeable husband she's

161 Match column A with column B and then fill in the blanks with the correct idioms.

Column A

1. as safe as
2. sleep like
3. eat like
4. smoke like
5. fit like
6. have a memory like
7. go/come down (on sb) like
8. get on like
9. spread like
10. shake like

Column B

- A. a log
- B. a glove
- C. a ton of bricks
- D. a house on fire
- E. houses
- F. wildfire
- G. a sieve
- H. a chimney
- I. a leaf
- J. a horse

Answers

1. **E**
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

1. I'm afraid I've forgotten your name again. **I have a memory like a sieve.**
2. She was so nervous that her hands
3. You really should cut down on the cigarettes. You
4. If your mother finds out you've been taking money she'll
5. I thought the suit would be too small for me, but it
6. It's no wonder he's fat, he
7. Far from suffering from insomnia, she
8. Don't worry about losing money; this investment is
9. Thanks to thorough press-coverage, the scandal; everyone knew about it the next day.
10. Although James and Julie are very different types of people, they

162 In most lines of the following text there is an incorrect item. Read the numbered lines 1 - 17 and then write the correct form in the spaces provided for your answers. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (v). The first one has been done for you.

	Answers
1 With Europe facing the more serious 'flu epidemic in years,	most
2 the World Health Organisation is warning the public, specially	
3 the sick and elderly, to do an innoculation now.	
4 Health experts warn that this winter's outbreak could be as	
5 severe as the 1989 epidemic, who killed 25,000 people in	
6 Britain only.	
7 WHO has stressed the importance in vaccination, and several	
8 countries are already taking precautions to ensure that those at	
9 high-risk categories, such like diabetics and those with heart or	
10 lung complaints, are vaccinated.	
11 Nearly all previous strains of 'flu are known to originate in	
12 China and the Far East, and whereas in the past infection spreaded	
13 slow across the world, in these days of mass air travel rapid	
14 global infection is a great threat.	
15 Sweden has reported cases of para-influenza, effecting mainly	
16 children, and Danish doctors had recorded 1,500 cases of 'flu	
17 in the past week.	

Word usage

163 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- My neighbour has threatened to **take legal action** over our dispute about property boundaries. (sue, take legal action, try, bring me to trial)
- Mr Wright is being for murder at the Old Bailey this afternoon. (taken to court, tried, prosecuted, charged)
- The heavy rain lashed on throughout the night without letting up. (continually, continuously, perpetually, eternally)
- We intend this to be a(n) project, taking us into the next decade. (constant, incessant, steady, ongoing)
- As long as you have the most ingredients for the recipe, you can make do without the other things. (critical, crucial, essential, vital)
- A(n) proportion of the population did not vote in the last elections. (essential, significant, grave, fundamental)
- When a former secret agent tried to publish his memoirs, the government had certain parts of the book (forbidden, prohibited, banned, censored)
- Benjamin Britten, the composer, is probably most for his opera "Peter Grimes". (famous, renowned, celebrated, distinguished)
- scientists from around the world met in London to discuss a revolutionary new drug. (Eminent, Renowned, Notorious, Revered)
- I managed to the flow of blood by tightly bandaging the wound. (restrain, curb, check, inhibit)

164 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	postponed	delayed	
The plane has been		✓	in Munich.
The picnic was			because of bad weather.
I was			in the traffic.
We			our journey.
The meeting was			due to the absence of the chairman.

	a hand	a deadline	a product range	a road	a business	a permit	knowledge
extend	✓						
expand							

165 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

repress
control

abide by
cling to

decline
secure

hold
stick to

relish
bar

- 1) to **decline** an offer. 2) to the rules. 3) to an idea.
 4) to one's feelings. 5) to someone from a club. 6) to
 someone's release. 7) to the question. 8) to a crowd. 9)
 an old habit. 10) to someone's hand.

Practice Test Six

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only *one* word in each space.

The last person I had ever (1) to see was Rupert; in (2) I was so far from expecting to see him that I had (3) forgotten he ever existed. I hadn't seen him for more than fifteen years, (4) as soon as I sat down opposite him on the train from Brighton to London I recognised him. He had changed (5) than anyone would have expected; still the same hazy blue eyes (6) thick glasses, the unruly, dark red hair, the almost supernaturally white (7) Even the characteristic habits, little gestures that I had seen so often when we were (8) up together that I half thought they were my (9), remained unchanged. As he sat rubbing his left ear lobe (10) thumb and forefinger, crossing and (11) his legs, thrusting his head forward as (12) trying to unkink his neck, I seemed to travel (13) to the years when we met nearly every day, shared the same problems (14) school work and parents, and had even once planned to run (15) together. I watched him for some time before he finally looked (16); when he did look at me it was, at first, without a (17) of recognition. Then (18) his expression changed. He leaned forward to look at me more (19), turned away and looked out of the window, then looked back at me. "Is (20) you, John?" he said.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means *exactly the same* as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever *she tells them, her parents don't believe her.*

- a. Peter left Italy five years ago.
It is.....
- b. It was more a miscalculation than an accident.
It was not so
- c. I work out in the gym almost every day.
I hardly
- d. I never intended to accept the job.
I never had
- e. If you haven't read the book, you can't really criticise it.
Unless you
- f. He never passes a test even though he tries hard.
However
- g. We regretted that we had to miss the party.
We regretted not
- h. We told the police about our noisy neighbours.
We reported

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use **crying over** spilt milk.

- 1. It's slippery! Mind fall down the stairs.
- 2. He chosen or he'd have heard by now.
- 3. We'd like nothing to go for a long walk.
- 4. It must be ten years in London.
- 5. They don't take kindly questioned.
- 6. It's a good ear. Not once since we bought it us any trouble.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence **as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence**, but using the word given. This word must **not be altered** in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION

Answer: **Were they given permission to go?**

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| 1. She said she disapproved of drinking. | EXPRESSED |
| | |
| 2. The cause of the accident is still a mystery. | CAUSED |
| | |
| 3. Paula was released ten days after surgery. | ALLOWED |
| | |
| 4. Mr Jones was shocked to hear that his son was in prison. | CAME |
| | |
| 5. It is very likely to rain. | PROBABILITY |
| | |
| 6. I never thought of borrowing money from him. | OCCURRED |
| | |
| 7. Natalie Wood's last film was unfinished when she died. | WITHOUT |
| | |
| 8. The thief got a three-year prison sentence. | JAILED |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

At the turn of the century, literacy levels were understandably low. Extreme poverty and a lack of free educational facilities meant that only those born into families who were sufficiently wealthy and sufficiently concerned, received any sort of an education. Fortunately, there were those who believed that the alleviation of illiteracy and ignorance was the only effective way to combat poverty and various other associated social ills. They campaigned to change attitudes, and consequently legislation, in the hope that eventually everyone, regardless of social and financial status, would have the right to an education. It worked: literacy levels rose dramatically. All children were entitled to and received an education, be it ever so rudimentary, even in times of national crisis like the Second World War. Taking all this into consideration, how is it then that today, when education is compulsory until the age of sixteen, literacy levels are once again falling? 5

A fundamental factor is the lack of government spending on education. The scholastic system has become like a vast and complex machine and, like a piece of machinery, needs to be regularly oiled and constantly maintained. However, lack of funding has made this task impossible. Unable to afford the yearly salary expenditure, local authorities have forced schools to reduce their quotas of teachers and, as a result, classes have grown in size and overcrowding is the norm. Text 15

books are either antiquated or scarce, and students end up using inadequate materials, sharing books or doing without. It may be argued that these factors are not sufficient in themselves to render students completely illiterate but they very definitely play a part for example in discouraging low-ability students and enabling individuals to leave school having received only a very basic and sketchy education. 20

Accompanying the problem of reduction in funding levels is the problem of city growth. As the sizes of our cities grow, so does the concentration of students attending existing schools. In inner city areas, overworked teachers in increasingly overcrowded classrooms simply do not have the facilities nor the time to devote to individual students. As a result, more and more “problem” students are being allowed to slip through the net. The term “problem” students is a broad one 25 and one which may include school-refusers, those individuals from one-parent or “problem” families, those who have learning difficulties - the list is endless. The withdrawal or reduction of funding means that cutbacks must be made within schools and, as it is obvious that they cannot be made within the mainstream structure, they must occur in the “optional extras” departments which are the domain of the special needs teachers. The axing of these departments obviously 30 has serious consequences for those children who simply cannot cope within the normal teaching structure. Their particular problems ignored, these children either lapse into apathy, become disruptive or simply stop attending - all of which obviously retards their education and may result in low or negligible levels of literacy.

A final factor contributing to the decline and fall of literacy, but one which may be worth 35 considering, is the fact that we are living in the technological age. In terms of entertainment and communication, people are having to rely less and less on their own resources and efforts to maintain a normal social existence. Videos, multi-channel television systems and sophisticated computer games have invaded our homes and are rapidly becoming part of the everyday fabric of life, taking away the necessity to indulge in activities requiring more imaginative effort. Why 40 struggle with a novel when you can watch a film? Why write to a friend and wait for a reply when an easily remembered sequence of numbers will magically enable you to speak to them? Why indeed? Perhaps because, by not encouraging our children to exercise basic skills, we are acquiescing in the decline of literacy.

- 1. In what ways were literacy levels “understandably low”? (line 1)
.....
.....
.....
- 2. Explain the meaning of the word “alleviation”. (line 4)
.....
.....
.....
- 3. How did the initial changes in attitude come about?
.....
.....
.....
- 4. What does "it" (line 7) refer to?
.....
.....
.....
- 5. What does the passage suggest is the main factor in declining literacy levels?
.....
.....
.....

6. What is meant by the word “sketchy” in line 20?
.....
.....
7. Why is “city growth” (line 21) seen as a problem?
.....
.....
8. Explain the phrase “slip through the net”. (line 25)
.....
.....
9. What is the meaning of “mainstream structure”? (line 29)
.....
.....
10. Why is it “obvious” (line 28) that cutbacks cannot be made?
.....
.....
11. Why are problem students the first casualties of government spending cuts?
.....
.....
12. What does "their own resources" (line 37) refer to?
.....
.....
13. Replace the phrase "acquiescing in" (line 44).
.....
.....
14. In a paragraph of 50 - 100 words summarise the reasons for the declining literacy levels.

Presentation 7

Conditionals

There are three types of conditionals.

	If-clause	Main clause	Use
Type 1	If + Present tense (or should + bare Infinitive : more doubtful or polite)	Future Present Imperative ought to (advice) + Infinitive had better (advice) should, must may can	Real situation (likely to happen in the present or future or a general truth)
	e.g. <i>If it rains, we'll stay at home.</i> <i>If you heat water, it boils. (will boil is also possible)</i> <i>If you should see him, give him my message.</i>		
Type 2	If + Past tense	would could + infinitive should might	Advice or imaginary situation in the present or future (unreal or unlikely to happen)
	e.g. <i>If I were you, I would tell her the truth. (advice)</i> <i>If he were here, he could help me. (imaginary situation)</i>		
Type 3	If + Past Perfect	would could (ability/permission) + have + p.p. should (advice) might (possibility)	Imaginary situation in the past (unfulfilled plans, regrets, wishes impossible to fulfil)
	e.g. <i>If he had worked harder, he would have been promoted. (unfulfilled plan)</i>		

Notes

- Future tense (will/would)** with a future meaning is never used in **If**-clauses. However, **will/would** can be used to show willingness or insistence.
e.g. *If you **will** wait for a moment, I'll wrap it for you. (willingness)*
*If you **will** go on chatting, I'll send you out of the classroom. (insistence)*
- The **if**-clause can either precede or follow the main clause. When the **if**-clause precedes the main clause, we put a comma after it. When the main clause comes first, no comma is used to separate the two clauses.
e.g. *If he is still in Paris, he may visit us.*
He may visit us if he is still in Paris.
- Other expressions used in place of **"If"** are the following:
otherwise, even if, even though, when, provided (that), providing, as long as, suppose, supposing, since, as, unless (if not), but for + gerund/noun, In case + Present (for the present) or Past (for the past).
- unless (= if not)** is used in **Type 1** conditional sentences.
e.g. ***Unless** he gets a promotion, he'll resign.*

Presentation 7

5. When referring to imaginary or unreal situations **suppose** can be followed either by Simple Past or Past Perfect for present or past situations respectively.
e.g. **Suppose you missed the bus, what would you do?**
- Suppose**, however, can be followed by Present Simple to express a situation which may happen in the future or to introduce suggestions.
e.g. **Suppose she is on holiday, how shall we contact her?**
6. In Reported speech, the verb tenses of Type 1 conditional sentences change in the usual way whereas those of Type 2 and 3 do not follow the usual changes; this means that the verb tenses remain unchanged.
- e.g. "If I **am** back early, we'll **go** out for dinner," he said.
He said that if he **were/was** back early, we **would go** out for dinner.
"If I **were** you, I **wouldn't** say that," he said.
He said that if he **were** me, he **wouldn't** say that.
"If he **had been** ill, he **wouldn't** have come to work," she said.
She said that if he **had been** ill, he **wouldn't** have come to work.

166 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. If I **were** (be) you, I (not/listen) to his lies.
2. If he (not/eat) that sandwich, he would not have suffered from food poisoning.
3. Father Christmas won't come unless you (be) a good little girl.
4. As long as you (do) your best, no one will criticise you.
5. He put the answer phone on in case anyone (want) to leave a message.
6. Supposing we (be/stop) by the police, what (we/say)?
7. If you (tell) me you were cold, I (put) the fire on.
8. What (we/do) if John hadn't helped us?
9. If she were rich, she (not/have to) work.
10. Go and see a doctor in case you (have) a serious illness.
11. You won't understand this unless you (pay) attention.
12. What (you/give) me if I (keep) your secret?
13. Even if he (beg), I would not help him.
14. If this case (go) to trial, it will cause a national outcry.
15. Supposing no one (kill) President Kennedy, ... (things/be) different now?

Inversion in if-clauses

When there is **should**, **were** or **had** in the if-clause, the subject and the auxiliary verb can be inverted and "if" is omitted.

If he should ring, tell him to come at 7.00.

Should he ring, tell him to come at 7. 00.

If I were you, I wouldn't say that.

Were I you, I wouldn't say that.

If I had known earlier, I wouldn't have done such a thing.

Had I known earlier, I wouldn't have done such a thing.

167 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. If you should change your mind, just call us.
Should
2. Had you informed me earlier, I could have changed my plans.
If

- 3. If I were you, I'd cut down on smoking.
Were
- 4. If the horse should not win the race, I'll lose a lot of money.
Should
- 5. If the police had found the gun, the case would have been solved at once.
Had
- 6. If you should need further information, simply complete the form at the bottom.
Should
- 7. Had you not been so proud, this would not have happened.
If
- 8. If I were more qualified, I could work for that company.
Were
- 9. Should the weather be bad, the fête will be held indoors.
If
- 10. Were I him, I would make a little more effort.
If

Mixed Conditionals

All types of conditionals can be mixed. Any tense is possible if the context permits it.

	If-clause	Main clause	
Type 1	If she is honest,	she would have told the truth.	Type 3
Type 2	If she knew the truth,	she would have told me.	Type 3
Type 3	If she had accepted,	we would be married now.	Type 2
Type 2	If he missed the train,	he will be late.	Type 1

168 Write the correct conditionals for the following sentences.

- 1. I might have missed my flight. I would be very upset now.
.....
- 2. He has made a lot of enemies. He is lonely now.
.....
- 3. You are cold. Why didn't you bring a pullover with you?
.....
- 4. She can't be interested. She would have got in touch by now.
.....
- 5. He has lost his ticket. He won't be allowed to enter the theatre.
.....
- 6. They didn't catch the thief. Otherwise he would be in prison now.
.....
- 7. He must smoke. He asked for an ashtray.
.....
- 8. She isn't trustworthy. She would never have revealed your secret.
.....
- 9. They didn't ban the use of cars. There is a lot of pollution.
.....
- 10. Aren't you certain? Why did you commit yourself then?
.....
- 11. My mother loves Frank Sinatra. She bought all his records.
.....
- 12. She isn't optimistic. She expected the worst.
.....

169 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Susan sometimes dreams of all the things she (1) **would do** (do) if she (2) (inherit) her grandfather's house in the country. Of course she's not at all sure that she (3) (inherit) it, and she hopes her grandfather (4) (live) for many years, but she does love the house and can imagine the sort of life she (5) (be/able) to live, if it (6) (be) hers. The first thing she (7) (do), provided she (8) (have) the money, of course, is to get the garden, which has been rather neglected, back into shape. Then she (9) (decorate) the rooms and (10) (restore) all the antique furniture, which has been in the house for decades.

170 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

If David (1) **had arrived** (arrive) a bit earlier, none of the things that went wrong (2) (happen). For one thing, Sarah (3) (not/decide) to relight the fire, which led directly to the chimney catching fire. Of course if David had been there, she (4) (not/have) to light it at all and if she (5) (be) more careful, she (6) (notice) that a bird's nest had fallen down the chimney and stuck just over the fire.

171 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

If I (1) **could change** (change) the world, the first thing I (2) (do) is abolish weapons of all kinds. I (3) (make sure) that food was distributed fairly to all parts of the world and, most important of all, I (4) (stop) the emission of all pollutants until alternative sources of energy (5) (be) perfected. My world (6) (not/be) an easy place to live in at first, but it (7) (be) a much better one in the long run.

172 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

If we (1) **had known** (know) that the tour (2) (turn out) the way it did, we (3) (never/go). In fact, I think I (4) (rather/spend) the whole summer sitting in my chair than (5) (have to) put up with so much inconvenience and discomfort. If anybody (6) (ask) me anything about tours of any kind now, I think I (7) (say), "Avoid them at all costs!"

Structural Conversion

1. **If you don't drive carefully, you'll have an accident.**

Unless you drive carefully, you'll have an accident.

You'll not have an accident provided you drive carefully.

As long as you drive carefully, you won't have an accident.

Drive carefully or else you'll have an accident.

2. **You had better take his advice.**

If I were you, I'd take his advice.

Were I you, I'd take his advice.

You should take his advice.

3. **Should she come, tell her to wait for me.**

If she should come, tell her to wait for me.

4. **As he couldn't afford a holiday, he stayed at home.**

He couldn't afford a holiday so he stayed at home.

If he had been able to afford a holiday, he wouldn't have stayed at home.

He stayed at home because he couldn't afford a holiday.

5. **Since he doesn't have any qualifications, he can't find a job.**

If he had qualifications, he could find a job.

As he doesn't have any qualifications, he can't find a job.

6. **If it hadn't been for my mother, I wouldn't be alive now.**

But for my mother, I wouldn't be alive now.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>7. Suppose he phoned you, what would you tell him?
 <i>If he phoned</i> you, what would you tell him?
 <i>What would</i> you tell him if he phoned you?</p> <p>8. If you help me, I'll help you.
 <i>I'll help</i> you provided (that) you help me.</p> <p>9. Suppose he marries her?
 <i>What if he marries</i> her?</p> <p>10. Suppose the teacher caught you cheating in the test?
 <i>What would</i> you do if the teacher caught you cheating in the test?</p> <p>11. If he had been on time, we wouldn't have missed the bus.
 <i>Had he been</i> on time, we wouldn't have missed the bus.</p> <p>12. If you won the lottery, what would you do?
 <i>Should you win</i> the lottery, what would you do?
 <i>If you were to win</i> the lottery, what would you do?</p> <p>13. If she were rich, she would buy a villa.
 <i>Were she rich</i>, she would buy a villa.</p> | <p>14. If I had been you, I wouldn't have accepted his offer.
 <i>If I had been</i> in your shoes, I wouldn't have accepted his offer.
 <i>If I had been</i> in your position, I wouldn't have accepted his offer.</p> <p>15. I'm not rich, so I can't afford a long holiday abroad.
 <i>If I were</i> rich, I could afford a long holiday abroad.</p> <p>16. I didn't go out because I had a lot of work to do.
 <i>If I hadn't had</i> a lot of work to do, I would have gone out.</p> <p>17. She must be out, since she didn't answer the phone.
 <i>If she were in</i>, she would have answered the phone.</p> <p>18. She must have lived in France because she has a French accent.
 <i>If she hadn't lived</i> in France, she wouldn't have a French accent.</p> |
|---|---|

173 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. If it wasn't for the good pay, I wouldn't stay in this job.
 But
2. If I were him, I would not be late for the interview.
 He had
3. Should the lake freeze over, we will go skating.
 If
4. You won't be punished provided you admit to your mistake.
 As long as
5. Since he is an only child, his parents have spoiled him.
 If
6. Suppose you wear the other suit?
 Why
7. If she were qualified, she would have been offered the post.
 Were
8. If I had been you, I would have punished him.
 If I had been in
9. If I don't run, I'll miss the bus.
 Unless
10. They ran through passport control to the gate because the plane was about to leave.
 Since
11. If you should have any spare cash, please donate it to our charity.
 Should
12. If I hadn't been for your encouragement, she couldn't have coped with the situation.
 But
13. Read the question carefully or you may answer it incorrectly.
 As long as

Presentation 7

14. If negotiations are successful, the agreement will be signed.
The agreement will be signed provided
15. She must feel embarrassed. She didn't look him in the eye.
If she
16. If the campaign had been a success, we would be in power now.
Since

174 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. *Were I you, I wouldn't accept his offer.*

1. If the food, don't eat it.
2. What done if we hadn't come across a policeman just at that moment?
3. If expensive, I would buy that jacket.
4. If live so far away, I wouldn't have to get a taxi to work.
5. If attention in class, you won't pass the test.
6. Suppose we chair the meeting, do you think he would accept?
7. If nice as you say he is, he wouldn't have said that.
8. Were like that in a shop, I'd complain to the manager.

175 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. He's not very clever, so he'll never get ahead in his job.
IF
.....
2. If she weren't doing that job, she wouldn't know so much about computers.
WERE
.....
3. If I were you, I'd borrow the money.
BETTER
.....
4. Since he's rich, he buys whatever he wants.
WANTED
.....
5. Since she hasn't had any previous experience, she won't be given the post.
HAD
.....
6. If John hadn't helped, we wouldn't have been able to finish the project.
BUT
.....
7. If he arrives before you leave, give him this message.
SHOULD
.....
8. Suppose you lost your job?
WHAT
.....
9. If the weather doesn't clear up, we won't go on the excursion.
CLEAR
.....
10. If she hadn't been wearing a raincoat, she would have been soaked to the skin.
MUST
.....

Consolidation 7

176 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

In 1969, Neil Armstrong was the first man to land (1) the moon. If earthlings can take (2) in intergalactic travel, then why can't life forms from other planets do the same? Is Earth the only inhabited planet in the universe? How can we be so sure of either the existence or the non-existence of extraterrestrial life?

On 24th June, 1947, Kenneth Arnold reported (3) nine silvery objects moving rapidly through the sky near Mount Rainer, Washington. Obviously he had no proof (4) from his testimony, but this sparked (5) an epidemic of apparent sightings of "unidentified flying objects". In June and July of the same year, a further 850 sightings of space ships were (6)

Ufology had taken (7) and was spreading prolifically. The latest Gallup poll conveyed that twenty per cent of the British and sixty per cent of the American populations believed (8) the existence of UFOs. In (9), a French group claimed that we only hear (10) one in every 38,400 alien visits to Earth. (11) these figures do not prove the existence of life (12) in the cosmos, but they do prove that belief is international and widespread (13) humanoids.

In alleged encounters with alien life one (14) of five leaves some trace behind, such as burnt ground, footprints, powdery residues or metallic fragments. One group of ufologists studied thousands of cases and came to the (15) that there were four main types of extraterrestrial existence; small humanoids, experimental animals, humanlike entities and robots. However, Hilary Evans of the British UFO Research Association (16) to the inadequacies of all such findings and testimonies. Some UFO witnesses lie, (17) deliberately or unconsciously. So, with little (18) than the word of an apparent eye witness to consider, evidence for the existence of alien life forms is far (19) conclusive.

Who knows, perhaps somewhere in this cosmos, another species (20) deliberating on the existence of the Earthling.

Phrasal Verbs 1

177 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in one of the prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

with, up, through, round, down, off, into, for, down with, on, in for, on with

- His proposals didn't go **down** very well at all; in fact he was sacked.
- She had to cancel her holiday when she went the flu.
- She's gone so much anxiety since her daughter disappeared.
- I don't know what's going next door but they're being very noisy.
- I'm planning to go the poetry competition this year.
- The bomb went in the airport, killing twenty people.
- The Prime Minister promised to go the matter thoroughly.
- Those shoes are going next to nothing. I've never seen such a good sale.
- I don't think there's enough wine to go Could you get some more?
- Let's go the plan once more to make sure it's all clear.
- He paused to answer the phone, and then he went what he was doing.
- New blocks of flats are going everywhere destroying the atmosphere of the town.
- Does the shed go the house or should I pay extra?

What other meanings can you find for a) go off, b) go for?

Phrasal Verbs 2

hold back :	1) delay (tr) 2) prevent development
hold in :	control (oneself/feelings)
hold off :	1) keep at a distance 2) delay (intro)
hold on :	wait
hold out :	1) endure 2) resist
hold out for :	wait to get sth desired
hold out on :	keep a secret from sb
hold over :	postpone
hold up :	1) delay 2) rob

178 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. Can't you hold **off** those reporters until I've finished the rehearsal?
2. He is a talented actor but his shyness holds him
3. Although they tried they couldn't hold their laughter.
4. Hold a minute while I get something from my room.
5. They offered to buy her a BMW but she's holding a Porsche.
6. There are doubts whether the water supply will hold until May.
7. Due to the chairman's illness, the meeting was held till the next week.
8. Terrorists held the train and made off with crates of explosives.
9. He says he knows nothing about the accusations but I'm sure he's holding me.
10. He held for three weeks with no food and little water.

Make sentences using a) **hold back**, b) **hold off** and c) **hold up** meaning "delay".

Idioms 1

feel down in the mouth :	feel discouraged / depressed
get a move on :	hurry up
work a miracle :	make sth almost impossible happen
slip one's mind :	forget about sth
put words into one's mouth :	pretend that sb has said sth that he/she hasn't actually said
make hay while the sun shines :	take advantage of favourable circumstances
make money hand over fist :	make a lot of money quickly and easily
cry over spilt milk :	grieve over sth that can't be put right
once in a blue moon :	very rarely
cross one's mind :	occur to one; have a sudden idea

179 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. She's always **crying over spilt milk** when she should be trying other possibilities.
2. He when he said I was willing to help. I simply haven't got the time to.
3. He when he heard he'd failed all his exams.
4. I know you told me about the meeting, but it completely
5. They only go to the cinema; I don't think they've been since last year.
6. Would you? The bus leaves in half an hour.
7. When they opened their restaurant they during the first few months.
8. It never that she might be offended by what I said.
9. Life is short, so
10. The surgeon seemed to have when he succeeded in separating the Siamese twins.

Idioms 2

a **night owl** : person who enjoys staying up late

in a **nutshell** : briefly; in a few words

have an **early night** : go to bed early

be **second to none** : be as good as the best

hit the **nail on the head** : say exactly the right thing

lose one's **nerve** : to lose courage

null and **void** : invalid; not legally binding

every **nook and cranny** : everywhere

make a **name for oneself** : become famous

get on one's **nerves** : make sb angry; annoy sb

180 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. You **hit the nail on the head** when you called him the slowest worker on earth. I've never seen anyone slower.
2. Paul is such a; I don't think he ever goes to bed before 3 or 4 in the morning.
3. My cousin Rebecca has as a neurosurgeon. She's considered the best in London.
4. I think I'll tonight. I didn't get much sleep last night.
5. She cleaned of the house before she was satisfied that it was spotless.
6. He was planning to ask his boss for a rise, but when it came to the point he and didn't do it.
7. That pianist is in his interpretation of Mozart's music.
8. I don't really take to him;, I think he's an idiot.
9. Endless telephone calls
10. The contract was declared when it was found that one of the parties had been forced to sign.

Prepositions

181 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. I muddled **up** the jigsaw pieces and the children did the puzzle again.
2. I waved at a complete stranger in the street who I mistook my cousin.
3. Nobody likes Rick because he's so mean money.
4. I asked the assistant which make hi-fi he recommended.
5. All the evidence militated a conclusion in our favour.
6. I was born British but was naturalised Italy.
7. Dick Turpin was notorious his highway robberies.
8. I've been asked to notify the personnel department my new address.
9. That doctor is not noted his tact when it comes to dealing with patients.
10. The swimming pool custodian was negligent his duties and the little girl drowned.

182 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blank with the correct preposition.

1. They spent the summer **on** a cruise round the world.
2. We are favour of abolishing experiments on animals.
3. When they got home their house was fire.
4. her boss's request, she has worked overtime nearly every day this month.
5. They estimated the candidates' popularity means of opinion polls.
6. a guess, I'd say he weighs about 70 kilos.
7. Very short skirts worn with thick woollen tights are vogue at the moment.
8. She was brought up a farm so she is used to animals.
9. Paul has been leave from work for the past month.
10. second thoughts, I don't think I want to go to the concert.

Consolidation 7

183 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.
FIND
I find photography interesting.

- 1. Some friends put his name forward to be spokesman.
NOMINATED
- 2. The burglar escaped through the back door.
GETAWAY
- 3. You've done nothing but look miserable all day.
MOON
- 4. She is a person who always lets you down.
DEPEND
- 5. Why did you behave so rudely?
POINT
- 6. The war has caused emigration to increase.
RESULTED
- 7. He suffers from delusions and hallucinations.
PRONE
- 8. The end of the film was completely unexpected.
TAKEN
- 9. Which of the books would you prefer?
RATHER
- 10. A rejection of their offer would have been foolish.
ACCEPTED

184 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

- 1. Peter's car is still parked in the driveway, so left yet.
- 2. You are not the first person for driving too fast in this school zone.
- 3. The sign says that you to dump rubbish in this area.
- 4. Surely your exception just this once won't be a problem.
- 5. You'd your father the truth about what happened to the car.
- 6. You can help. She will never let you down.
- 7. The train was scheduled to come in at 8 a.m. It arrived by now.
- 8. His mother told him that his face washing.
- 9. Only when I phoned the shop that it was closed.
- 10. The more practice you have in the language, the better chance you fluently.
- 11. If you've that book, could I borrow it?
- 12. Instead advice, he carried on smoking.
- 13. If you going to the moon, would you go?
- 14. Provided she time, Julie will be coming round later.

185 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. The atheist claims that religion is not important ~~for~~ him.
- 2. On 1st July we went to London on car.
- 3. Please have your passports ready in arrival at the airport.
- 4. She was wearing an expansive suit made from silk.
- 5. He works forty hours in week.
- 6. Racists consider black people to be inferior than white people.
- 7. Police are seeking further informations about the incident.
- 8. He intends to run as the Presidency a second time.
- 9. She has very interested ideas on psychic phenomena.
- 10. He told us all about the journey he did in great detail.
- 11. He is ardent in his admiration of all kind of sport.
- 12. She remarried her late husband ten years after their divorce.
- 13. They've lately purchased a new hi-fi system.
- 14. His latest film became a great success soon after his death.
- 15. She left from the cinema in a confused state of mind.
- 16. Can I land your car this evening?
- 17. A person who says lies habitually must have a good mamory.
- 18. I've been laaving in Britain for two years.
- 19. Did you look the documentary on TV last night?
- 20. My parents are looking forward to meet you.

to
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

186 In most lines of the following text there is an incorrect item. Read the numbered lines 1 - 17 and then write the correct form in the spaces provided for your answers. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (v). The first one has been done for you.

	Answers
1. Dracula lives! A small travel agent in Budapest is offering "a	agent's / agency
2. Transylvanian adventure for bloodthirsty travellers". At £200	
3. tourists can enjoy a four-days excursion to Transylvania on the	
4. trail of the 15th century tyrant, nicknamed Vlad the Impaler, which	
5. achieved notoriety for his custom of sticking people onto spikes - a	
6. passion which he inflicted at thousands of prisoners and	
7. loyal subjects like.	
8. Visitors keen on get the feel of the "terror of the living dead" can	
9. lunch in the house where the Count bore and stroll through	
10. cemeteries with a guide who is an inexhaustible source from	
11. informations concerning the myth of vampirism.	
12. "We're putting all the emphasis in atmosphere," explains the	
13. tour organiser, but by doing such the agency is wandering off	
14. the real trail of Vlad the Impaler. The castle of Poianari does not,	
15. for example, feature on the programme, being undoubtfully less	
16. impressive than Bram, which is a caricature of a vampire's	
17. castle but one where Vlad never put foot.	

187 Match the phrases, then explain the proverbs.

A	B	
1. A drowning man	A. before you leap.	1. E
2. When the cat's away	B. and shame the devil.	2.
3. The proof of the pudding	C. is another man's poison.	3.
4. Tell the truth	D. never changes its spots.	4.
5. People who live in glass houses	E. will clutch at a straw.	5.
6. Look	F. shouldn't throw stones.	6.
7. Nothing ventured,	G. flock together.	7.
8. One man's meat	H. the mice will play.	8.
9. Birds of a feather	I. nothing gained.	9.
10. A leopard	J. is in the eating.	10.

188 Use the following notes to write an article about criminal trial procedure in Britain. Write complete sentences for each numbered set of notes, using connecting words and phrases as appropriate. You must use all the words in the same order as the notes. You may add words and change the form of words where necessary. The first point has been expanded for you in the example.

e.g. Under the British judicial system - if - a person charge - serious offence - he/she have stand trial.
Under the British judicial system if a person is charged with a serious offence he or she has to stand trial.

1. Mean - he/she - have - appear - court - a judge and jury.
.....
.....
.....
2. During trial - the accused - also - know - the defendant - have right - be represent - a lawyer / another lawyer be also present - act for the crown - try - secure - a convict.
.....
.....
.....
3. Start trial - the accused - stand - dock - plead guilty - not guilty.
.....
.....
.....
4. If the accused - plea - "not guilty" - trial proceed / witnesses - be called - evidence /all evidence be hear - jury retire - reach verdict / least 10 - jury - must be - same opinion.
.....
.....
.....
5. Jury - find - accused - not guilty, he/she acquit / if - other hand, the accused - find - guilty, it be up - judge - sentence.
.....
.....
.....
6. Depend - serious - of offence - sentence - may - fine, suspend - sentence - prison term / British courts - not sentence - people - death.
.....
.....
.....

Word usage

189 Complete the expressions with words from the given list.

work
glimpse

shudder
devastate

contaminate
peer

evaluate
bluff

alter
cope with

- 1) **Bluff** your way out of a difficult situation. 2) a cow out of a moving train.
3) to earn a living. 4) a problem. 5) a river.
6) at the small print. 7) sb by giving bad news. 8)
the damage at £1,000. 9) with cold. 10) a dress.

190 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- Sue spent weeks in hospital after being seriously **injured** in a car crash.
(ruined, impaired, injured, damaged)
- Floods have completely the farmer's crops. (injured, damaged, harmed, ruined)
- I the notice-board quickly looking for second-hand cars for sale.
(scanned, peered at, scrutinized, inspected)
- The forensic expert the evidence looking for particles of skin.
(scanned, scrutinized, glimpsed at, peered at)
- My mother is always me to do my homework. I'm sick of it! (harassing, pestering, getting on at, teasing)
- The police have been accused of immigrants. (pestering, getting on at, harassing, teasing)
- My young nieces kept me to buy them sweets. (teasing, pestering, getting on at, harassing)
- I a plate when I was washing up, but it can still be used.
(chipped, smashed, snapped, shattered)
- The windscreen into a thousand pieces when the car hit a lamp-post. (smashed, shattered, snapped, chipped)
- In her temper, she the vase her ex-husband had bought her.
(snapped, chipped, shattered, smashed)

191 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	£50	a flat	a car	a pencil	church-hall	a suit for a wedding	a boat
hire							
borrow	✓						
rent							

	secretary	medicine	system	cure	speech	insect repellent
effective						
efficient	✓					
efficacious						
defective						

Practice Test Seven

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only *one* word in each space.

Alternative medicine is (1) popularity in Britain today. What seemed cranky and unreliable a mere 25 years (2) is now completely acceptable to (3) people. Recently, homoeopathy was publicly endorsed by Prince Charles, the heir (4) the British throne. Herbal medicine is probably most (5) used. Remedies made (6) plants were the first cures (7) used and now many people are turning to them (8) than taking yet more chemical preparations.

Acupuncture, an ancient Eastern art, is widely available. Many people go to acupuncture practitioners when, for (9), they wish to give (10) smoking. A small pin is (11) into both earlobes in order to (12) the patient of the desire to smoke. Cynics may say that they are (13) by a form of faith-healing, not by acupuncture (14) However, many ex-smokers swear that it (15) for them. Meditation, massage and even reflexology are all taught on government accredited courses in Britain. Those who (16) their effectiveness should take (17) of the fact that traditional doctors now regularly (18) patients to these specialists, and that many (19) name medicines are based (20) ancient cures.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means *exactly the same* as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever *she tells them, her parents don't believe her.*

- a. He didn't say a thing when he came in.
He came
- b. "Let's go home," Paul said to me.
Paul suggested
- c. Jane is much more intelligent than Judy.
Judy
- d. What particularly shocked me was his treatment of his children.
I
- e. The outcome of the story was never in doubt.
At no time
- f. Her second attempt at passing her driving test was a success.
She passed
- g. This will be her last appearance on the stage.
This will be the
- h. I'm sure he didn't know you'd be here.
He couldn't possibly

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

1. If you don't stop that, ... my temper.
 2. I know you like dancing but do something else?
 3. After days of work upon the solution to the puzzle.
 4. She has a habit all the lights when she gets home.
 5. If we him yesterday, we'd never have heard the news.
 6. They insisted the bill even though I offered to.
 7. In spite of I was still tired the next day.
 8. Our house looked so awful that we painted.
4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go?

PERMISSION

Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. She always does what we advise. | ADVICE |
| | |
| 2. You must study for this exam. | ESSENTIAL |
| | |
| 3. He solved the problem in less than an hour. | SOLUTION |
| | |
| 4. She said she was worried about her husband's health. | CONCERN |
| | |
| 5. There wasn't a single ticket left for the concert. | SELL-OUT |
| | |
| 6. He owes his life to that surgeon. | INDEBTED |
| | |
| 7. Only if you study a lot will you pass the exam. | DEPENDS |
| | |
| 8. Our car has been stolen three times this year. | HAD |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Even today in our ecologically sound, environmentally aware world, a declaration of vegetarianism is often met with expressions of incredulity. These expressions are more often than not accompanied by raised eyebrows and often even cynical smirks of superiority. Even as mouths express polite interest, eyes are saying that a vegetarian is a crank, someone to be regarded only with suspicious curiosity or downright distrust.

Perhaps attitudes exemplified by these gestures and expressions were justifiable twenty or thirty years ago, when the "hippy" movements of the '60s and early '70s were just breaking on an unsuspecting public. Then, vegetarianism as a conscious ideology or way of life, was relatively new and had strong links with the "drop-out" culture which was challenging accepted social structures and conventions. Certainly members of older generations still treat the vegetarians of the '90s with a similar sort of suspicion and intolerance that followers of the peace

5

10

movements of twenty years ago incurred. However, today, vegetarians can be found everywhere in all walks of life; the vegetarian commuter reading his copy of "The Independent" is probably more common than the flower-sporting, smock-wearing stereotype. As more information becomes available, more and more people are consciously turning to a meat-free diet. Their reasons for doing so are many and the potential benefits even more. 15

In a society where health and fitness have become obsessional, the exclusion of meat, with its links with heart disease, arthritis etc, is becoming common amongst individuals who care about what they put into their bodies. In the same way, there are those who are justifiably concerned about the quantities and types of chemicals and steroids which are used in intensive farming to raise levels of productivity, quality and, consequently, profitability. Calves and lambs grow at prodigious rates as various treatments are administered both orally and intramuscularly. Logically, chemicals introduced into animal flesh are then consumed further up the food chain. Studies have indicated that growth hormone treatments and vaccines administered to animals intended for human consumption may be responsible for a variety of disorders including serious hormonal imbalances and hyperactivity in children. 20 25

Increasing awareness of modern farming techniques and methods is also changing perspectives and attitudes on a more humanitarian level. Calves are deprived of light and allowed insufficient floor space in order to produce the anaemic flesh which society recognises as the delicacy, veal. Hens have their natural process of ovulation disturbed by exposure to artificial periods of day and night. There are those who will not eat meat simply because they cannot condone the suffering undergone by animals. 30

The facts are readily available for all; there are some who choose to act. To these people it seems that the best way both to protect themselves and protest is to boycott the product. Vegetarians, (for the most part) are not setting themselves up as ideals, they are simply satisfying their consciences and expressing their concern. A vegetarian isn't necessarily a crank, a subversive, an eccentric. A vegetarian is someone who doesn't eat meat. 35

- 1. What is meant by "ecologically sound, environmentally aware"? (line 1)
.....
.....
- 2. What, according to the passage, is the initial response of most people on meeting a vegetarian?
.....
.....
.....
- 3. Why were anti-vegetarian attitudes "justifiable" in the past? (line 7)
.....
.....
.....
- 4. How are vegetarians treated today?
.....
.....
.....
- 5. What is the meaning of the phrase "conscious ideology"? (line 9)
.....
.....
.....
- 6. What are the "potential benefits" of a meat-free diet? (line 18)
.....
.....
.....
.....

7. Explain the meaning of "prodigious". (line 24)
.....
.....
8. Explain the meaning of "further up the food chain". (line 25)
.....
.....
9. Why and in what ways are drugs administered to animals?
.....
.....
.....
10. Why is intensive farming regarded as being unacceptable on "humanitarian" levels? (line 30)
.....
.....
.....
11. How has the type of individual who is becoming vegetarian changed since the 1960s?
.....
.....
.....
12. In a paragraph of 50 - 70 words, summarize the reasons why increasing numbers of people are turning to vegetarianism.

Presentation 8

Wishes - Unreal Past

► A. Wishes

Form		Use
I wish (if only)	+ Past tense <i>I wish he were/was here now.</i>	regret about a present situation
I wish (if only)	+ Past Perfect <i>If only he had behaved himself at the party last night!</i>	regret about a past situation
I wish (if only)	+ subject + would + present inf. * We never say : I wish I would <i>I wish he would stop lying. (I'm fed up with his lies)</i> <i>I wish you would help me. (Please, help me.)</i>	complaint/regret about the present; willingness, request; wish about sth not likely to happen
I wish (if only)	+ subject + could + present inf. <i>I wish I could speak French.</i>	regret about a present or future situation concerning lack of ability
I wish (if only)	+ inanimate subject + would + present infinitive <i>If only it would stop raining!</i>	a wish for a change in the future which is not likely to happen

Remember that after "wish" or "if only" we "go one tense back". This means that we use Simple Past to refer to the present and Past Perfect to refer to the past.

Notes

1. **Wish** expresses a hypothetical desire. **If only** expresses regret or strong desire. Both **wish** and **if only** can be used interchangeably but **wish** is used for something that may happen whereas **if only** is used to express that what is wished does not exist.
*I wish she **wasn't/weren't** always late.*
*If only I **knew** what to do!*
2. Wish + infinitive = want to
*I wish **to be** informed of all the details.*
*I want **to be** informed of all the details.*

192 Write a wish for each of the following sentences.

1. You want to go out but you haven't got enough money.
.....
2. You forgot to have your holiday photographs developed.
.....
3. David discovered he left his briefcase on the bus.
.....

4. Ted left it too late to book a flight for Christmas.
5. You dream of being a world class racing driver.
6. It was windy all day and the fishermen couldn't work.
7. You didn't take your parents' advice and now you regret it.
8. It didn't cross your mind to wear a coat and now you're cold.
9. Sandra's mother-in-law is coming to stay and Sandra can't stand her.
10. Your sister won't lend you the dress which you want to wear tomorrow night.
11. Steven's dog ruined his pullover.
12. You threw away all your ex-boyfriend's letters and now you regret it.
13. Paul has seen some shoes he likes but they're very expensive.
14. You and your best friend fell out and now you're not speaking to each other.
15. John gets irritated when his brother plays his records so loud.

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>I wish I hadn't read the letter.</i>
<i>If only I hadn't read the letter!</i>
<i>I regret reading/having read the letter.</i>
<i>I'm sorry I read the letter.</i>
<i>It's a pity I read the letter.</i> 2. <i>"I wish he would be more patient," she said.</i>
<i>She complained that he wasn't patient.</i>
<i>She complained that he was impatient.</i> 3. <i>I would love to travel abroad.</i>
<i>If only I could travel abroad!</i>
<i>I wish I could travel abroad.</i> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. <i>Why don't you give up smoking?</i>
<i>I wish you would give up smoking.</i>
<i>Please give up smoking.</i>
<i>I'd rather you gave up smoking.</i>
<i>You'd better give up smoking.</i>
<i>It's time you gave up smoking.</i>
<i>You would be better off giving up smoking.</i> 5. <i>It's a pity I am not wealthy.</i>
<i>I wish I were wealthy.</i>
<i>If only I were wealthy!</i> 6. <i>I want to see him in person.</i>
<i>I wish to see him in person.</i> |
|---|--|

193 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. Please, stop whispering! I wish
2. I want to see your stamp collection. I wish
3. It's a pity I can't be more helpful. Sorry, I wish
4. If only you could join us! I would
5. He'd better start working. It's time
6. "I wish the course wasn't so demanding," she said. She complained
7. I wish you would leave me alone. I'd rather
8. If only I hadn't committed myself to this project. I regret
9. They would love to spend more time with their family. If only
10. He regrets not taking her threats seriously. He wishes
11. I'm sorry I neglected my responsibilities. If only
12. She complained that she had to work too hard. "I wish

13. He regrets buying such a cheap washing machine. He's sorry
14. Please, be on time. You'd
15. I would love to go on a round-the-world trip. I wish

194 *Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising wishes.*

1. If only I **had known** then what I know now.
2. I wish you earlier; we could have gone to the theatre then.
3. You'd that clock It hasn't worked for a week now.
4. I'm sorry on time to see the first half of the match.
5. If the bill before the electricity was cut off!
6. It's turn up at Mary's party. We had a lovely time there!
7. Why take a holiday? I think you need a rest.
8. He regrets time to finish the exercise.
9. It's time in bed. It's almost midnight.
10. I'd rather you anyone else about this. It's a secret.
11. She wishes her neighbours when she's trying to sleep.

195 *For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.*

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. I'd rather you paid more attention.
ONLY
.....
2. I wish I were thinner.
PITY
.....
3. If only I could buy a house!
LOVE
.....
4. Why don't you clean your room?
TIME
.....
5. It's a pity nobody came to the party.
ONLY
.....
6. I want to see you in my office.
WISH
.....
7. I'm sorry I said that to you.
REGRET
.....
8. I would love to see this film.
ONLY
.....
9. It's a pity he lost his job.
WISHES
.....
10. It's time you had your car repaired.
BETTER
.....

► B. Unreal Past

We can use **Simple Past** to talk about imaginary, unreal or improbable situations in the present, and **Past Perfect** when we refer to imaginary, unreal or improbable situations in the past. This use of the Past Tense is called **Unreal Past**.

Past tense	Past Perfect tense
1. Conditionals Type 2 <i>If I were you, I would quit.</i>	1. Conditionals Type 3 <i>If I had been told earlier, I wouldn't have acted this way.</i>
2. Wishes (present) <i>I wish I were in London.</i>	2. Wishes (past) <i>If only you hadn't ruined my dress!</i>
3. I'd rather/sooner sb ... (for present situations) <i>I'd sooner you answered me now.</i>	3. I'd rather/sooner sb ... (for past situations) <i>I'd rather he hadn't drunk that much last night.</i>
4. Suppose / Supposing <i>Suppose you were tired, what would you do?</i>	4. Suppose / Supposing <i>Suppose you had lost all your money?</i>
5. As if / As though <i>He behaves as if he owned the place!</i>	5. As if / As though (when the action of the clause of manner has happened earlier than the action of the main clause) <i>He looks as if he had won the pools!</i>
6. It's (about / high) time ... <i>It's time we left.</i>	

Note

Suppose can be followed by a verb in the Present tense to express a situation which may happen in the future or to introduce suggestions.

e.g. *Suppose he isn't at work, where shall we find him?*

would rather = I'd prefer

when the subject of would rather is also the subject of the following verb	I'd rather +	Present bare infinitive Perfect bare infinitive	(present / future) (past)
		<i>I'd rather have fish for lunch.</i> <i>I'd rather have told him before.</i>	
when the subject of would rather is different from the subject of the verb	I'd rather +	Simple Past Past Perfect	(present / future) (past)
		<i>I'd rather you left before the guests arrive.</i> <i>I'd rather you had left earlier.</i>	

had better = should

I had better

+ Present bare infinitive

(present / future)

We had better cut down on fats. (= We should cut down on fats.)

It would have been better if

+ Past Perfect

(past)

It would have been better if you hadn't behaved impolitely.

Notes

1. prefer + gerund / noun + to + gerund / noun (general)
e.g. *I prefer orange juice to tomato juice.*
I prefer swimming to climbing.
2. prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive (general)
e.g. *I prefer to travel by car rather than (travel) by coach.*
3. would prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive (specific)
e.g. *I'd prefer to have an apple-pie rather than have a spinach-pie now.*
4. would rather + bare infinitive + than + bare infinitive
e.g. *I'd rather sleep than watch T.V.*

196 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

I admire Paul. He acts as if he (1) **has never had** (never/have) a problem in his life, but I happen to know that if he (2) (be) luckier, he (3) (be) a rich man now, and if he (4) (not/have) so many problems with his health, his career as a musician (5) (go) much further. If I (6) (be) him, I think I (7) (become) discouraged, but he behaves as if his life (8) (be) the best imaginable.

197 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

If only Sarah (1) **had finished** (finish) university, she (2) (not/be) in the situation she is in today. If she (3) (not/become) discouraged, and (4) (go on) with her course, she (5) (be) a qualified teacher now, and she (6) (not/have) to work in such a badly-paid job. I remember telling her that if she (7) (only/stick) to her course, she (8) (easily/overcome) her difficulties, but she refused to listen. Now she admits that she wishes she (9) (not / give up) so easily and that she (10) (listen) to me, but it's a bit late for that. She's planning to do a secretarial course now, which, I'm sure, will improve her prospects. But I'm afraid she'll always regret (11) (not/finish) the teaching course while she had the chance.

198 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. I wish I **had asked** (ask) for help when I needed it.
2. Suppose she (lose) her job, what will she do?
3. She looks as if she (hear) the most outrageous story.
4. They had better (forget) their idea of going for a swim today.
5. You treat me as if I (be) your slave!
6. I'd rather you (confirm) the deal in writing by the end of the week.
7. If we (hear) the news, we would have known about the strike.
8. Suppose they (offer) you more money to stay, what would you do?
9. It's time you (think) about your future, son.

10. If only you (not / give) him the money; he's a con man.
11. He wishes he (be) more confident.
12. It would have been better if you (follow) his advice.

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>If you don't tell the truth, he'll punish you.</i>
You'd better tell the truth or else he'll punish you. 2. <i>If I were you, I would accept his proposal.</i>
You should accept his proposal.
You'd better accept his proposal. 3. <i>"You'd better take a nap," Mother said.</i>
Mother advised me to take a nap. 4. <i>"You shouldn't be offensive towards her,"</i>
<i>he said to me.</i>
He advised me not to be offensive towards her.
He suggested that I shouldn't be offensive towards her. 5. <i>They asked for a spare key. Why didn't you give them one?</i>
They asked for a spare key. You should have given them one. 6. <i>There'll be trouble if he behaves like that again.</i>
He'd better not behave like that again or there will be trouble. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. <i>Why didn't you tell him so?</i>
It would have been better if you had told him so.
If I were you, I would have told him so.
I'd rather/sooner you had told him so.
I wish you had told him so. 8. <i>I'd rather watch T.V. than listen to music.</i>
I prefer (watching) T.V. to (listening to) music. 9. <i>I'd rather stay indoors than go to the party.</i>
I'd prefer to stay indoors rather than go to the party. 10. <i>I prefer to play tennis rather than play polo.</i>
I'd rather play tennis than (play) polo.
I'd sooner play tennis than (play) polo. 11. <i>I'd rather you left now.</i>
I'd prefer you to leave now. 12. <i>It's time you learnt how to cook.</i>
It's time for you to learn how to cook.
You should learn how to cook.
You must learn how to cook. |
|---|--|

199 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. Why didn't you take the day off work? It would
2. "You'd better tidy your room now," he said. He advised
3. He'd rather eat with friends than eat alone. He prefers
4. "I'd rather you didn't take on too many responsibilities," he said to her.
He advised
5. If we don't leave now, we won't catch the train. We'd
6. It would have been better if we hadn't gone into the centre today.
I wish
7. They'd better consider all the offers for their house.
They should
8. He'd prefer to live in a bungalow rather than in a flat.
He'd rather
9. It would have been better if we'd made other arrangements.
Why
10. Why didn't he put the proposals in writing? I'd rather
11. I prefer to watch T.V. rather than go to bed. I'd rather
12. If I were you, I wouldn't trust him. You'd
13. It's time you started taking French lessons. It's time for
14. I wish you hadn't behaved so foolishly. I'd rather
15. I'd rather go to Italy than go to Sweden. I'd prefer
16. There'll be trouble if he doesn't turn up on time. He'd
17. I prefer to go by car rather than go by coach. I'd sooner

200 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising unreal past.

e.g. It's time they **moved to another** / **bought a bigger** house. This one is too small for eight of them.

1. She's such a snob; she behaves the Queen.
2. I wish You're always upsetting people.
3. I'd rather you noise last night. I couldn't get to sleep.
4. If only! We wouldn't be feeling so lonely.
5. If she, the ticket inspector wouldn't have made her pay a fine.
6. Suppose the horse; how much money would you have lost?
7. It's high time you It's such a mess in here.
8. If I buy a new washing machine; yours is so old.
9. If only they tickets! I've got two spare ones.
10. If John, he wouldn't have been late for work.

201 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. I'd rather eat at home than in a restaurant.
TO
.....
2. You should do what they tell you.
WERE
.....
3. You should have helped him when he asked you to.
WHY
.....
4. You really should learn to drive.
TIME
.....
5. Please, listen to me!
WISH
.....
6. I would advise you not to accept their proposal.
SUGGEST
.....
7. I'd rather stay at home tonight.
PREFER
.....
8. I prefer to play chess rather than play cards.
SOONER
.....
9. You'd better leave now.
LEFT
.....
10. You shouldn't have mentioned that in public.
BETTER
.....
11. If I were you, I wouldn't have behaved so rudely.
RATHER
.....

Consolidation 8

202 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

According to a recent report (1) by the Organisation of Economic Co-operation and Development, the problem of illiteracy is (2) which poses a serious threat (3) Europe's economy. Several million people are apparently (4) to read or write adequately and this may prevent the (5) of many supposedly advanced European countries.

The recent influx of immigrants (6) countries such as France and Sweden has (7) to misplaced ideas of (8) the illiterate population is. The OECD report reveals (9) that a fifth of military conscripts in France were unable to read a short passage (10) and one hundred workers at a Swedish mill (11) to achieve satisfactory levels of literacy. (12) British attempts to deal (13) the problem by organising schemes (14) at adult illiterates, the re-allocation of funds (15) the government doomed them (16) failure.

Calls have been (17) for more money to be directed (18) improving standards across Europe in (19) to promote international co-operation as (20) as national economic progress.

Phrasal Verbs 1

lay aside : put aside

lay into : attack (with blows or words)

lay off : stop doing sth irritating

lay out : spend

let down : 1) disappoint, 2) lower sth

let in for : involve in trouble etc

let in on : allow sb to share a plan, secret etc

let sb off : not punish severely

let on : reveal a secret

let out : 1) make (a garment etc) looser or larger (**opp.**: let in), 2) utter a cry

let sb through : allow sb to pass an exam or a test

let up : become less strong

let up on : treat sb less severely

203 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. He **laid out** all his savings on that venture which fortunately succeeded.
2. He let his parents by failing his exams.
3. Don't let that they're planning to get married. Their parents don't know.
4. I wish you'd lay telling me what to do all the time.
5. You should really let the children. They can't be perfect all the time.
6. We'll let you our plan but don't tell anybody else.
7. Her father laid her when she came home two hours late from a party.
8. I let myself a lot of trouble when I agreed to help her.
9. If the rain lets, we'll be able to play tennis.
10. For the last twenty years, he has been laying 15% of his salary for his old age.
11. Your skirt needs letting; it's too short.
12. He was let with a warning instead of being given a fine.
13. The child let a cry of horror at the sight of the dog.
14. The examiner let me although I hadn't answered all the questions.
15. This blouse is too tight for me. I'd better let it

What's the difference between "land in" and "land up"?

Phrasal Verbs 2

204 Match the phrasal verbs in bold italics with the definitions given.

1. If you **keep at** your French studies, you'll improve.
2. If we **keep to** the plan exactly, we're certain to succeed.
3. As I couldn't **keep up with** the rest of the class, I transferred to a lower class.
4. Don't **keep on at** me about the door; I'll fix it.
5. **Keep up (with)** your work and you'll succeed eventually.
6. The authorities managed to **keep down** rebellious factions with the use of force.
7. **Keep in with** the boss and you'll soon get a promotion.
8. It's time we found out what he's **keeping back** from us.
9. The student **was kept in** for an hour for cheating in the exam.
10. **Keep on** the diet and you'll soon begin to lose weight.

- A. to follow
- B. to progress at the same rate
- C. to continue doing sth
- D. to continue working at
- E. to repress
- F. to detain after normal hours as a punishment
- G. to hide
- H. to stay at an equal level with
- I. to continue to be friendly
- J. to continue talking in an irritating way

1. D 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

Idioms 1

against all odds : despite difficulties

get the sack : be dismissed

in the offing : likely to happen

status symbol : possession thought to show sb's high social rank, wealth, etc.

once and for all : for the last time

white elephant : useless possession

short and sweet : brief but pleasant (usu ironic)

out in the open : (of secrets) revealed

golden opportunity : the best chance

out and out : complete

in public : in the presence of other people

get the wrong end of the stick : misunderstand completely what has been said

throw a party : have a party

take things to pieces : dismantle things

grease sb's palm : bribe one

205 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. This new job is a **golden opportunity** and far too good to turn down.
2., sit down and be quiet or I'll send you out!
3. I always find it embarrassing when people argue
4., he won the national song contest and became quite well-known.
5. What he promised was impossible - he was a(n) liar.
6. Being a mechanic, my boyfriend loves
7. I'm afraid a war is
8. Now that the scandal is the Minister will have to resign.
9. When the traffic warden gave me a parking ticket, I tried to, which only got me into more trouble.
10. It's traditional to when you move house.
11. John when he was found to be spending company funds to buy things for himself.
12. If you think I'm criticising you, you've I think you were perfectly right to do what you did.
13. Even though it's a bit of a my mother keeps that clock for sentimental reasons.
14. I'm sure they bought that Rolls Royce as nothing but a ; they certainly don't need such a big car.
15. Let's keep this - just tell me what you want and then get out.

Idioms 2

out of print : (of books) not available any more

past one's prime : growing old

come to the point : reach the main point in a discussion

be out of practice : lacking practice

off the point : irrelevant

pop the question : make a proposal of marriage

part and parcel of : basic part of

out of the frying pan into the fire : from a bad situation to a worse

a bitter pill to swallow : a difficult fact to accept

fall into place : become clear

206 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. My husband **popped the question** on Valentine's Day in 1978.
2. The book was published in the 1940's and is now
3. Moving from that house to this one was a case of It's much worse here.
4. I'd love a game of tennis even though I'm
5. Failing the exam after so much hard work was
6. Everything at the end of the film.
7. Since we were discussing unemployment, his comment about football was totally
8. I wish he'd and stop wasting everyone's time.
9. You're no longer considered until you're in your 60's.
10. Doing the washing is of being a housewife.

Prepositions

207 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. Jam oozed **out of** the doughnut when she bit into it.
2. The driver was oblivious the red light and went straight through it.
3. Prison officers are so overburdened work that a crisis has arisen.
4. My mother has an obsession cleanliness and is forever doing the housework.
5. The vicious onslaught the enemy platoon claimed many lives.
6. My brother is so mean, he hates to part a single penny!
7. The villagers left their homes in the valley and moved to higher grounds as a precaution flooding.
8. The new policy is extremely pernicious the welfare of the elderly.
9. He has a proclivity dishonest business practices.
10. Mrs Heath pleaded her husband not to take the car.
11. He takes pride always doing his homework to a high standard.
12. He is proud his new sports car.

208 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. **To** everyone's astonishment, she arrived at the party in a Rolls Royce.
2. Their school building is repair, so they are having lessons in the old library.
3. She was the point of leaving when the phone rang.
4. People were chosen random to try the new product.
5. answer to your question, the meeting will take place next Tuesday.
6. The painting shows a woman standing in a field the nude.
7. no account must you open your book during the test.
8. The police officer said, "You are arrest for disturbing the peace."
9. the whole, I think your work is quite satisfactory.
10. As there was little time left, he outlined his plans brief.
11. Don't be so impatient Sua. She's only 10.
12. Mary was impatient the Christmas holidays to come.

209 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. Digging in the garden allows me to vent my frustrations.

OUTLET

2. They used the chemical in several new applications.

EXTENDED

3. She was allegedly the most popular singer in Peru.

CLAIMED

4. The boys threw snowballs at their next-door neighbour.

PELTED

5. She claimed that her success was due purely to luck.

ATTRIBUTED

6. The first sign of the disease is blurred vision.

ONSET

7. I must cut down on fats.

OPTION

8. If I had been you, I'd have tried to get the price reduced.

SHOES

9. Incessant worrying can be the cause of heart trouble.

LEAD

10. Sheila has become too big to wear this pullover.

GROWN

210 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

1. Let's start dinner now. There's waiting for Jeff because he's always late.
2. Should you ever be of legal advice, call this lawyer.
3. It Tom who stole the money, can it?
4. Don't gamble! You'll losing all your money.
5. All the tickets the time we get to the concert hall.
6. You're time trying to please the director. He'll never be completely satisfied with your work.
7. He's put so little effort into studying that he's most definitely his exam.
8. I'm not surprised that you're so tired. You haven't been to the gym for months so you are exercising.
9. The more he tries to do well in school, ... he seems to spend studying.
10. I've been living abroad for two years so I my family for a long time.
11. I'd sooner you dress than this one. It wasn't that expensive after all.
12. You'd better or for your appointment.

211 Find the mistake and correct it.

1. If you ~~lose~~ any more weight, your clothes will be too loose for you.
2. She's afraid to lose her job because of the recession.
3. All airlines indemnify their passengers against loss of their luggages.
4. He claimed that the bracelet was made from solid gold.
5. I hope I remember going to the dentist tomorrow.
6. The all class was late yesterday.
7. Anthropologists study the various people of the world.
8. Her parents are against the wedding.
9. She was overjoyed when he asked her to marry with him.
10. Mathematics are her strongest subject.
11. Many people suffer from mid-life crisis at some stage during the middle ages.
12. She was petrified when she saw the mouses in the cupboard.
13. We must ask for permission leaving early.
14. You mustn't come if it's uncomfortable for you.
15. His father is also christened George.
16. She was brought up in America but now she's become a nationalized British citizen.
17. He bought a flat nearby the city centre.
18. Some students necessitate more revision than others.
19. Today's society needs womans to work.
20. Neither his father nor mine understand the problem.
21. We'd better keep a room in this hotel.
22. I advise you leaving early.

lose

212 Match column A with column B, then fill in the correct idioms.

Column A

1. as dull as
2. as fit as
3. as gentle as
4. as good as
5. as light as
6. as miserable as
7. as old as
8. as plain as
9. as pleased as
10. as keen as

Column B

- A. the hills
- B. a lamb
- C. mustard
- D. the nose on your face
- E. ditchwater
- F. punch
- G. gold
- H. a feather
- I. a fiddle
- J. sin

1. **E**
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

1. What do you mean, you can't see she's unhappy? It's **as plain as the nose on your face**.
2. That magic trick is I've seen it a hundred times.
3. Her cat Rosie is She weighs less than a kilo.
4. John was to get on with the project. In fact he could hardly wait.
5. Mary was when she learned she'd won the lottery.
6. The babysitter said that the children had been, and that she hoped to have children just like them.
7. The dog looked vicious, but in reality it was
8. That professor can put a whole class to sleep. His lectures are
9. She was ill for some time, but now she's
10. Joan was when she learned she'd failed the exam.

- 213** In most lines of the following text there is an incorrect item. Read the numbered lines 1 - 14 and then write the correct form in the spaces provided for your answers. Some lines are correct. Indicate these lines with a tick (✓). The first one has been done for you.

	Answers
1. There has been many controversy recently as to whether the practice	much
2. of dowsing - that is, the use of rods or pendulums to locate	
3. underground water supplies - genuinely works and is a myth.	
4. Dowsing dates back to the 16th century and even in todays' technological	
5. era, has many dedicated supporters, who firmly believe at its validity.	
6. On the other hand, there seems to be a luck of concrete evidence of any	
7. link among the rod's movement and the presence of water. If water	
8. appears to find by means of dowsing, in reality the existence	
9. of other geological indications could have acted like a pinpointer.	
10. Whenever controlled experiments have been carried off, dowsers have failed	
11. to substantiate their claims. This is because, claim the dowsers, to scientific	
12. conditions having a negative effect in their powers of concentration.	
13. So, you do believe the argument put forward by the supporters of dowsing,	
14. or those sceptics who say that dowsing cannot locate water?	

Word usage

- 214** Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- I left the house in a hurry and my bedroom was **strewn** with clothes. (**scattered, dispersed, strewn, sprinkled**)
- The skaters gracefully across the ice. (**slid, glided, slipped, skidded**)
- The cat slept peacefully in the long grass. (**huddled, nestled, snuggled, cuddled**)
- Mr Wright his vegetable garden carefully. (**tends, looks after, takes care of, attends**)
- Priests are forbidden to any information heard in the confessional. (**betray, divulge, reveal, disclose**)
- The prisoner didn't his comrades even when he was tortured. (**betray, divulge, reveal, disclose**)
- The removal men the heavy piano up the stairs with great difficulty. (**pushed, shoved, thrust, heaved**)
- She a few clothes into a case and hurried to the airport. (**pushed, shoved, thrust, heaved**)
- My fear of wasps from the fact that I was severely stung as a child. (**stems, originates, derlves, commences**)
- This year's series of open-air plays with a performance of "Electra". (**stems, originates, derives, commences**)
- We could hear the monkeys long before we reached their cage. (**chatting, chattering, prattling, babbling**)
- Jane about the surprise party for Sheila and now the whole idea is ruined. (**blabbed, gossiped, prattled, chatted**)
- We giggled at the sight of Mrs Brown down the road in her six-inch stiletto heels. (**staggering, reeling, tottering, stumbling**)

215 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	stone	experience	metal	discovery	friend	moment	antique	jewellery	advice
valuable									
precious	✓								

	bread	wood	tomatoes	paper	meat	material	cabbage	cheese
chop								
slice	✓							
shred								

	meat	girl	ice	volume	chance	cigar	line	expression	harvest
slim									
lean	✓								
thin									

	hands	sky	sheets	air	weather	wound	day	knife	voice
clean	✓								
clear									

	time	bed	position	place	armchair	supermarket	life	bus-stop	job
comfortable									
convenient	✓								

216 Fill in the blanks with one of the words from the box below in the correct form.

fire	monitor	enact	broaden	vent
waive	howl	pamper	meet	issue

- "If you don't **meet** our demands, we will destroy your business," he said.
- Considering my vast experience, they the normal requirements.
- The doctors his progress with sophisticated equipment.
- The teacher his anger on the naughty child.
- As soon as he the gun the birds flew away.
- At Christmas the children the birth of Jesus.
- My father says that reading your mind.
- The dog with pain when the cat scratched it.
- If you children, they will grow up spoilt.
- The library hasn't my new tickets yet.

Practice Test Eight

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only *one* word in each space.

In holiday resorts all (1) the Mediterranean outdoor restaurants and cafés (2) "English Breakfast" every morning, and (3) in the early afternoon they are still filled with people tucking into plates (4) with eggs, bacon, tomatoes and sausages. Those with stamina follow this with toast and jam washed (5) with tea and orange juice. But do the English eat (6) this everyday?

Certainly a full breakfast used to be (7) for those who (8) manual jobs if they could afford it. The tradition has (9) with the increase in sedentary jobs and the rising (10) of ingredients; it seems that the English breakfast no (11) suits the English. These (12) have been compounded by the (13) of doctors and nutritionists. The high fat and salt (14) of bacon and sausages and the (15) of cholesterol in eggs means that we are not (16) to eat them often.

The opposite of the "English Breakfast", the cup of black coffee and a cigarette is also (17) recommended. We need, it seems, a nutritious meal to start the day (18) The British now (19) to eat cereal, toast and orange juice very much like people in other countries. The great English breakfast is now (20) to high days and holidays.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means *exactly the same* as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever *she tells them, her parents don't believe her.*

- a. There is nothing he can do but wait.
Beyond
- b. She acted brilliantly in her last film.
She gave
- c. Mr Jones never takes his children anywhere.
Mr Jones' children
- d. I can't think why you said that.
I have
- e. He showed me exactly what to do.
He gave me
- f. Would it be possible for you to finish this now?
Is there
- g. I would never sign such a complicated contract.
Under no circumstances
- h. The library closes early today.
It's

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use **crying over** spilt milk.

- The driver of the lorry was taken to hospital to for shock.
- stop cheating, I shall tell the headmaster.
- Give when you get back. My number is 7426892.
- I'm sick of this project. on it for nearly six weeks.
- John was in hospital last week so you at work.
- I'll lend you the car as you promise to be careful.
- The car is stopping. We seem to of petrol.
- It took her a month to the flu.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence **as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence**, but using the word given. This word must **not be altered** in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go?

PERMISSION

Answer: **Were they given permission to go?**

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. The mix-up wasn't his fault. | BLAME |
| | |
| 2. John took my place while I was at the dentist's. | STOOD |
| | |
| 3. I'd be grateful if you could help me. | MIND |
| | |
| 4. Susan's grandfather left her all his money. | INHERITED |
| | |
| 5. It's unlikely that we'll arrive before noon. | PROBABLY |
| | |
| 6. Most people know that becoming an actor is difficult. | COMMON |
| | |
| 7. You'll have problems if you park here. | BETTER |
| | |
| 8. You can't see that star with the naked eye. | VISIBLE |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Picture Timbuktu on a January afternoon: a somnolent town on the edge of the desert, its mudcoloured houses crumbling in the dry heat, lizards scampering across sandy streets. Camels graze in a garbage dump. A muezzin calls the faithful to prayer. The only hint of impending invasion is a dull roar beyond the horizon, along the ancient paths of the salt caravans.

There, thundering across a moonscape of thornbushes and dried water-holes, come Herbert Schek, a German garage owner, and his daughter Patricia, a computer student. Along with them are many others, all competitors in the 7,135 - mile Paris-to-Dakar rally, the longest, toughest and most exotic motor race on earth. Of 236 four-wheel-drive cars, 121 motorcycles and 93 trucks that left Paris on Christmas day, one third would make it to the finish line.

Of those who tried, the unsung heroes were the struggling amateurs seeking to test themselves in the crucible of the legendary "Dakar". Derisively, they are dubbed "poireaux" - or leeks - because, as often as not, they end up "planted" in the desert, bogged down in sand. But unlike the professionals, poireaux take off on shoestring budgets, sponsored by local hardware stores or travel agencies - or on their own savings. The cyclists carry sleeping bags on their bikes and scavenge abandoned machines

5

10

for spare parts. "It's a personal thing," said one competitor. "You want to conquer the desert, and you want to thumb your nose at the bigwigs." 15

He did not think much about the danger: one cyclist evacuated in a coma, another with a broken leg. "I'll go until I collapse," he said, lying on the sand after a day's segment that took him twelve bumpy hours. "Others have mental breakdowns. You must never doubt." 20

Another cyclist said, "I've had almost every problem I could have. I came for adventure, now all that's left is the suffering." 25

But as the sun set in a violet haze over Timbuktu, Patricia Schek slapped her father on the back and cheered him up, saying, "He never gives up." Herbert Schek beamed. "This is my last race," he said. "I ride only for her. She's so fast. Now I see she can make it." Patricia was not so sure. In fact, days later, after her father and others had fallen by the wayside, Patricia would forge through to the finish, 45th among the 46 bikes that fought to the end. A poireau's dream come true.

1. What is the purpose of the description in the first paragraph?
.....
2. Replace the word "somnolent" (line 1).
.....
3. Why are the vehicles described as "thundering" (line 5)?
.....
4. What is suggested by the statistics relating to the race?
.....
5. Why is the race described as "exotic" (line 8)?
.....
6. Explain in your own words why the competitors are referred to as "poireaux" (line 11).
.....
.....
7. What is the difference between the poireaux and the professionals?
.....
.....
8. Explain the word "segment" (line 18) used in the context.
.....
.....
.....
9. Why does the cyclist claim that "you must never doubt" (line 19)?
.....
.....
10. Replace the word "beamed" (line 23) with another word or phrase.
.....
11. Explain the phrase "fallen by the wayside" (line 25).
.....
12. In what sense is Patricia's low finishing position "a poireau's dream come true" (line 26)?
.....
.....
13. In a paragraph of 50 - 100 words explain the attraction of the Dakar race for amateurs.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Relatives

I. Relative Pronouns

	Subject of the following verb (cannot be omitted)	Object of the following verb (can be omitted)	Possession (cannot be omitted)
People	who that	whom who that	whose
	<i>He is the actor. He was awarded an Oscar.</i> <i>He is the actor who/that was awarded an Oscar.</i>	<i>There's the man. We met him yesterday.</i> <i>There's the man. (whom/who/that) we met yesterday.</i>	<i>That's Mr Brown. His wife died last month.</i> <i>That's Mr Brown, whose wife died last month.</i>
Things Animals	which that	which that	whose of which (formal)
	<i>I bought a camera. It doesn't work properly.</i> <i>I bought a camera which/that doesn't work properly.</i>	<i>Here's the camera. I found it in your bag.</i> <i>Here's the camera (which/that) I found in your bag.</i>	<i>There's the camera. Its lens is broken.</i> <i>There's the camera whose lens/the lens of which is broken.</i>

II. Relative Adverbs

Time	when (= in/on which)	<i>The day when he first met Jane was the happiest of his life.</i>
Place	where (= in/at/on/to + which)	<i>That's the centre where the conference is being held.</i>
Reason	why (= for which)	<i>His infidelity is the reason why they are getting divorced.</i>

Notes

1. **that** can be used in place of **when**, **where** or **why**, but only in defining clauses.
e.g. *That's the reason (**why** / **that**) he lied to you.*

2. **that** is never used after commas or prepositions.
e.g. *That's the place **in which** I was born.*
not ~~in that~~ That's the place ~~in that~~ I was born.
*This is Paul, **who** you spoke to last week.*
not ~~that~~ This is Paul, ~~that~~ you spoke to last week.

► Defining - Non-Defining Relative Clauses

A. Defining Relative Clauses

A defining relative clause refers to the preceding noun. It gives essential information about it and cannot be omitted as this could obscure the meaning of the main clause. A defining relative clause cannot be put between commas.

e.g. *People are thieves. (Which people? Everyone?)*

*People **who steal** are thieves.*

B. Non-Defining Relative Clauses

A non-defining relative clause refers to the preceding noun and gives extra information about it. A non-defining relative clause can be omitted without causing confusion or changing the meaning of the main clause and therefore must be put between commas.

e.g. *My brother, **who is studying medicine**, will be 24 next week.*

Relatives with Prepositions

The preposition is put in front of **whom** or **which** (formal English). However, the preposition can be put at the end of the relative clause, thus **whom** becomes **who**. In this case **that** (less formal) is more commonly used instead of **who/which**. It is usual, though, to omit **who/which/that** in everyday speech and put the preposition at the end of the relative clause.

*That's the man **with whom** I went to France. (formal)*

*That's the man **that/who** I went to France **with**. (less formal)*

*That's the man I went to France **with**. (informal)*

where : a. preposition + which
b. which/that ... preposition
c. ... preposition

when/why : a. preposition + which
b. (that)

*That's the house **where** we lived for ten years.*

*1964 is the year **when** I was born.*

a. *That's the house **in which** we lived for ten years.*

a. *1964 is the year **in which** I was born.*

b. *That's the house **which/that** we lived **in** for ten years.*

b. *1964 is the year **(that)** I was born **(in)**.*

c. *That's the house we lived **in** for ten years.*

217 Fill in the blanks with a suitable relative pronoun or adverb where necessary.

- He's the author **whose** novel became a best seller.
- The meeting I attended was the final one before the company went into liquidation.
- The man with the parrot is the one went mad and now thinks that he is Long John Silver!
- India is the country I spent the early years of my life.
- Monday was the day they left for France.
- Children always want to know the reason things are as they are.
- The person to this letter is addressed no longer lives here.
- People work under the sun should wear hats.
- The film was on television last night was based on a novel by Umberto Eco.
- The place the party was held was a luxurious mansion on 53rd Street.

218 Fill in the blanks with the correct relative pronoun or adverb. Indicate where the relatives can be omitted.

1. My aunt and uncle, **who** live in the house is just behind ours, are the people the new cinema belongs to.
2. Two summers ago Donna went to Capri, ... she met the man she is going to marry he gets out of the army.
3. John Lewiston, ... shares a house with my brother, comes from a village I lived I was very young.
4. It was last week Sheila told us about the man claimed that he was her cousin.
5. I believe that what he says is true, ... is a point some people have doubts about.
6. Lucy is a person I know, and is so interested in animals that she gave up a good career to work with them, ... is quite unusual.
7. That man you met at the party was the one wife is a well-known writer.
8. Our house in London, ... value has nearly doubled over the past few years, is being bought by a couple come from the town my father was born.
9. Just as they were leaving the house Mr Smith, ... owns the house next door, stopped them and asked if they had had any trouble with the people to he had rented the house.
10. Last week was one of those times nothing went right, ... was disturbing considering all the work I had to do.

219 Join the following sentences using relative pronouns or adverbs.

1. Sally and Sue are twins. They always wear the same clothes.
.....
2. I met my friends at the café. It is on the corner of my street.
.....
3. The man is a famous athlete. He is sitting opposite you.
.....
4. My uncle is a baker. He knows everyone in the village.
.....
5. The dog had to be examined by a vet. It bit me.
.....
6. I applied for a job. Someone had already taken it.
.....
7. My favourite flowers are roses. They are also the most expensive.
.....

220 Look at the following sentences and a) Indicate which of them contain non-defining relative clauses, then put commas and b) Indicate which of them contain defining relative clauses and say whether the relative can be omitted or not.

1. Thomas and Archibald who are rather boring never get invited to parties.
2. That's the politician who lost the election.
3. The girl who was sitting next to me during the test was cheating.
4. People who don't believe in God are called atheists.
5. Jane Smith who comes from Canada had to resit the exam.
6. Can you give me the cup which is on the top shelf?
7. The boy who spoke to us after the concert is the one who plays drums in the band.
8. The athlete who won the race was from China.

221 Rewrite the following sentences putting the preposition at the end of the relative clause.

1. The woman to whom I was talking is the director of the company.
.....
2. The pen with which the novel was written has been donated to a museum.
.....
3. The house in which Dickens spent part of his life has become a London tourist attraction.
.....

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This is the building in which the meeting will take place.
<i>This is the building the meeting will take place in.</i>
<i>This is the building where the meeting will take place.</i> 2. She sent her kindest regards, which was thoughtful of her.
<i>It was thoughtful of her to send her kindest regards.</i> 3. She is rather childish, which can be irritating.
<i>It can be irritating that she's rather childish.</i> 4. It was a shame that you weren't able to attend the performance.
<i>You weren't able to attend the performance, which was a shame.</i> 5. She received a gift which was totally useless.
<i>The gift she received was totally useless.</i> 6. The actor I met was extremely talented.
<i>I met an actor who was extremely talented.</i> 7. That's the Queen. Her reign began in 1953.
<i>That's the Queen whose reign began in 1953.</i> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Whose pen is this?
<i>Who does this pen belong to?</i>
<i>To whom does this pen belong?</i>
<i>Who is the owner of this pen?</i> 9. He spoke quickly and I got confused.
<i>He spoke quickly which confused me.</i> 10. Many students graduate every year. Most of them come from abroad.
<i>Many students, most of whom come from abroad, graduate every year.</i> 11. Shakespeare wrote the play "Othello".
<i>"Othello" is a play (which/that) Shakespeare wrote.</i> 12. Dante was born in that house.
<i>That's the house Dante was born in.</i>
<i>That's the house where Dante was born.</i> 13. I can't see any reason for their behaving like that.
<i>I can't see any reason why they behaved like that.</i> 14. The day I got married was the happiest of my life.
<i>The day when I got married was the happiest of my life.</i> |
|---|--|

222 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. He refused to accept my apologies, which was childish of him.
It was
2. London is the city I was born in. London
3. He received an award for best actor. The award
4. We went to a restaurant which had very poor service.
The restaurant
5. That man is in bandages. His car was involved in an accident yesterday.
That man
6. It's unfortunate that the construction of the building will take longer than expected.
The construction
7. This is the neighbourhood. I lived here in the 1960s.
This is
8. The advice we were given was extremely valuable.
We were given

9. He recommended me for the position, which was kind of him.

It was

10. The day we got married was hot and sunny.

We got married

223 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. This is the knife **with which** he/she was killed.

1. "Hamlet" was the role awarded his first Oscar.

2. The aircraft travelling was subject to a great deal of turbulence.

3. The exam studying was postponed.

4. Her new dress, ... designed and made herself, was a tribute to her skill and creativity as a dressmaker.

5. I don't know the he dislikes me.

6. I bought a used cooker properly. I'd better take it back to the shop and get a new one.

7. The vet take my dog is very understanding.

224 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. Whose is the car which is blocking the street?

WHOM

.....

2. This is the town in which Thomas Hardy was born.

WHERE

.....

3. It was generous of her to donate so much money to charity.

WHICH

.....

4. He's the author who received the prize.

WHOM

.....

5. These are strangers about whom we know nothing.

WHO

.....

6. That couple had their child abducted by terrorists.

WHOSE

.....

7. It was unfortunate that you weren't able to attend the meeting.

WHICH

.....

8. To whom are you sending the parcel?

WHO

.....

9. This is the dog which was awarded first prize at Crufts.

TO

.....

10. A lot of tourists went on a trip to Delphi; most of them were from England.

WHOM

.....

225 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

The destruction of the rainforests is one of the main items (1) the agenda at the Earth Summit now taking (2) in Brazil. The more affluent nations (3) the issue as one of preservation; deforestation must stop. For the poorer Third World Countries, the (4) is not so cut and dried. To these people, the rainforests represent a source of economic prosperity, a point (5) obviously takes precedence (6) ecological concerns. A solution must be found (7) the damage caused by the deforestation that is destroying the rainforests (8) irrevocable.

Deforestation is carried (9) by those involved in the timber industry and also by migrant farmers. The latter occupy an area of land, strip it, farm it until its natural mineral supply is (10) up and then move on. The land is (11) useless and exposed and a process of erosion comes into (12), washing soil into rivers thus killing fish and blocking the water's natural course.

The land is not the only (13) Rainforests are a richly populated habitat. In the rainforests of Madagascar alone there are at (14) 150,000 individual species of plants and animals which are found (15) else in the world, and more are being discovered all the (16) Furthermore, (17) 50% of all endangered animal species live in the world's rainforests. The destruction of the forests effectively represents a complete removal of all these plants and animals. Deprived (18) their natural environments, they will disappear (19) Again, this process is irreversible. Man, no matter how powerful he (20) himself to be, does not have the power to re-establish the species he is so wilfully destroying.

Phrasal Verbs 1

226 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the missing preposition or adverb from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

ahead, onto, back, for, after, up, out for, to, up to, over, out, into, down on, on, at

- Looking **back** on my life I realize I've been very fortunate.
- She looks Mrs Brown's children three days a week.
- This firm looks employees with lots of motivation.
- Robert looks people who are not as educated as he is.
- The police are looking the matter and hoping to find a solution soon.
- Look! There's a car coming.
- He looks his older brother and follows his example in everything.
- Look this manuscript and tell me what you think of it.
- Let's make an appointment to look the house that is for sale.
- The hotel room looked the swimming pool.
- Passers-by looked as the bank robbers made their getaway in a stolen car.
- They looked him to provide funds for the new magazine.
- We've been looking a new flat for months but we haven't found one yet.
- You'd better look the dates in the encyclopaedia.
- I'm sorry; I haven't had time to look your compositions yet.
- Have you looked what you'll be doing in two years' time?
- Could you please go to the station and look my grandmother?
- He was led by her flattery but soon discovered how insincere she was.
- I don't think we can rule this possibility
- In 1917 the Russian peasants rose against their masters.

What's the difference between "look in" and "look up" meaning "visit"?

Phrasal Verbs 2

227 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the missing preposition or adverb from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

for, out, up, off with, up for, out, at, over

- After escaping from prison the convict made *for* the hills.
- Can you make the meaning of this passage?
- When you make the cheque, please make it payable to Mr R. Smith.
- Their so-called guest made all their jewels while they were at work.
- On seeing the burglar the woman made him with a kitchen knife.
- The boss asked me to make the hours I missed last week.
- I don't know how to make my rudeness to him.
- The committee is made of twelve members.
- She makes that she is a successful actress, but in fact she's only played one small role.
- They want to make the loft into a study.
- He made the whole story; it was all a lie.
- Her father has made all his property to her as she is his only child.
- After not speaking for several days they finally made
- I can't make who is in the room, as it's too dark.
- She never goes out of the house without first making her face.

Idioms 1

hit the roof : get very angry

work to rule : adhere strictly to the rules as a form of protest

on the rack : in a state of great anxiety

off the record : unofficial(ly)

in a rut : be fixed in a monotonous routine

in the long run : after a long period of time

it stands to reason : it is logical

as a last resort : when all else has failed

put down roots : settle down

know the ropes : know all the details of a business

228 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

- After working in the same office for twenty-seven years with no hope of promotion he felt he was *in a rut*.
- She when her neighbours played their stereo at full volume for the fourth consecutive night.
- Having lived and worked in more than a dozen countries he thought it was about time he in one place.
- The bus drivers voted to in an attempt to break down the management's resistance to their demands.
- You've eaten so much that you feel sick.
- I'd been unable to contact her for three days so I drove the thirty miles to her house to see what was going on.
- Paul's only just started work here, so he doesn't really yet.
- This may seem an expensive purchase now but it will save us a lot of money.
- When Tom asked Lily to marry him, she kept him for days before giving him an answer.
- My boss couldn't tell me anything officially but he told me a promotion was imminent.

Idioms 2

keep sth quiet : keep sth secret

at close quarters : from a short distance

cut sb to the quick : deeply hurt sb's feelings

on the quiet : secretly

call it quits : give up; stop

out of the question : impossible

open to debate : not decided / settled

beg the question : fail to deal directly with a question

be in a quandary : be confused; undecided

an unknown quantity : person or thing that one has no experience of

229 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. Although he was collecting unemployment benefit, **on the quiet** he was working as a hospital porter.
2. Whether the advertising campaign will increase sales is
3. That presidential candidate is virtually; almost nothing is known about him.
4. Although the antique table looked nice from across the room, ... you could see how badly damaged it was.
5. His response to his opponent's comment simply; it was impossible to tell what he really meant.
6. If the gardening business doesn't pick up soon, I'm going to and get a proper job.
7. It is that you should drive the car without your licence.
8. She's over which flat to choose, so she'll probably end up staying on in her parents' house.
9. I'll tell you what's going on if you promise to
10. He was by her comment that his previous novel was infinitely better than his new one.

Prepositions

230 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. Susan's quest **for** her long lost brother lasted for many years.
2. We had to queue before we could get into the cinema last night.
3. Heavy rain resulted widespread flooding.
4. I was reminded my childhood when I heard that nursery rhyme.
5. Green vegetables are rich vitamins and minerals.
6. She is quick mental arithmetic.
7. Queen Victoria reigned Britain and Ireland for over sixty years.
8. The sight of the snake made him recoil horror.
9. His style of writing is reminiscent Hardy's.
10. There has been a rise unemployment this year.

231 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. Please keep **in** touch after you've gone back to America.
2. As she didn't have a lot of cash she bought the fridge credit.
3. They live the outskirts of a large village.
4. average, English students leave school at the age of sixteen.
5. Mike is not really tune with the rest of the group.
6. That writer is very much favour with the public at the moment.
7. What is the agenda for today's meeting?
8. the one hand he's a dependable worker, but he is very slow.
9. He's quick doing mental calculations.
10. Are you the mood for a walk on the beach?

232 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. In appearance, the two sisters are very similar to one another.

ALIKE

2. She forgets things easily.

FORGETFULNESS

3. The witness could not describe the thieves.

LIKE

4. The new rules about school uniforms will apply next year.

FORCE

5. I would rather eat out than cook.

EATING

6. She can't remember meeting you before.

RECOLLECTION

7. It obviously wasn't her intention to offend you.

MEAN

8. Someone has broken into their house.

HAD

9. Is he likely to get the job?

CHANCES

10. You should do what your tutor advises.

ADVICE

11. I didn't know he could dance so well.

IDEA

233 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case **it gets** cold.

- You'd be better us the night. It's too cold and dark to go home.
- Had I known how awful she would feel, ... told her.
- It's about You've been sleeping for hours.
- Your car It's very dirty.
- No closed my eyes than the phone rang.
- The boy was delighted with the puppy as eyes on it.
- Only if you send a payment in advance reserve a seat for you.
- I'd offer you some tea but we seem of sugar.
- In all be back at work on Monday; at least that was what he said.
- She had no lies; she only wanted to make you feel better.
- Unless the bus, we'll miss the start of the film.

234 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. Nobody ~~have~~ influenced my decision.
- 2. He disguised himself so that nobody wouldn't recognize him.
- 3. He entered into the house without making a noise.
- 4. No sooner he had arrived than he left again.
- 5. She wrote him a notice telling him where she had gone.
- 6. Not only he won the race, but he broke the world record as well.
- 7. The number of fatal car accidents are increasing at an alarming rate.
- 8. A large number of people was present at the demonstration.
- 9. The accident took place at the crossroads near my house.
- 10. Your interview will occur at 10 a.m. on Tuesday.
- 11. It's no use try to sleep with all that noise.
- 12. We went by the seaside yesterday.
- 13. Passengers needn't cross these lines.
- 14. I wasn't persuaded by his speech.
- 15. She speaks English most fluently than her sister.

has

Word usage

235 Fill in the numbered blanks choosing the word which fits best. The first one has been done for you.

The joys and tribulations of being a pet owner! During our lifetime most of us have some experience of either owning a pet or being in (1) **close** contact with someone who does. Is there such a thing as "the ideal pet"? If so, what goes to make up the ideal pet? Various (2) influence one's choice of pet, from your reasons for getting a pet to your lifestyle. For example, although quite a few pets are relatively cheap to buy, the cost of (3) can be considerable. Everything must be (4) into account, from food and bedding, to vaccinations and veterinary bills. You must be prepared to (5) time on your pet, shopping for it, cleaning and feeding it. Pets can be demanding and a big responsibility. Are you prepared to exercise and (6) an animal or do you prefer a more independent pet? How much spare room do you have? Is it right to lock an energetic animal into a (7) space? Do you live near a busy road which may threaten the life of your pet? Pets (8) turtles and goldfish can be cheap and convenient, but if you prefer affectionate pets a friendly cat or dog would be more (9) People get pets for a number of reasons: for company, security or to teach responsibility, especially to children. Pets can be affectionate and loyal and an excellent source of company as long as you know what pet (10) you and your lifestyle.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A) near | B) close | C) narrow | D) tight |
| 2. A) facets | B) elements | C) factors | D) points |
| 3. A) upkeep | B) maintenance | C) upbringing | D) raising |
| 4. A) considered | B) held | C) taken | D) kept |
| 5. A) take | B) waste | C) occupy | D) spend |
| 6. A) household | B) houstrain | C) housekeep | D) housework |
| 7. A) confined | B) detained | C) reduced | D) closed |
| 8. A) so that | B) as for | C) as if | D) such as |
| 9. A) suited | B) appropriate | C) likely | D) good |
| 10. A) fits | B) matches | C) suits | D) goes with |

236 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- The cup is full to the **brim** so be careful when you carry it. (**border, boundary, verge, brim**)
- Thousands of refugees are camping at the between the two countries, hoping to find asylum. (**boundary, border, brim, rim**)
- After my divorce, I was on the of a nervous breakdown. (**border, brim, bounds, verge**)
- The school playing fields are out of while equipment is being set up for the cricket match. (**bounds, brim, verge, border**)
- Children should keep away from the river in case they fall in. (**shore, bank, coast, beach**)
- We're spending our holidays on the this summer. (**bank, beach, coast, shore**)
- The old lady her bag for fear it might be stolen. (**seized, grabbed, grasped, clutched**)
- A thief ran in, ... the money from the till and ran out. (**clutched, grabbed, took, grasped**)
- I'm so to colds that I expect to have at least three a year. (**susceptible, liable, prone, apt**)
- Young children are often to illnesses such as colds and measles. (**liable, prone, apt, susceptible**)

237 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	sb who has fainted	a painting	a dying man	riches to sb	sb's feelings	a book to its owner
revive	✓					
restore						

	floorboards	children	mice	rusty hinges	new shoes	old beds	electric saw	joints
squeaking								
creaking	✓							
whining								

238 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

value spoil prophesy decline manage
amaze breed maintain exhibit

- 1) **breed** horses. 2) a painting. 3) sb's contribution.
4) an invitation. 5) sb with your singing. 6) good relations. 7) a company. 8) children. 9) doom.

239 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

stroke discharge desert abdicate pat
evict gape wind rinse whisper

- 1) **pat** the dog. 2) the cat. 3) sweet nothings. 4) the plates. 5) a tenant. 6) a patient. 7) in surprise.
8) the clock. 9) your family. 10) from the throne.

Practice Test Nine

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

"Read a book? There must be something (1) to do." This phrase is (2) more and more frequently as not (3) the desire but also the incentive to read declines. Young people nowadays are (4) with too many alternatives (5) reading for them to find a justification for actually sitting down and opening a book, let (6) curling up in a chair for the afternoon to (7) a good long read for the pure pleasure of it. Even in schools, where books have been the standard (8) of storing and transmitting nearly all types of knowledge (9) centuries, they are (10) supplanted by the tools of the video and computer revolution. Why (11) to turn a page when by tapping a button or (12) a screen the same information can be flashed (13) your eyes within seconds? Even the act of reading (14) is being "revolutionized" by the advent of portable, walkman-like devices which can store and (15) the texts of innumerable books without the reader having to (16) a page. One wonders (17) future generations will ever know the actual, physical pleasures of reading: the sturdy weight of the book itself, the rough or (18) texture of the paper, the soothing rustle of the pages, and that indescribable (19) of old paper and ink which is (20) a perfume to the dedicated reader.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.

Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. "How did you get here?" asked John.
John asked her
- b. If the baby is a girl, we shall call her Jane.
Unless
- c. How did that pin get on my chair?
Who
- d. In Victorian times people didn't travel in planes like today.
Nowadays people
- e. How about one of the chef's specials?
Do
- f. Let's not drink another cup of coffee.
It would
- g. The doctor advised me to go into hospital.
The doctor said
- h. Listen to the teacher and make notes at the same time.
Take

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

1. Ever since I was a child, I a rock band.
2. I shan't be home till very late, so up for me.
3. How many you not to bite your nails?
4. You his face when I told him his car had been towed away by the police!
5. There's talking to him. He never listens to anyone.
6. If only broke; I'd have lent him some money.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION

Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|--|------------|
| 1. The new manager is very strongly disliked. | HATRED |
| 2. We want to breathe new life into this project. | REJUVENATE |
| 3. My grandfather died during the night. | PASSED |
| 4. That football team has won every match this season. | UNBEATABLE |
| 5. Could you look after my children this evening? | POSSIBLE |
| 6. People should be careful when walking alone at night. | BEST |
| 7. They seldom stay up late. | RARE |
| 8. A notorious mass-murderer is on the run from prison. | LARGE |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

As rain began falling over Tokyo, Yukishiro Inagawa, 28, started his Nissan sedan and hit a button under a small monitor on the dashboard. Immediately, a glowing map of the Japanese archipelago appeared on the tiny screen. With another touch, the image changed to a blow-up of the metropolitan area, then to a full-colour close-up road map of the district where Inagawa's car was sitting. "This tiny red triangle in the centre of the screen indicates where we are right now," he explained. "The arrow in the corner of the monitor shows the direction and distance to our destination. Let's hit the road."

James Bond's newest automotive marvel? Not at all. Inagawa's auto is equipped with an electronic navigation system, a high-tech map that is one of the next generation of driver-friendly devices to become optional equipment on Japanese cars. "The technology and its wide-ranging applications will change the whole concept of driving," predicts Akira Goto, chief engineer at an automotive research and development centre.

The idea of an electronic map for cars has been around since the 1950's. But it took micro-electronic technology to bring high-tech direction - finding into a more or less affordable price range: at \$2,000 to \$4,000, the units include a monitor screen, miniature T.V., AM - FM radio, CD and cassette player. Around 1,300 are in use in Japan; by the year 2000 the manufacturers expect to have

5

10

15

sold more than 1.5 million on-board navigation systems.

All the Japanese systems start with a digitized map of Japan on a compact disc. A small computer converts the information into a full-colour map to the scale selected by the viewer. The most sensitive part of the device involves the way it keeps track of the vehicle's exact position and matches it with the map. That is where various systems diverge. One company uses solid-state compasses to determine direction; sensors mounted on the car's wheels measure elapsed distance, which in turn is fed to the mapping computer. The drawback of such dead reckoning is that the elapsed distance could be recorded inaccurately owing to road and tyre conditions, while the compass can be thrown off by magnetic interference. 20

The Japanese are not the pioneers in on-board navigational mapping systems, but have emerged as the most accomplished innovators and commercial exploiters of the technology. Although sophisticated map-matching technology has reduced errors significantly, the systems are far from perfect. Without occasional manual correction, there can be a troubling margin of error over a period of time. But finding yourself in one place while the device tells you you are in another, will hopefully soon be a problem of the past. 25 30

- 1. What different images are displayed on the screen?
.....
- 2. What indications are given on the map?
.....
- 3. Rephrase the expression "Let's hit the road". (line 6)
.....
- 4. What is suggested by the phrase "James Bond's newest automotive marvel"? (line 7)
.....
- 5. Explain the expression "driver-friendly devices". (lines 8 - 9)
.....
- 6. What is meant by the phrase "wide-ranging applications"? (lines 9 - 10)
.....
- 7. What hindered the development of the device in the past?
.....
- 8. What is suggested by the phrase "more or less affordable price range"? (line 13)
.....
- 9. What does "that" (line 20) refer to?
.....
- 10. Explain the phrase "elapsed distance". (line 21)
.....
- 11. What problems can affect the functioning of the device?
.....
- 12. Explain the use of the word "pioneers" in this context. (line 25)
.....
- 13. In what sense are the systems "far from perfect"?(lines 27 - 28)
.....
- 14. Summarise in 50 - 100 words the development and functions of the electronic navigation system.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Nouns

Nouns tell us the names of:

persons (Ann)	objects (apple)	places (Athens)
actions (reading)	qualities (virtue)	jobs (teacher)

There are four kinds of nouns in English. These are:

abstract nouns	<i>love, freedom</i>	common nouns	<i>book, cup</i>
collective nouns	<i>family, clergy</i>	proper nouns	<i>Greg, London</i>

Nouns can be used as the:

- | | |
|---|--|
| a) subject of a verb. | e.g. <i>The boat left.</i> |
| b) object of a verb. | e.g. <i>I met Chris.</i> |
| c) object of a preposition. | e.g. <i>I met him at the pub.</i> |
| d) complement of be, become, seem. | e.g. <i>Janet is my friend.</i> |

Gender

Masculine :	men and boys (he)
Feminine :	women, girls, ships (she)
Neuter :	babies*, animals* and things (it)

* Babies and animals are referred to as male or female when we know their sex.
e.g. *The Browns have got a lovely baby. **She** is so cute.*

Most personal nouns have the same form whether male or female.
teacher (man or woman), doctor, etc.

Some personal nouns have different forms of gender.

actor - actress	emperor - empress	prince - princess
barman - barmaid	heir - heiress	hero - heroine
duke - duchess	widower - widow	steward - stewardess etc.
bachelor - spinster	father - mother	son - daughter
boy - girl	husband - wife	uncle - aunt
bridegroom - bride	nephew - niece	gentleman - lady etc.

Some animal nouns have different forms of gender.

bull - cow	cock - hen	tiger - tigress
drake - duck	gander - goose	stag - doe
dog - bitch	lion - lioness	stallion - mare

The Plural of Nouns

1. **Nouns are made plural by adding:**

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| a) -s | <i>pencil - pencils</i> |
| b) -es to nouns ending in -o, -s, -x, -ch, -sh. | <i>bus - buses</i> |
| c) -ies to nouns ending in consonant + y. | <i>lady - ladies</i> |
| d) -s to nouns ending in vowel + y. | <i>toy - toys</i> |
| e) -ves to nouns ending in f/fe. | <i>leaf - leaves</i> |

but *chiefs, proofs, roofs, cliffs, handkerchiefs*

2. Some nouns form their plural irregularly:

man - men	foot - feet	louse - lice	child - children
woman - women	tooth - teeth	mouse - mice	goose - geese

3. Some nouns remain unchanged in the plural:

craft - craft	sheep - sheep	plaice - plaice	fish - fish	squid - squid
spacecraft - spacecraft	deer - deer	salmon - salmon	trout - trout	cod - cod

4. Some nouns are only plural. These are:

a. arms (weapons), belongings, cattle, clothes, congratulations, earnings, goods, greens (vegetables), lodgings, outskirts, people, police, premises (building), remains, riches, stairs, statistics, surroundings.

b. Garments, tools and instruments consisting of two parts.

e.g. *binoculars, compasses, glasses, pants, pyjamas, scales, scissors, spectacles, trousers, etc.*

5. Collective nouns can take either a singular or plural verb according to the meaning.

e.g. *The staff were not in agreement with the new rules. (We refer to the individual members.)*

The staff of the school consists of fifty people. (We refer to the group as a unit.)

Some collective nouns are:

audience, class, clergy, committee, company, crew, crowd, family, government, jury, public, staff, team, union, youth, etc.

6. Some nouns have a different meaning in the singular and plural. These are:

air - airs, cloth - clothes, compass - compasses, content - contents, custom - customs, damage - damages, experience - experiences, fund - funds, glass - glasses, hair - hairs, look - looks, manner - manners, minute - minutes, relation - relations, scale - scales, spectacle - spectacles, spirit - spirits, wood - woods, work - works.

e.g. *Could I have a **glass** of water please?*

*I can't read without **glasses**.*

Note

Some of the above nouns have their own regular plurals.

e.g. *I'll take five **minutes** to finish it.*

*Jonathan was the one who kept the **minutes** of the meeting.*

7. Compound nouns form their plural by adding -s / -es:

a) to the second noun, if the compound consists of two nouns.

e.g. *cupboard - cupboards*

b) to the noun, if the compound has only one noun.

e.g. *passer-by - passers-by hanger-on - hangers-on by-stander - by-standers*

c) to the first noun, if the compound consists of two nouns connected with a preposition.

e.g. *mother-in-law - mothers-in-law*

d) at the end of the compound if it does not contain any nouns.

e.g. *breakdown - breakdowns*

e) to the noun when the compound consists of a gerund + noun.

e.g. *frying pan - frying pans*

► Countable / Uncountable nouns

Nouns can be either countable or uncountable.

A. Countable nouns are those which can be counted.

e.g. 1 book, 2 books, 3 books etc.

B. Uncountable nouns are those which cannot be counted. That is, you cannot say there are 2, 3 or 4 of them. **Uncountable nouns** take a **singular verb** and are not used with **a/an**.

The words **some, any, no, (a) little, much** etc. can be used with uncountable nouns.

e.g. *Is there **any** chocolate left?*

*There's **little** hope of them finding the boy.*

Uncountable nouns are:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. nouns of substance or quantity (mass nouns) | oil, water, wine, etc. |
| 2. nouns ending in -ics | politics, physics, athletics, etc. |
| 3. some abstract nouns | courage, information, etc. |
| 4. games ending in -s | billiards, darts, bowls, dominoes, etc. |
| 5. diseases ending in -s | mumps, rickets, etc. |

The most common uncountable nouns are:

accommodation, advice, anger, applause, assistance, baggage, behaviour, beer, bread, blood, business, chaos, chess, china, coal, conduct, cookery, countryside, courage, crockery, cutlery, damage, dirt, education, evidence, excitement, food, fruit, fun, furniture, garbage, gold, gossip, grass, hair, happiness, harm, help, homework, hospitality, housework, information, jealousy, jewellery, knowledge, laughter, leisure, lightning, linen, luck, luggage, machinery, measles, meat, money, moonlight, mud, music, news, nonsense, patience, permission, poetry, progress, rubbish, safety, scaffolding, scenery, seaside, shopping, soap, spaghetti, steam, strength, stuff, stupidity, sunshine, thunder, timber, traffic, transport, travel, trouble, underwear, violence, wealth, weather, wine, work, writing

► Uncountable nouns made countable

Many uncountable nouns can be made countable by means of partitives.

a **piece** of cake / information / cheese / advice / furniture / chalk; a **glass** of water / beer / wine; a **jar** of jam; a **sheet** of paper; an **item** of news; a **drop** of water / oil; a **box** of chocolates; a **metre** of cloth; a **packet** of biscuits / tea; a **slice** of bread; a **loaf** of bread; a **pot** of tea; a **cup** of tea; a **ball** of string; a **lump** of sugar; an **ice cube**; a **game** of football; a **kilo** of meat; a **bottle** of wine / beer / whisky; a **tube** of toothpaste; a **bar** of soap / chocolate, etc.

240 Underline the correct form of the verb. Sometimes both forms are possible.

- The scenery (is / are) spectacular here.
- Timber (is / are) taken from the world's rainforests.
- The clergy (is / are) responsible for the spiritual welfare of the parish.
- The audience (was / were) appreciative of his musical talents.
- Information (is / are) given at the tourist office.
- The public (is / are) unaware of the problem.
- The cattle (are / is) all in the field.
- The news (was / were) unexpected.
- The team (was / were) all wearing an identical strip.
- The crew (was / were) all experienced sailors.

11. The jury (is / are) spending a long time over the verdict.
12. The committee (is / are) responsible for fund-raising.
13. Rubbish (is / are) lying on the pavement.
14. Measles (was / were) the worst disease I've ever had.
15. The police (are / is) investigating the murder of Mr Jones.

241 Underline the correct word and explain it.

1. The timber company received a consignment of (wood / woods).
2. He has a lot of (works / work) to complete before leaving.
3. The stylist was trimming her (hairs / hair).
4. We were all impressed with the (content / contents) of his speech.
5. The magazine lost the court case and was ordered to pay (damage / damages) to the television celebrity.
6. The group doesn't have sufficient (funds / fund) to finance the expedition.
7. The (Custom / Customs) Officer stopped us and asked if he could inspect our luggage.
8. The cook weighed out the necessary ingredients on the (scale / scales).
9. They follow the (custom / customs) of exchanging chocolate eggs at Easter.
10. He refuses to drink any (spirit / spirits), claiming that they cause terrible headaches.

242 Finish the following sentences.

1. The damage to the house was irreparable.
There
2. They drove the cattle into the barn.
The cattle
3. It was difficult to find accommodation on the island.
Accommodation
4. He found the police very helpful.
The police
5. People who carelessly drop litter are spoiling the countryside.
The countryside
6. The scenery was very dramatic so we stopped to admire it.
It was
7. Someone needs to clean the stairs.
The stairs
8. There is a disagreement among the staff about the new contract.
The staff
9. The maid washed the best china.
The best china
10. The spaghetti was so delicious that he had three helpings.
It was
11. She heard some startling gossip yesterday.
The gossip
12. I am angered by senseless violence.
Senseless violence
13. You have to evacuate the premises immediately if there is a fire.
The premises
14. You need greens for a healthy diet.
Greens
15. Divers are exploring the underwater remains of a lost city.
The underwater remains
16. We can see from the statistics that unemployment has increased.
The statistics

243 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

As part of Project Pelagos, a marine reserve covering the same area as Switzerland and located in the Ligurian Sea is (1) planned. The programme was (2) by environmentalists from the University of Genoa in response (3) growing concern about the number of whales and dolphins being harmed in those waters.

Every year large numbers of dolphins, orcas and finback whales migrate to this area from Atlantic waters in (4) of food. (5), studies estimate that correspondingly large numbers never (6) to mate in native waters. The deaths are being (7) by the presence of DDT, a pernicious insecticide voluntarily banned (8) Britain, in the seas off the Ligurian coast. Its (9) on marine animals is cumulative rather (10) instantaneous, so whales returning to the same area year (11) year are particularly vulnerable. The (12) major problem is the use of large fishing nets (13) trap dolphins and whales. Very recent laws prohibit Italy's fishing boats, some of (14) have drag nets up to 10 kilometres in length, from entering the area, but as yet there is nothing to (15) foreign boats from fishing there. The nets are a particular problem and it has been estimated that approximately 400 dolphins (16) in them each year.

The project aims (17) develop a safe area for these animals, but the administrators admit that funding is a problem. To remedy this, they have set (18) an adoption scheme for which there is no fixed registration fee. Donations have been averaging £25 and for this, participants receive certification of their involvement (19) the scheme, an information pack about their dolphin or whale, plus regular updates. In addition, there are plans afoot to allow some volunteers to accompany scientists going out (20) observation trips.

Phrasal Verbs 1

244 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the missing prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

down, in, aside, behind, in for, off, down to, about, up with, up, out, forward, on, away, back, through, across

- He had a bad time in the army but he has put it **behind** him now.
- Just put your name and address on this card.
- The lecturer had difficulty in putting his ideas.
- He put his failure in the exam bad luck.
- The drought in Africa has put development in the area by decades.
- Why don't you put that new position at the university?
- Make sure you put the fire before going to bed.
- Could you put me to Mr Jones, please?
- If you can't afford a hotel, we'll put you for the night.
- How can you put the noise in this house? I'd go mad.
- He put an insurance claim after the accident but he got nothing.
- Don't be put by his manner. He always acts that way.
- They're putting a dance performance in the town hall tonight.
- We put a sum of money each month for our summer holidays.
- John's father had to be put when he started running about the streets screaming.
- Mr Jones has put the proposal that all members should make a contribution to the relief fund.
- It is being put that the Vice-President is involved in the scandal but there seems to be no evidence for it.

What other meanings can you find for a) put on and b) put through?

Phrasal Verbs 2

245 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the missing prepositions or adverbs from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

on, through, with, out, together, down, up to, over, on to

- His proposal met **with** total opposition from the committee.
- We'd better move the housing problem before time runs out.
- Please note these figures so we can go over them later.
- She asked him to pass the pepper to her.
- We can narrow our options to two or three at the most.
- If you think you can live charity for ever, you're sadly mistaken.
- You ought to try and live your parents' expectations.
- I think you've missed John and Sally from the invitation list.
- The detective tried to piece the events from the few clues he had.
- He's used to hardships because he's lived two wars.
- John has been passed for promotion in favour of a younger man.
- New automated machinery in factories is phasing old production techniques and methods.
- I'm afraid you'll have to learn to live this problem for the rest of your life.

What's the difference between "call off" and "put off"?

Idioms 1

be in the same boat : be in the same (usu bad) situation

go without saying : be a foregone conclusion

behind the scenes : in secret

be all at sea : in a state of confusion

be/have a close shave : barely escape an accident etc.

be in sb's shoes : be in sb's position

go for a song : be sold very cheaply

smell a rat : suspect that sth is wrong

be/get soaked to the skin : be/get very wet

live out of a suitcase : travel often

pull one's socks up : make a greater effort

on a shoe-string : on a very small budget

246 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

- Almost everything sold at the auction **went for a song**; I've never seen so many bargains.
- As far as her future goes, Olivia; she hasn't got any idea what career to follow.
- He told his son that he ought to or he'd never make a success of himself.
- It that he'll get the role in the play; after all, he's perfect for it.
- If I, I would think twice about taking that job.
- It would be interesting to know what goes on in a political campaign.
- She when her husband started coming home late so she followed him only to find out that he had started gambling again.
- As far as jobs go, we're both I haven't worked for months either.
- I went out in a downpour without my umbrella and got
- It when a tile fell off the roof and nearly hit her on the head.
- My brother travelled around the States I don't know how he survived on so little money.
- People who are involved in international business tend to much of the time.

Idioms 2

247 Read the following sentences and explain the idioms in bold italics.

- I know he tends to exaggerate, so I **take** everything he tells me **with a pinch of salt**.
- He's so **thick-skinned** that I don't think he'd notice if you called him an idiot to his face.
- Did it show** that I was bored during the meeting? I tried to act as if I was interested.
- Her father **made quite a scene** when she came home two hours later than she was supposed to.
- Unless they let their daughter play with other children more, I don't think she'll ever **come out of her shell**.
- I'll **sleep on it** and give you my decision tomorrow.
- After having a terrible day at work, it was **the last straw** when her car broke down on the way home.
- The mugger who **gave** the police **the slip**, wasn't apprehended until a week later.
- Paul **is the spitting image of** his father - even his mannerisms are the same.
- Could you tell me your surname one more time? I'm afraid I've got **a memory like a sieve**.
- Laura's parents assured her that they would not **stand in her way** if she wanted to become a pilot, and that in fact they would help her in any way they could.
- Arresting that woman was **a long shot** as there was so little evidence against her, but in the end she turned out to be the ringleader.
- By **pulling a few strings**, my friend who works at the airline managed to get us a ticket on the next flight.
- I can't stay awake a moment longer - I'm going **to hit the sack**.
- Although her friend asked her not to tell anyone about her secret wedding plans, she **spilled the beans** and soon everyone knew.

Prepositions

248 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- Mark was saved **from** drowning by the heroic action of his brother.
- The board of directors is meeting today to appoint a replacement the retiring chairman.
- He was very solicitous our comfort and made every effort to ensure we had a pleasant journey.
- We'd better go out for dinner; the food we have in the house isn't sufficient the six of us.
- When the dam broke, a surge water rushed down the mountain.
- I was smitten regret as soon as I had made the unkind comment.
- I can't pay the electricity bill until next week because I'm very short money right now.
- The manager was not sympathetic their request for a non-smoking area.
- Her colleagues intend to support her her fight against discrimination in the workplace.
- They're bringing out a sequel this television series next summer.

249 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- I acted **on** impulse and bought my wife a large bunch of flowers.
- He has an excellent lawyer acting him and is bound to win the case.
- We agreed his plan and started making preparations immediately.
- None of us could agree what to buy our teacher as a present.
- Sam's views are often so outrageous that people rarely agree him.
- The secretary's argument her boss led to her being fired.
- There are strong arguments banning the use of aerosol sprays.
- On our honeymoon we argued everything from the food to the weather!
- When the explorer arrived the river, he immediately filled up his water bottles.
- You must show your passport as soon as you arrive a new country.
- Professor Watson is an expert medieval architecture.
- He's not only a comedian, but also an expert ventriloquism.

250 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. She said she was in no way involved in the scandal.

DISCLAIMED

2. The teacher said that the disruption was David's fault.

BLAMED

3. Jan found it difficult to believe the news.

DIFFICULTY

4. The new employee still hadn't appeared by 10 o'clock.

SIGN

5. You'll be in trouble if you say that again.

BETTER

6. You can dissolve these tablets in water.

SOLUBLE

7. She doesn't normally work on Saturdays.

OFF

8. I can't bear your complaints any longer.

ENOUGH

9. No one pities her after what she has done.

SYMPATHY

10. They accused John of stealing the money.

PUT

11. The BBC produces programmes to interest all sorts of people.

CATERS

251 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case **it gets** cold.

1. I wish Sarah this contract so we can go ahead with the building project.

2. The actor is said in trouble with the law earlier in his career.

3. It says here that virtually no snowfall in Tokyo.

4. Confusing, it is not completely impossible to understand.

5. He took his residence permit to the immigration office it renewed.

6. He was given an award in his bravery during the war.

7. I am repaired at the moment at the garage.

8. Dennis refused to come to the party no we tried to persuade him.

9. If only my parents go to the party tonight!

10. You needn't have gone out and bought a new book. You my copy.

252 Find the mistake and correct it.

1. These glasses aren't mine. They're of ~~father~~.
2. The cabinet is made from mahogany.
3. They are both colleagues of him.
4. His case comes into the court on 27th February.
5. She lighted the cigarette which I offered her.
6. They have a ten-years-old daughter.
7. One of the committee members have resigned.
8. I have forgotten my bag in the office.
9. Please open the air-conditioning.
10. On holiday I used to go to the beach or stayed by the hotel pool.
11. I must extend my passport; I've just realised that it has expired.
12. That old pair have been happily married for sixty years.
13. She had to pardon herself from the meeting for a few minutes.
14. The meeting will be made in the conference room.
15. I am going to pass my driving test on Friday.
16. Time flies! This year has past so quickly.
17. I wish you will be successful in your new job.
18. The bus went straight passed me without stopping.
19. All orders must be payed for in advance.
20. If I weren't late, I wouldn't have been fired.

father's

253 Fill in the numbered blanks choosing the word which fits best. The first one has been done for you.

Appeals were being made last night for Corsicans to (1) **come forward** and donate blood following the collapse of the football stadium in Bastia. The tragedy (2) 26 fans dead; the number of injured has been put at 700.

(3) eyewitnesses, workers were still tightening bolts on the temporary scaffolding only an hour and a half (4) the match was (5) begin, and as fans passed into the stadium, the structure, which holds up to 10,000, swayed violently and (6) collapsed.

Many of the (7) were given emergency treatment on the pitch while more serious cases were (8) to hospitals on the mainland.

A spokesman from the firm responsible for the stand's construction could only (9) horrified disbelief. According to him, although some of the bars had collapsed, others should have (10) the structure.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A) come across | B) come over | C) come up to | D) come forward |
| 2. A) did | B) left | C) made | D) remained |
| 3. A) In view of | B) As far as | C) According to | D) Because of |
| 4. A) before | B) until | C) since | D) after |
| 5. A) up to | B) about to | C) bound to | D) due to |
| 6. A) gradually | B) actually | C) eventually | D) definitely |
| 7. A) injured | B) wounded | C) damaged | D) wrecked |
| 8. A) transported | B) trafficked | C) travelled | D) transferred |
| 9. A) speak | B) express | C) say | D) tell |
| 10. A) supported | B) held | C) defended | D) carried |

254 Match the phrases, then explain the proverbs.

Column A

1. One good turn
2. Least said
3. The end
4. Many hands
5. All work and no play
6. Spare the rod
7. A friend in need
8. There's no smoke
9. Two wrongs
10. Once bitten

Column B

- A. make light work.
- B. is a friend indeed.
- C. deserves another.
- D. twice shy.
- E. don't make a right.
- F. soonest mended.
- G. makes Jack a dull boy.
- H. and spoil the child.
- I. without fire.
- J. justifies the means.

Answers

1. C
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

Word usage

255 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

1. Hundreds of workers have been **made redundant** due to financial problems at the factory. (sacked, made redundant, resigned, retired)
2. I was due to a personality clash with my boss. (resign, retire, sacked, made redundant)
3. The film is based on the of the end of the world. (cataclysm, calamity, disaster, catastrophe)
4. The play was such a that it came off after only two nights. (cataclysm, calamity, disaster, catastrophe)
5. My puppy was very expensive because he's a special (sect, breed, tribe, caste)
6. This religious observes very strict rules and forbids smoking and drinking. (breed, tribe, caste, sect)
7. Anthropologists have spent years studying the social system of this jungle (breed, tribe, caste, sect)
8. Britain and France were against Germany in the Second World War. (acquaintances, colleagues, allies, accomplices)
9. Police have arrested Jones and are now trying to trace his (allies, accomplices, colleagues, acquaintances)
10. The foreman came to the building site to pay the workmen's fee, stipend, salary, wages)

256 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	attitude	woman	music	reading	lips	idea	voice	suggestion
sensible	✓							
sensuous								

	invitation	lady	leap	manner	ballerina	smile	reply
gracious	✓						
graceful							

Practice Test Ten

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

Alternative lifestyles have existed (1) a variety of forms since the (2) of organised society. There have always been, and (3) always will be, people (4) feel a need to escape (5) the mainstream of society and (6) a way to live that conforms more closely (7) their individual tastes and needs. The (8) "alternative lifestyle" itself is a by-product of the social revolution of the 1960's and 70's, when the "Hippie movement" and (9) various back-to-nature and cultist off-shoots were in (10) prime, but the concept must be as (11) as mankind itself. It seems evident that in every society there (12) have been a few people who found (13) unable or unwilling to accept the status quo, who felt compelled to (14) a better - or at least different - life, out of (15) of the restrictions and standards that any society must impose (16) its members. The monk in his monastery, the hermit in his cave, the solitary "witch-woman" (17) in isolation in the forest, must all have been seeking an alternative (18) the current standards of acceptability prevalent in their own societies. In our own times the punks, gang-members and followers of cult-leaders are seeking, in their (19) ways, to find a life more (20) to their individual needs, desires and dreams.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.

Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

a. People say that Einstein was a genius.

It
.....

b. There are few books in the library.

The library
.....

c. She was driving so slowly she was passed by a bicycle.

A bicycle
.....

d. Passengers must not smoke on the train.

It is
.....

e. Sadly, there were many victims in last week's earthquake.

Sadly, many people
.....

f. The professor made the decision to mix the chemicals.

The decision
.....

g. He was not upset by Mary's letter.

He didn't
.....

h. I wish the weather weren't so hot.

If
.....

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use **crying over** spilt milk.

- 1. You're so childish. It's grew up.
- 2. Where have you been? I've for a long time.
- 3. I fell asleep in the film.
- 4. This timetable is so complicated I of it.
- 5. It's meant to break a mirror.
- 6. I have planned this well, so wrong.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence **as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence**, but using the word given. This word must **not be altered** in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: **Were they given permission to go?**

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. If I were John, I wouldn't borrow money from them. | PLACE |
| | |
| 2. Mr Lurie won't be able to keep his appointment. | CANCEL |
| | |
| 3. She is very dependable. | DOWN |
| | |
| 4. Everything she says is completely incredible. | BEYOND |
| | |
| 5. She speaks French quite well. | COMMAND |
| | |
| 6. This house costs us £250 a month to heat. | SPEND |
| | |
| 7. It's no use asking her - she doesn't know. | POINT |
| | |
| 8. I lent James £2,000 to buy that car. | OWES |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Political disaffection, disillusionment, frustration, whatever you choose to call it, manifests itself in innumerable ways. People flock to the polls to make their voices heard or else withhold their votes altogether, assuming that nobody is listening anyway; activist groups picket, confront other picketers, demonstrate and counter-demonstrate; politicians are welcomed with open arms, admired for a time, doubted, then pelted with tomatoes, apples, stones or - in extreme cases - bullets. Wars and revolutions break out with bewildering regularity, leaving behind them yet more disillusionment and frustration, but at least a glimmer of hope that once things have got bad enough, they can only get better. 5

But all of these manifestations of the desire for political change are unpredictable or, better, tidal, rising and falling under the influence of forces as powerful as the moon, if not as easily explained. It seems, though, that if revolutions and uprisings come and go, terrorism is here to stay forever, an entity in a world where individual voices of protest are buried under the rubble of rhetoric, and the roar of tanks and rockets drown out our feeble mutterings of discontent. Terrorist acts speak loud and clear. When a car-bomb shatters buildings and maims hundreds of people we do not ask ourselves what the person who planted the bomb thinks about the state 10 15

of the nation. We know. They are, to put it mildly, unhappy with the way things are.

All fighting is, of course, a kind of terrorism. There is a fine but distinct dividing-line between out-and-out war - not only sanctioned by governments but, at least in theory, justified - and the secretive, underhanded, somehow much “nastier” acts of terrorists. The difference is an emotional one. Thousands may die in the bombing of a city, but at least we know, have been assured at any rate, that those who are dying and suffering are the enemy, a visible, definable, and “justifiably” hated entity. If our own people are killed, we know who to blame because we have been told again and again who - and what - they are. One basic point being, they are not like us: the second, they are anonymous, a seething mass of dehumanised nationality, faceless and voiceless, which is somehow “wrong”. 20 25

But terrorists are different. They not only live among us, they are a part of us: people we see on buses, meet in shops and restaurants, people who have a similar upbringing and have - or should have - similar ideas. Our own sons, daughters, cousins, acquaintances could, however unlikely it seems, be the very people who have assassinated this public figure, blown up that building, planted a number of bombs. The concept of “enemy” is much harder to swallow because the enemy is within our own society, infinitely more threatening because unidentifiable, unpredictable, much too close for comfort. We can only hope that we are not walking along the pavement when the car bomb goes off or the sniper opens fire. Unlike in a war, there will be no warning, sirens will not wail, because terrorists, by nature, work invisibly. However dangerous war is, there is the element of predictability which gives an illusion, at least, of safety. With terrorism, the enemy is everywhere, and we can do nothing but hope we are not in the chosen “venue” when the strike comes. 30 35

Of course the press has done everything it can to convince us that terrorists are somehow “other”, not a part of our society at all, but as long as we cannot see them *en masse* we can only respond to their acts on an emotional, too-personal level. The question lingers, niggling, at the backs of our minds: Are we ourselves the “enemy”? 40

- 1. Give some examples from the passage of the “innumerable ways” (line 2) in which people express political dissatisfaction.
.....
.....
.....
- 2. Find an alternative phrase for “make their voices heard” (line 2).
.....
.....
- 3. Explain why politicians are initially welcomed with “open arms” (lines 4 - 5).
.....
.....
.....
- 4. Explain why the writer states that acts of terrorism “speak loud and clear” (line 14).
.....
.....
.....
.....
- 5. Which expression suggests that people are powerless in the face of political ovation?
.....
.....

6. What effect does the writer achieve with the inclusion of the phrase “to put it mildly” before the adjective “unhappy” (line 16)?
.....
.....
7. Why are acts of terrorism seen as being “nastier” (line 19)?
.....
.....
8. In line 23, to whom does the word “they” refer?
.....
.....
9. How, according to the writer, do we regard the enemy in times of war?
.....
.....
10. Explain in your own words what the writer means when he says that the idea of the enemy is “much harder to swallow” (line 30).
.....
.....
11. What impression is given by the phrase “much too close for comfort” (lines 32)?
.....
.....
12. Why does the writer describe war as giving an “illusion of safety” (line 35)?
.....
.....
13. In a paragraph of 50-70 words summarise the differences between war and terrorism.

Articles

"The"

"The" is used before a noun which is defined (singular and plural nouns countable or uncountable ones). It is omitted when we talk about them in general, before nouns in the plural, uncountable or abstract nouns.
e.g. **The** man standing over there is my friend.

The is used before

1. names of objects considered **unique**.
e.g. *the earth*
2. names of:
 - a) **cinemas**: *the Rex*, b) **ships**: *the Titanic*,
 - c) **hotels**: *the Hilton*, d) **institutions**: *the RSPCA*, e) **documents**: *the Constitution*,
 - f) **public bodies**: *the Government*,
 - g) **newspapers**: *The Times* **but** *"Newsweek"*,
 - h) **historical events**: *the Second World War*.

Note

Restaurants, pubs, shops, banks or hotels which have the name of their founder and end in **s** or **'s** do not take **"the"**.
e.g. *Harrods*

3. names of:
 - a) **seas**: *the Black Sea*, b) **rivers**: *the Nile*,
 - c) **groups of islands**: *the Dodecanese*,
 - d) **mountain ranges**: *the Alps*, e) **groups of states**: *the USA*, f) **deserts**: *the Gobi Desert*, g) **gulfs**: *the Persian Gulf*,
 - h) **oceans**: *the Pacific*.
4. names of **people/families in the plural and nationality nouns**.
e.g. *the Browns*, *the Americans*
5. **adjectives** used as nouns to describe groups of people.
e.g. *the rich*, *the poor*
6. **titles without names**.
e.g. *the Queen*
7. **musical instruments**.
e.g. *He plays the piano well*.
8. the **superlative degree** of adjectives/ adverbs.
e.g. *the richest*, *the fastest*
9. **only, last, first** (used as adjectives).
e.g. *the only person*.

The is omitted before

1. **proper nouns**. e.g. *Nick*
2. names of **meals**. e.g. *Dinner is served.*
but *The dinner we had was excellent.*
(It is a specific dinner.)
3. **names of substances**.
e.g. *Oil is produced in Alaska.*
4. names of:
 - a) **countries**: *Greece*, b) **cities**: *Athens*,
 - c) **streets**: *Oxford Street*, d) **parks**: *Hyde Park*, e) **addresses**: *15, McMillan St.*,
 - f) **buildings**: *Westminster Abbey*,
 - g) **geographical areas**: *Europe*,
 - h) **mountains**: *Everest*, i) **islands**: *Cyprus*.

Note

when the first word of a two-word name is the name of a person or place **"the"** is not used.
e.g. *Westminster Abbey* **but** *The Tower of London*

5. **bed, school, church, hospital, prison, market, sea, court** when we refer to them for the reason they exist.
e.g. *Tom goes to school every weekday.*
but *His mother went to the school to get his marks.*
- * **work** (place of work) is never used with **"the"**.
e.g. *He's at work.*
6. **titles with proper names**:
e.g. *Queen Elizabeth*
7. **"home"** when it is used alone.
e.g. *She isn't at home.*
but *America is the home of the brave.*
8. **Mother / Father** when we refer to our mother / father.
e.g. *Father is at work.*
9. names of **sports, activities and colours**.
e.g. *He likes playing tennis.*
She hates wearing black.

Note

Some diseases/illnesses can take "the" whereas other can't.

e.g. (the) flu but pneumonia

"A - An"

"A/an" can be used only with singular countable nouns.

e.g. Please buy (some) milk on your way home.

That's a portable typewriter.

Note

When we use a noun in singular number to represent a class of things/animals, "the" or "a/an" can be used.

e.g. The whale is a mammal.

A whale is a mammal.

A / an can also be used with:

a) money	e.g. a/one dollar	f) frequency/time	e.g. three times a day
b) fractions	e.g. a/one quarter	g) distance/fuel	e.g. 40 miles a gallon
c) weight/measures	e.g. a/one foot	h) distance/speed	e.g. 60 km an hour
d) whole numbers	e.g. a/one thousand	g) illnesses	e.g. a headache
e) price/weight	e.g. 90p a pound		

Note

a/an + noun (any one)

e.g. I'd like a coffee, please.

one + noun (when counting)

e.g. I ordered one coffee, not two.

257 Put "a", "an" or "the" where necessary.

1. The Atlantic Ocean lies between Great Britain and United States.
2. One hundred years ago, ... gold was discovered here.
3. Paul has been in bed with flu all week.
4. The hotel serves breakfast until 10 a.m.
5. His death was announced in Sunday Times.
6. My parents have gone to Indonesia.
7. Smiths, who used to live next door, have moved.
8. This cheese costs 95p pound.
9. He was sent to prison for twenty years.
10. France is home of good cooking.
11. We did our Christmas shopping in Regent Street.
12. Florence Nightingale nursed sick during Crimean War.
13. I always wanted to learn to play accordion.
14. Climbers in Himalayas have reported sightings of strange animal.
15. quarter of eight is two.

258 Put "a", "an" or "the" where necessary.

1. The Chancellor will announce the new budget today.
2. When you go to London don't forget to visit Westminster Abbey and Tower of London.

3. Cutty Sark was famous tea clipper during 19th century.
4. British government had no comment to make on the situation.
5. Prince of Wales was married in St Paul's Cathedral.
6. They raised £35,000 for starving people of Africa.
7. This table measures exactly metre across.
8. Prime Minister stayed at Hilton during his visit.
9. During First World War, ... Germans swept through Europe.
10. Tom Peckel had to go to court for stealing car.
11. Marie Celeste was found abandoned off coast of Spain.
12. President will chair meeting tomorrow morning.
13. This car can go at 80 km hour.
14. I've got headache. Could I go home, please?
15. He is in hospital being treated for severe burns.

259 Fill in "the" where necessary.

1. **The** problem of illiteracy is one that has puzzled government for years.
2. Our cousins have gone to Hawaiian Islands for whole summer.
3. dinner which was held in honour of President was a lavish affair.
4. Queen of Denmark visited village where I grew up.
5. English are known for amount of tea they drink.
6. Although she plays guitar well she has no talent for drawing or painting.
7. She isn't at home because she's gone to hospital to visit her grandmother who is ill with pneumonia.
8. We bought Mother coat she had seen in sales.
9. children catch bus to school at corner of main road and street where they live.
10. While we were in London we visited British Museum and Kensington Gardens.
11. last time I went to cinema was last week.
12. We play tennis on third Wednesday of every month.
13. people say that rich have a duty to help disadvantaged and those who are out of work.
14. He ran away to sea at age of fourteen.
15. There is one pub in Nottingham which is said to be oldest pub in England.
16. place with lowest altitude in relation to level of sea is in Holland.
17. Prince Charles has become involved in many activities relating to architecture and arts in general.
18. experts say that painting which was found in attic of home of Professor Daniels is worth more than any other by Picasso.
19. This forest, which is home of rare species of plants and wildlife, is under threat by developers.
20. expedition to Andes was held up due to several delays in delivery of supplies.
21. novel written by Count Leo Tolstoy which is called " War and Peace" is considered to be one of greatest literary works of all time.
22. We spent evening at home of our neighbours, having dinner and playing cards.
23. English tradition of hunting fox is being called into question by groups of protestors.

260 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

Casinos packed (1) spinning wheels, rolling dice and tumbling cards. Bingo halls (2) of smoke and anxiously clutched bingo cards. Front rooms with friends crowded round, shuffling (3) and counting money. Whatever your forte or preference, gambling is the (4) of the game.

Most of us, at some (5) in our lives take part. Whether you are gambling a bit of extra money (6) your livelihood away, you gamble to win. This illusion is a powerful one, as the gambler has less (7) a fifty-fifty chance of winning. People are made (8), sometimes painfully, of the risk that gambling (9) So (10) do we do it?

The motivation that lies (11) this avoidable risk remains a mystery. Certainly, there are definite sensations, (12) emotive and physical, involved in gambling, which may help (13) this obsessive behaviour. The anticipation, the social pleasure and the nervousness associated (14) a possible loss or win. Then the physical feeling of actually arriving and playing the game. The combined sensations (15) expectation, excitement and determination produce adrenaline (16) in itself is addictive. Are all gamblers addicted, or is this compulsion simply (17) to habit?

It is (18) to the individual to decide (19) gambling is positive or negative depending (20) any loss one might have incurred, but it is certainly an international and widespread pastime.

Phrasal Verbs 1

261 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition or adverb from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

behind, after, up, away with, up against, down, out of, in, off, into, through, across, away

- He's always running **down** his boss although she actually treats him well.
- We ran Sally at the shops yesterday; I hadn't seen her for months.
- He ran the burglar but didn't manage to catch him.
- We've run coffee. Could you go and buy some?
- He has run a staggering amount in debts over the past two years.
- Let's run that scene again; then you can all go home.
- The robbers ran the cash-bags before the police arrived.
- The old woman was run by a taxi.
- You'd better run your new car before you drive it on the motorway.
- We ran some valuable old books while we were clearing out the attic.
- After winning the lottery, he ran all the money he'd won in six weeks.
- Everything was going smoothly until we ran the problem of lack of funding.
- My father fell asleep at the steering wheel and ran a lamp post.
- My car battery ran because I left the headlights on all night.
- The secretary was asked to run copies of the report and have them distributed among the employees.
- Their son ran at the age of 12 and didn't contact them for four years.
- The doctor is running today so you'll have to wait a bit.

Explain the meaning of the words in bold italics.

- The **runaway** horse created chaos and confusion as it galloped through the busy streets.
- The financial analyst was given a complete **run-down** of the company's situation.
- Since the recession, more and more **run-down** areas have been appearing in towns.

Phrasal Verbs 2

see about : make arrangements for

see off : accompany a traveller to his/her train etc.

see out : accompany sb to an exit

see over : inspect property

see through : 1) not be deceived
2) support sb through a difficult time

see to : take care of

settle down : live a more permanent lifestyle

settle in : become used to a new house or job

settle on : decide on

settle for : accept sth (less than expected)

settle up : pay (a debt, a bill etc.)

Idioms 1

be thick : be stupid

on second thoughts : having changed one's mind

lay the table : set the table

play truant : stay away from school without good reason

red tape : unnecessary bureaucracy

touch and go : with uncertain result

put two and two together : arrive at the truth by looking at the facts

in a tick : shortly, soon

through thick and thin : whatever happens

out of turn : not in the correct order/time

262 Fill in the missing preposition or adverb.

1. I was hoping to sell my car for £1,000 but I had to settle **for** £800.
2. Could you please see getting the sofa re-covered?
3. They settled the Ritz as the best place for the reception.
4. We've seen forty houses and we haven't found one to buy yet.
5. The children were seen at the station by the entire family.
6. Could you see those messages while I read through this report?
7. He said he would make me a rich man but I saw him immediately.
8. After wandering for years they settled in a small village in Wales.
9. He saw his best friend her divorce.
10. I'll see you; you may not be able to find your way to the lift.
11. Let's settle with the waiter and go home. I'm feeling tired.
12. Once we've settled, we'll invite you for a long weekend.

263 Fill in the blanks with the correct idiom.

1. "Are you coming?" shouted Tim's father. "Yes, I'll be ready **in a tick**," replied Tim.
2. "Dinner is ready, will someone please?" mother said.
3. "Will he live?" asked the nurse. "Well it's whether he will or not."
4. Although she didn't say anything directly, we and realised that she was about to quit her job.
5. "Don't ever leave me," pleaded Sally. "Don't worry, we'll be together, " answered Jim.
6. With so much involved, the government have made it very difficult for foreigners to obtain a work permit.
7. "Write this essay for homework," the teacher said. "No, ... do it now," he added.
8. When he was at school he always on Mondays to play football instead.
9. The debate became unmanageable when everyone started speaking
10. That man He can't even add up two and two without making a mistake.

Idioms 2

(by) **trial and error** : learning from one's mistakes

not be one's cup of tea : not suit one's taste

be ahead of one's time : have modern ideas (opp.: be behind the times)

for the time being : temporarily

in the nick of time : just in time

kill time : pass time while waiting for sb / sth

come to terms with : accept a difficult situation

be tickled pink : be really pleased

paint the town red : have a lovely time

do time : serve a prison sentence

take one's time : not hurry

264 Fill in the blanks with the correct idiom.

1. They went for a walk to **kill time** while they waited for the ferry.
2. John and several of his friends went out to on his stag night.
3. The cardiac unit arrived to resuscitate the heart attack victim.
4. After six years she still cannot the fact that her husband has left her.
5. As a teenager he for petty theft.
6. Don't gobble down your food; and enjoy it.
7. My grandmother when she won at bingo last week.
8. You can use my spare room but you must look for a flat of your own.
9. The chef often comes up with his best recipes after a tedious process of
10. Opera isn't; I prefer rock music.
11. This inventor was when he invented a space-rocket in the last century.

Prepositions

265 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. While running to answer the telephone I tripped **over** my brother's briefcase.
2. That's typical Peter to refuse to help!
3. I'm having trouble my car; it keeps stalling.
4. Jenny is terrified flying.
5. In a fit of rage she threw the vase her husband, but fortunately it missed him.
6. My father is fascinated with cars. In fact he's in the garage tinkering the old Ford right now.
7. Tuck your shirt your trousers!
8. The river was teeming trout.
9. She is so thirsty success that, short of murder, she would do anything.
10. He triumphed his competitors by flooding the market place with advertising.
11. He's new the job so he needs time to get used to it.
12. Being new the neighbourhood they were unable to find where the greengrocer's was.
13. Our neighbours are very tolerant the noise we make.

266 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. The neighbours are very anxious **about** their daughter as she has been missing for two days.
2. The whole world was extremely anxious the refugees' safety.
3. I was very angry being woken up in the night by an alarm bell.
4. The customer was very angry the assistant his attitude towards him.
5. Some children are very awkward practical tasks.
6. My husband is so awkward a needle and thread that I have to sew all his buttons on for him.
7. Her admission guilt shocked everyone; no one thought she was capable of murder.
8. This summer, admission most bars and clubs is twice what it was last year.
9. My new computer has the advantage being more compact than my old one.
10. Gripper Malone got the advantage Muscles Mason with a half-nelson.
11. Don't tell me you like his taste clothes! He looks terrible!

267 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. How inconsiderate he was to read your letter!
THOUGHTLESSLY
2. She thinks that travelling abroad is a good idea.
FAVOUR
3. Susan doesn't find it easy to make friends.
DIFFICULT
4. I can't listen to your complaints any more.
TIRED
5. The dress rehearsal went as planned.
ACCORDING
6. His career isn't progressing.
STANDSTILL
7. If you go to University, you'll have to study hard.
MEANS
8. He suggested that we should invite Tom to the party.
BE
9. People will think his son started the fire.
SUSPECTED
10. My grandmother was nearly 86 when she died.
BE
11. Is she likely to be promoted?
PROSPECTS

268 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case *it gets* cold.

1. How on earth told so many lies?
2. Had your advice, I would never have managed to do it right.
3. You're time waiting for Peter. He won't come.
4. Even if I earlier, I wouldn't have been able to attend the meeting.
5. You are the first person this prize. Congratulations!
6. All the tickets before we arrive at the theatre.
7. It would you had accepted his proposal. You would be rich now.
8. He was saying such funny things that she laughing.
9. She prefers cooking at home taken out to eat.
10. His briefcase is here, so he in his office.

269 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. He is used to ~~got~~ up early.
- 2. I go to bed early in night.
- 3. His favourite play is "Scrabble".
- 4. The police have released a description of the asked man.
- 5. He denied to help me.
- 6. I told him that I would rather to be left alone.
- 7. I've always preferred contemporary music than classical.
- 8. I would prefer going now.
- 9. Her parents tried to prevent her marry him.
- 10. This law may help deter criminals commit crimes.
- 11. Civilization seems to have done little progress in the last century.
- 12. There is no scientific proofs that life exists on Mars.
- 13. She put off her raincoat and sat down.
- 14. They crept into the house as quiet as they could.
- 15. Cheer up! It's not quiet hopeless yet.
- 16. I overslept because my alarm clock didn't go on.
- 17. I was hearing to the news on the radio when the bell rang.
- 18. She would rather to die than see her children suffer.
- 19. The teacher was nervous at the children's behaviour.
- 20. He argued that he had good reason of what he had done.

getting

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

270 Fill in the numbered blanks choosing the word which fits best. The first one has been done for you.

British Airways is planning to launch a "free tickets-for-beer" deal to help fill aircraft seats on (1) **routes** throughout Europe as part of a major promotional campaign which is (2) start this autumn. Underlining its concern about the (3) level of passenger traffic, BA is in the (4) stages of negotiating travel concessions with Foster's Lager. The (5) of the deal have yet to be finalised, but they are (6) to involve a "two-for-the-price-of-one" ticket offer to selected destinations, for purchasers of a 12-pack of Foster's draught lager. Both Foster's and BA last night confirmed that negotiations are being (7) concerning a travel promotion, but (8) company was prepared to divulge details. Foster's, the world's fourth largest beer maker, appears to see the proposed marketing link-up (9) an important opportunity to help boost (10) market share of draught lager in the UK.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A) lines | B) passages | C) routes | D) directions |
| 2. A) due to | B) according to | C) because of | D) owing to |
| 3. A) suggested | B) proposed | C) supposed | D) projected |
| 4. A) bottom | B) final | C) end | D) last |
| 5. A) terms | B) minutes | C) contracts | D) agendas |
| 6. A) obviously | B) possible | C) likely | D) probable |
| 7. A) done | B) held | C) supported | D) carried |
| 8. A) nor | B) none | C) either | D) neither |
| 9. A) so | B) such | C) as | D) like |
| 10. A) them | B) her | C) his | D) its |

271 Match the phrases, then explain the proverbs.
Column A

1. Better safe
2. He who pays the piper
3. All that glitters
4. A trouble shared
5. Blood
6. He who hesitates
7. A stitch in time
8. In for a penny,
9. What you lose on the swings
10. Familiarity

Column B

- A. is not gold.
- B. is lost.
- C. in for a pound.
- D. than sorry.
- E. breeds contempt.
- F. saves nine.
- G. is thicker than water.
- H. you gain on the roundabouts.
- I. calls the tunes.
- J. is a trouble halved.

1. **D**
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

Word usage
272 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

1. Relief workers **unpacked** hundreds of crates of second-hand clothing which had been donated. (**unpacked, revealed, unwrapped, unveiled**)
2. The Queen was present at the official of the statue. (**revealing, unpacking, unwrapping, unveiling**)
3. The hut finally fell down, unable to days of violent winds and rain. (**put up with, withstand, support, afford**)
4. As a single parent, it's difficult for her to a family. (**support, afford, put up with, withstand**)
5. I phoned the company who me that my goods had been despatched. (**confirmed, guaranteed, assured, reassured**)
6. Please send a reply to the wedding invitation in order to your presence. (**guarantee, confirm, assure, reassure**)
7. It was extremely of you to drive home after drinking all that wine. (**adventurous, reckless, impulsive, instinctive**)
8. I really admire the hero of the film. He's so (**reckless, adventurous, impulsive, instinctive**)
9. The weekend is over, so tomorrow morning it's back to the (**grind, labour, drudgery, toil**)
10. Looking after a house, four children, a lazy husband and two dogs is real (**labour, drudgery, toil, grind**)

273 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	shoes	hair	teeth	silverware	nails	clothes	cat
polish	✓						
brush							

	mind	relationship	clothes	lifestyle	knees	town	conditions
dirty	✓						
squalid							

274 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

covet	entice	repel	stub out	gobble
conform	rejoice	avenge	harvest	sip

- 1) **gobble** your food. 2) a cocktail. 3) a cigarette. 4) the corn. 5) sb's possessions. 6) to society's ideas. 7) sb into wrongdoing. 8) sb with your ugliness. 9) at good news. 10) sb's death.

Practice Test Eleven

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

In the light of the recent Lockerbie disaster we have (1) to appreciate the importance of airport security. Admittedly the general public are often (2) by the red tape which accompanies security, but are these precautions unnecessary? Not only must passengers have proof of identity (3) they can also be subjected (4) body frisks and metal detectors and have their luggage checked and x-rayed. Particular rules accompany air travel and travellers will be questioned in (5) to who packed their luggage, if it was left unattended at (6) time or if they are carrying anything which does not (7) to them. The departure lounge of the airport is also out of (8) for those who do not (9) a valid boarding pass. Long queues, delays and inconvenience often instigate complaints (10) the client, but surely more security should stimulate more faith in air travel? In December 1988, a Pan Am jet took off from London Heathrow (11) for the USA. As the jet was flying over Lockerbie, Scotland, it (12) up, killing everyone on (13) It is now more than three years later and the two Iraqi terrorists (14) for the bombing have not (15) been extradited from Iraq and (16) for sanctions have been made repeatedly. The question on many lips is, "What went wrong at Heathrow?" Living in a politically intense and often corrupt world, terrorism and drug trafficking must be prevented at any (17); standing in long queues for hours while baggage is (18), is undeniably frustrating, but how much better than a disaster that results (19) death? Without doubt, it's better to be safe than (20)

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.

Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. Mary prefers going to the cinema to going to the theatre.

Mary would sooner

- b. Thousands of people all over the world watched the beauty contest.

The beauty contest

- c. His car was stolen.

He

- d. He regrets moving to a smaller house.

He wishes he

- e. Perhaps they haven't returned yet.

They

- f. Why did he behave so rudely?

What

- g. The singer's last song wasn't very good but it became a success.

Bad

- h. You can't enter the building if you don't have a permit.

Only if

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

- 1. I was going to buy a new car but I and I bought a second-hand one instead.
- 2. Think twice your decision. I don't want you to regret it later.
- 3. His work makes it to have a social life.
- 4. Generally, I spend ten hours a week homework.
- 5. I can't understand why my letters. Do you think he has forgotten me?
- 6. We managed to escape from the blazing building a small window.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. It doesn't concern you. | BUSINESS |
| 2. Is there enough cake for everyone? | GO |
| 3. You almost never see that species of butterfly nowadays. | RARE |
| 4. You must complete the assignment by tomorrow. | ESSENTIAL |
| 5. The sofa matches the carpet. | SAME |
| 6. Ann considers Paula her best friend. | LOOKS |
| 7. The cupboards are completely empty. | LEFT |
| 8. It is certain that the weather will change by the end of the week. | BOUND |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

One miserable winter evening, while sifting through some research material at the British Film Institute, I came across a curious press release. Undated, but apparently written in the early nineteen-sixties, it had been issued by a West German film distributor and bore the headline "Is film directing a male profession?" This was intriguing since at the time it was unheard-of for a male-dominated profession to spotlight deliberately its own gender imbalance.

The press release was part of a publicity campaign designed to promote a new film called 'Too Young For Love', made by first-time director Erica Balgne. A story of thwarted young love and teenage pregnancy, the film was unremarkable and hardly original. An "angle" or "hook", to use the marketing jargon, had to be found if the film was not to sink without a trace.

The hook they came up with was the fact that it was directed by a woman. According to the distributor, before Balgne made her debut, only one woman in the history of German cinema,

5

10

in the early 1930's, had sat in the director's chair. This is not true: there were others, and the press release mentions the most obvious example, Leni Reifenstahl, only to dismiss her as a "special case". Nevertheless, the number of women directors working in the cinema in Germany - or indeed anywhere else in Europe - had been negligible. Presumably in the hope of attracting the curious, the promoter billed Balgnc's film as an experiment by its producer to see if film directing was a male profession only because women had lacked the opportunity or simply lacked the ability!

It seems astounding that a mere 20 years later, Germany boasted one of the most vibrant and critically acclaimed stables of women directors in Europe, and women film-makers existed in such numbers as to warrant setting up their own trade association.

This staggering transformation of the film scene owes much to the women's movement and the campaigning initiative of the film-makers, but the state's willingness to subsidise its national cinema was also vital. It is no coincidence that in Britain, for example, where state aid for the film industry has always been minimal and television has made only a belated intervention, women feature-film directors can still be counted on the fingers of one hand.

The secret of German women directors' success is probably also their choice of subject matter. Their films are often autobiographical or based on the lives of actual women; this means drawing on the Nazi past and its aftermath, and has resulted in films which offer re-readings of historical events from a female perspective. At the same time, the films vividly show how personal history underpins contemporary reality and thus they present moving accounts of human predicaments. Despite their cultural and gender specificity, the films also appeal to non-German audiences and are praised by men who find themselves identifying with the films' female characters. The concerns of the younger female directors obviously differ from those of the pioneers in the field, but they share the ability to strike a meaningful chord with both domestic and overseas viewers.

- 1. What two phrases indicate that the writer was not looking for the article described?
.....
.....
- 2. In what way was the press release "curious" (line 2)?
.....
.....
.....
- 3. What is meant by the phrase "gender imbalance" (line 5)?
.....
.....
.....
- 4. What was the purpose of the press release?
.....
.....
.....
- 5. Give an alternative expression for the phrase "to sink without a trace" (line 9).
.....
.....
.....
- 6. What misconception did the distributors make use of in their campaign?
.....
.....
.....

7. What three factors initially helped to transform the film scene?
.....
.....
.....
8. Which phrase suggests a lack of British female film directors?
.....
.....
.....
9. Give an alternative phrase for “drawing on” (lines 28 -29).
.....
.....
.....
10. Why might the films not have appealed to a general audience?
.....
.....
.....
11. Who does the phrase “the pioneers in the field” (line 34) refer to?
.....
.....
.....
12. Find an alternative phrase for “strike a meaningful chord” (line 35).
.....
.....
.....
13. In a paragraph of 70-90 words, summarise the factors which have stimulated the development of German women’s cinema.

Causative Form

have + object + past participle is used to suggest that

we are "causing" someone to do something for us.

e.g. *I'll ask the mechanic to repair my car.*
I'll have my car repaired. (not I myself but the mechanic will do the work.)

Notes

- the verb **to have** forms its question and negative with **do / does** in the Simple Present and **did** in the Simple Past.
 e.g. *Don't print the files, please!*
Don't have the files printed, please!
- Get** can be used instead of **have** in colloquial English or when the person performing the action is mentioned.
 e.g. *Did you get Tom to repair your car?*
have / get + object + past participle can sometimes be used to replace a passive verb usually describing an accident or misfortune.
 e.g. *He had / got his car stolen.* (= his car was stolen)

275 Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

- His motorbike is in the garage being repaired. He is
- The dentist checked her teeth. She
- Someone cut the grass in my garden. I
- Someone is making her a wonderful ball-gown. She
- The typist has typed all her letters. She
- Someone is decorating Julie's house. Julie
- The optician tested Cherry's eyes. Cherry
- The odd-job man will shovel the snow away for Lady Wilberforce.
 Lady Wilberforce
- Mrs Barrington's groceries will be delivered to her house.
 Mrs Barrington
- Someone was making Mary coffee when the doorbell rang.
 Mary
- He posted Marlene's letters. Marlene
- The hairdresser styled Gwendoline's hair. Gwendoline
- She will ask someone to clean her swimming pool.
 She
- Mr Osbourne asked a solicitor to draw up his will.
 Mr Osbourne
- The furniture company will deliver her furniture today.
 She
- Someone came to repair their central heating yesterday.
 They
- It's not possible to install a washing machine because there isn't enough space in her kitchen.
 She
- The gardener is planting new trees in Lady Moar's garden.
 Lady Moar
- Mark's legs were broken in the car crash. Mark

20. I'd like him to finish the work by 4 o'clock. I'd like to
21. I wish I'd asked her to clean my skirt yesterday.
I wish I had
22. Don't print this document! Don't have
23. The vet treated the girl's dog. The girl
24. She'll ask someone to collect the parcels. She
25. Their new house will have been built by next year.
They will
26. Someone is servicing John's television. John
27. The dressmaker was fitting Sue's wedding dress when she fainted.
Sue
28. The tailor made James a new suit. James
29. Don't redecorate the house! Don't have
30. I asked someone to polish my shoes. I

Structural Conversion

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Somebody is going to water the flowers for her.
<i>She's going to have the flowers watered.</i> 2. Your hair needs cutting.
<i>You'll have to have your hair cut.</i>
<i>You should have your hair cut.</i> 3. I'm having my house decorated.
<i>My house is being decorated.</i>
<i>Someone is decorating my house.</i> 4. Is anyone checking your answers?
<i>Are you having your answers checked?</i> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Someone twisted her arm.
<i>She had her arm twisted.</i>
<i>She got her arm twisted.</i>
<i>Her arm was twisted.</i> 6. I hate her asking someone else to do her homework.
<i>I hate her having her homework done by someone else.</i> 7. I'd love it if someone cut the grass for me.
<i>I'd love to have the grass cut.</i> 8. The hairdresser permed my hair.
<i>I got my hair permed at the hairdresser's.</i> |
|--|--|

276 Finish the following sentences using causative form without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. The arrangements were made by his secretary.
He had
2. She got her hands burnt during the fire.
Her hands
3. They're going to put my leg in plaster.
I'm going
4. I'll have to have this tooth taken out.
This tooth
5. Someone played a joke on him.
He had
6. Our dog needs vaccinating.
We'll have
7. Their film was developed in 24 hours.
They got
8. Are you going to have the roof repaired before winter?
Are they
9. He got his house valued by professionals.
His house
10. My bag was stolen.
I had
11. Someone will see to the delivery of your goods.
We will

Presentation 12

12. A newspaper published her story.
She got
13. I'd love it if someone cleaned my room.
I'd love to
14. They had to get someone to proof-read the manuscript.
The manuscript
15. The windows need draught-proofing.
You'll

277 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising causative.

e.g. *I'd love to have dinner with you but I can't as I **am having the house** painted at the moment.*

1. I won't be coming to the cinema with you as I cut this afternoon.
2. He had to stay at home all day because he furniture delivered.
3. Her mouth was very painful because she by the dentist.
4. He is going to the optician's to
5. Don't typed now! I'll do it for you later.
6. The Wilberforce family will hold a party next month and food prepared by a catering company.
7. You can't use the hairdryer because it's broken. I repaired this afternoon.
8. She can't understand the letter from her Italian penfriend so she translated.
9. She's getting married in May next year. She designed by the Emmanuels.
10. Mabel used to have beautiful long hair. She wishes that she so short.

278 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. She went to a professional photographer, who took her picture.

GOT

2. Is anyone taking your messages while you're away from the office?

HAVING

3. My car is in the garage being serviced.

HAVING

4. A Swedish architect designed their new home.

HAD

5. The insurance company assessed the damage caused by the fire.

HAD

6. A hairdresser is going to cut her hair.

HAVE

7. Your fence needs repairing.

WILL

279 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

For years scientists have been (1) out research into the world of the unknown. One of the most fascinating categories of psychic phenomena is (2) of "precognition"; the ability to (3) future events. Terms, (4) as "prophecies", "auguries" and "miracles", familiar in ancient times, have been replaced by the scientific, (5) prosaic-sounding term "extrasensory perception" (ESP). This phenomenon is also commonly (6) as "the sixth sense", enabling a person who possesses it to know something in (7) of its happening, an experience otherwise unknown by those who possess the ordinary five (8) of hearing, sight, touch, taste and smell. Precognition may (9) in the form of a dream or in a waking (10) Many scientists have devoted their careers to (11) ESP phenomena. They describe their research field (12) the science of "parapsychology", derived from the word "paranormal", which ESP phenomena are (13) to be because they seem to be (14) the limits of our present understanding. Surveys have shown that belief in psychic powers (15) strong, with a large percentage of people claiming to have actually (16) ESP. Considering the influence ESP has had (17) the history of mankind, from the time of the ancient Greeks who often consulted the oracles in (18) of crisis, it is difficult to comprehend (19) sceptics can brush all ESP phenomena aside as mere fantasy, hallucination or superstition.

Parapsychologists continue to (20) the paranormal but, as yet, it still remains unexplained.

Phrasal Verbs 1

set about :	begin
set aside :	save for a special purpose
set back :	1) hinder 2) cost (inf)
set in :	begin (of a period, usu. bad)
set off :	1) start a reaction (inf) 2) begin a journey (= set out)
set on :	cause (an animal) to attack
set out :	begin a task/job with a specific intention
set up :	1) establish (a record) 2) start a business 3) erect

280 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

- We'd better have central heating installed before winter sets **in**.
- They set for the lake at 5 o'clock in the morning.
- He set a new world record for the 100-metre race.
- His jokes set the whole class laughing.
- A fire in the factory set production by several weeks.
- She set to become a dancer but an injury prevented her from fulfilling her ambition.
- She has decided to set a computer graphics firm with the money she inherited.
- You'd better set some money every month if you want to buy a new car.
- How would you set teaching a dog to perform tricks?
- He threatened to set the dogs us if we didn't get off his property.
- The Town Council has decided to set a monument in honour of the dead soldiers.
- A wedding reception for fifty people will certainly set you a lot!

Phrasal Verbs 2

stand by :

- 1) remain loyal to sb
- 2) do nothing to stop a bad situation
- 3) be ready for action

stand down : resign from a position

stand for :

- 1) support sth
- 2) be an abbreviation of sth
- 3) tolerate
- 4) enter oneself for election

stand in for : replace temporarily

stand out : be conspicuous/obvious

stand up for : defend, support

stand up to : defend oneself against

Idioms 1

be up and about : have recovered from an illness

be on the up and up : improve steadily

up and coming : likely to be successful

ups and downs : alternate good and bad luck

quick/slow on the uptake : quick/slow to understand

make a flying visit : make a quick trip

give vent to : express sth freely

speak volumes : be strong evidence of sb's feelings, merits etc.

drive (sb) up the wall : make sb angry / annoy sb

hold water : be able to be proved true

281 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. I'll stand **by** you no matter what the others say about you.
2. I wouldn't stand that sort of behaviour for a minute.
3. The police stood in case trouble broke out after the football match.
4. He's such a brilliant dancer that he stands from the rest of the troupe.
5. Our group stands equality for all people.
6. Could you stand John if he's called away?
7. You ought to stand your little brother when the others tease him.
8. The letters M P stand Member of Parliament.
9. How can you stand and watch him mistreat the children like that?
10. If he can't stand his opponent in a debate, he won't be worth much in Parliament.
11. The President was forced to stand following a drug scandal.
12. His grandfather once stood Parliament, but he only got 56 votes.

282 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. We've had our **ups and downs** since we left London, but for the most part we're very happy living in the country.
2. The noise those builders are making, is
3. Sarah her feelings of frustration and dissatisfaction when she spoke to her boss.
4. Unless you can support your argument with some statistics, I'm afraid it just doesn't
5. In spite of the seriousness of the operation, she in a few days.
6. Although she said nothing about missing her husband, the expression on her face
7. The young actress has been offered a major role in the film version of "The Tempest".
8. Since we had only a few hours there, we could only to one or two of the museums in Amsterdam.
9. Mike is so that you never have to repeat instructions twice.
10. In spite of the negative economic outlook, car sales this month.

Idioms 2

wet behind the ears : inexperienced

make waves : cause trouble

frosty welcome : unfriendly reception

get out of bed on the wrong side : be in a bad mood

give way to : give in; yield.

set in one's ways : fixed in one's habits

under the weather : depressed; unwell

be all very well : appear satisfactory but in fact not be

get wind of : receive information about sth indirectly

no/little wonder : not surprising

283 Fill in the blanks with one of the idioms.

1. It's **no wonder** he's in a bad mood if it's true that his wife has just left him.
2. He's so that if you gave him his tea at 4 o'clock instead of 4:30, he'd complain.
3. My boss accused me of when I complained about our working conditions.
4. It's them saying they'd be here on time; in fact they're already ten minutes late.
5. She realised that her boss had when he snapped at her before she had even said "good morning".
6. We got such a(n) when we arrived at the party that we almost wished we hadn't gone.
7. Although he's young and, he has such a way with people that we decided to hire him.
8. I don't know how they our plans; I've certainly never discussed them with anyone.
9. John's been a bit lately, but I think he'll cheer up once we go on holiday.
10. If you always people's wishes, then they're bound to take advantage of you.

Prepositions

284 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. The food at that restaurant was labelled "unfit **for** human consumption" by the Environmental Health Officer.
2. I feel very uneasy leaving the baby with Miriam for the evening.
3. After suffering a major illness I was very vulnerable minor illnesses such as colds.
4. There is little variation the way my family celebrates Christmas from year to year.
5. Mr Holister has been unfaithful his wife and now she wants a divorce.
6. The boys ran down to the garden and vaulted the fence at the bottom.
7. Clara is unswerving her determination to become a lawyer.
8. I can vouch Sandra's integrity, so I recommend we include her in our discussions.
9. The prison officer is very unjust the prisoners, denying them their basic rights.

285 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

1. Tom's constant absorption **in** his books worried his parents.
2. The amount of water absorbed cotton wool is greater than that absorbed paper.
3. The thieves absconded the scene of the crime over £2,000.
4. The bank wrote to me to advise me their new overdraft policy.
5. If you need someone to advise you exam techniques, any of our trained staff will help you.
6. The doctor advised us travelling to Egypt without having the proper inoculations first.
7. At the Chinese restaurant we started spare ribs, then had chicken stir-fry and coconut ice-cream to finish.
8. It was discovered that the murdered woman had cared passionately political issues.

Consolidation 12

286 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. I don't believe anyone will want to buy the house.

LIKELIHOOD

2. She couldn't help noticing that her child was unhappy at school.

ESCAPE

3. We don't have to wear uniforms at our school.

OPTIONAL

4. Fresh fruit is plentiful at this time of year.

SHORTAGE

5. Sue gets car-sick very easily.

PRONE

6. The prospect of meeting him again filled her with dread.

FORWARD

7. She said she disliked loud music.

EXPRESSED

8. The exhibition is likely to be a success.

PROBABILITY

9. Could you tell me where the Post Office is?

DIRECT

10. The actress's jewels had been stolen.

ROBBED

11. You'll have to have your beard trimmed.

TRIMMING

287 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case *it gets* cold.

- I wouldn't have behaved so badly if in your shoes.
- Neither Jason nor his brother fish or chicken.
- You're very lucky take time off from work whenever you want.
- If only you home at the time he called!
- Although I this film before, I really want to see it again.
- If the instructions are unclear, please ask for clarification. It's important that you before starting the project.
- It's about time the children they were told.
- My aunt has been abroad for a month, so you seen her yesterday.
- He left quietly wake up the baby.
- I'd rather you in here. I can't stand the smell of cigarettes.

Word usage

288 Fill in the numbered blanks choosing the word which fits best. The first one has been done for you.

The BBC, in the form of the language-teaching arm of the World Service, and Harper Collins have (1) **joined** forces to publish the BBC English Dictionary, "A Dictionary for the World". It is being (2) at the 120 million listeners to the World Service who cannot find the expressions in more (3) dictionaries. (4) on 70 million words broadcast at least ten times a year on the World Service, the compilers, (5) by Prof. John Sinclair, have included (6) expressions and uses of words, without judging whether they are being used (7) Elizabeth Smith, the BBC's controller of English Services said: "Our language is (8) on statements by real people, like politicians and (9), which the BBC has accurately recorded. As broadcasters we try to use few idioms and metaphors but to (10) in the real world."

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. A) connected | B) joined | C) attached | D) fixed |
| 2. A) pointed | B) directed | C) trained | D) aimed |
| 3. A) functional | B) traditional | C) rational | D) partial |
| 4. A) Counting | B) Trying | C) Drawing | D) Bearing |
| 5. A) headed | B) chaired | C) dictated | D) treated |
| 6. A) young | B) current | C) nowadays | D) late |
| 7. A) correctly | B) truly | C) sincerely | D) finely |
| 8. A) designed | B) styled | C) erected | D) based |
| 9. A) so many | B) thus far | C) as to | D) so on |
| 10. A) inhabit | B) live | C) nest | D) home |

289 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

jeopardize	elaborate	thwart	amplify	excel
anchor	curb	supplement	dismantle	ventilate

- 1) **dismantle** a car engine. 2) a room. 3) a ship.
 4) your future. 5) on the facts. 6) your temper.
 7) your diet with vitamins. 8) the sound. 9) in an exam. 10) somebody's plans.

290 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. It has been medically proven that a poor diet leads to stunfed growth.
(controlled, stunted, curbed, tampered) | 5. I don't her name, as we met only once. (memorise, reminisce, recollect, remind) |
| 2. Bob is so short-tempered; he should try to his anger.
(curb, control, temper, stunt) | 6. Don't expect Alan to buy you a drink. He earns plenty of money but he's very
(hard-up, wealthy, tight, comfortable) |
| 3. If you your demands, they may be accepted by others.
(control, temper, stunt, curb) | 7. Could I borrow a few pounds? I'm a bit at the moment. (comfortable, wealthy, tight, hard-up) |
| 4. The teacher told us to the poem by the next lesson.
(remember, recollect, remind, memorise) | 8. My husband and I are not rich but we are
(wealthy, tight, comfortable, hard-up) |

Consolidation 12

291 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	visa	building	bus-pass	worn tyres	old cars	bridge	hope
renew	✓						
renovate							

	woman	decision	gift	lifestyle	kick	of worry	fall	city
free								
liberated	✓							

	with fear	hands	with horror	at the thought	voice	ground	with rage
trembling	✓						
shuddering							
quaking							
shivering							

	an accusation	an invitation	an offer	truth	help	a gift	charge	claim
refuse								
deny	✓							

292 Collocate the expressions with the words from the given list.

mislead represent overhaul pry cheat
disregard conspire mix gatecrash compliment

- 1) **cheat** at cards. 2) sb into believing sth false. 3) somebody on a new dress. 4) advice. 5) into sb's private life. 6) a party. 7) your country at a sport. 8) to kill somebody. 9) the car. 10) eggs and flour together.

seek shield hide struggle expose
exhibit search baffle restrict proclaim

- 1) **search** a building. 2) yourself the winner. 3) sb from harm. 4) sb's freedom. 5) sb with a paradox. 6) an answer. 7) a statue in a museum. 8) a politician's lies. 9) under the bed. 10) against oppression.

flit outdo prune stroll hire
amend retain flaunt scour accumulate

- 1) To **flit** from man to man. 2) To dust. 3) To a sense of perspective. 4) To a letter. 5) To your rivals. 6) To your wealth. 7) To a place for clues. 8) To a bush. 9) To around the village. 10) To a boat for a day.

Practice Test Twelve

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

The issue of fate or free will is a very controversial one and has been debated (1) the beginning of the fifth century. The question was first addressed by Saint Augustine. Is man's existence (2) by fate or by free will?

Belief in free will is based on the conviction that humans have a hand in shaping their (3) lives and, therefore, are ultimately responsible (4) their own actions. This theory, called existentialism, was derived (5) the ideas of a Danish philosopher and later made popular by a French writer. The theory (6) man as a unique and isolated individual in a violent and meaningless world, able to choose his own destiny.

On the other side of the (7), the theory of predestination is based (8) the belief that everything which happens has been predetermined by God and that man is not able to change it. So, the fork in the road of life seemingly offering man a choice (9) two very different paths, may not exist in reality. If this is true, can man be (10) responsible for his actions? If choices are beyond our (11), are we wasting endless hours of our time trying to (12) to a decision that has already been made for us? Can the man who murders his neighbour be (13) for doing so simply because he had no choice?

In trying to answer these kinds of questions, many philosophies have developed compromises between the two extremes. (14) such theory developed in the seventeenth century (15) that human actions are formed according to past experiences but that (16) the use of imagination and reason man can turn these past experiences (17) foresight, therefore allowing him to (18) his future.

Whatever theories are formed, the controversial (19) remains for public debate even today. But, perhaps, simply by choosing to believe in the philosophy of fate or that of free will, man is in fact creating his own life. Existentialism (20) predestination - which do you choose to believe in?

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.

Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. I couldn't have managed without your help.

If it

- b. While I don't like your attitude, I'm willing to listen to your opinion.

Despite my

- c. I only asked for his help when I had no one else to turn to.

Not until

- d. I expected her to be on time but she wasn't.

Contrary

- e. It's pointless to cry.

There's no

Practice Test Twelve

- f. Even though I hate going to the dentist's, it can't be avoided.

Much

- g. He never made me do anything against my will.

I

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use **crying over** spilt milk.

1. She should than staying up late and watching TV. After all she's only 14.
2. Taking of previous experience, I don't think we should employ him.
3. I wish I careful with my money; I shouldn't have spent it all in a week.
4. It's about time you your age.
5. If the weather is bad, the match held.
6. It came to him to hear that he hadn't been promoted; he seemed to expect it.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence **as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence**, but using the word given. This word must **not be altered** in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION

Answer: **Were they given permission to go?**

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Paul is always criticising his parents. | DOWN |
| | |
| 2. They were given permission by the director to eat in the staff canteen. | AGREED |
| | |
| 3. He doesn't mind which film we see. | MATTER |
| | |
| 4. That man reminds me of my father. | BEARS |
| | |
| 5. She is virtually unable to speak Greek. | ALL |
| | |
| 6. They arrived early and that annoyed me. | WHICH |
| | |
| 7. After the end of the exams everyone relaxed. | ONCE |
| | |
| 8. It is my strong belief that Ann took the money. | SUSPECT |
| | |
| 9. Most people show little concern for the suffering of animals. | INDIFFERENT |
| | |
| 10. He solved the problem before anyone else. | SOLUTION |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

Rainforests disappear daily. Endangered species are hunted for their pelts. Dolphins drown in tuna nets. Domestic and industrial waste pollutes the seas. Of these things there is hard, photographic evidence: Joe Public is forced to care. The problem with the damage being done to the ozone layer is that it's more difficult to believe in. It has no veracity or immediacy for the majority of the public because they can't see it. Their inability or unwillingness to comprehend contributes to the general apathy, to the "shrugging of the shoulders" type of attitude that makes this environmental battle so difficult to fight. The man in the street feels that it's not his problem. Something so vague must be the concern of world governments. The very existence of high-profile organisations like the United Nations, Greenpeace and Friends of the Earth has removed the need for individual conscience and effort. It's their job to bring pressure to bear on governments. What can one man do? However, this passing of the buck is tantamount to acquiescence in the destruction of the planet.

The ozone layer is what protects all life on earth from the harmful effects of the sun's ultra violet rays. During the last fifty or so years, it has been subjected to a barrage of man-made chemicals, chiefly chlorofluoro carbons or, as they are more familiarly known, CFCs. These gases and their agents are ubiquitous in our society. Where would we be without factories, refrigerators - domestic and industrial, air-conditioning apparatus, solvents, and last, but definitely not least, aerosol sprays? How many homes are without their air fresheners, hairsprays, furniture polish, deodorants, flysprays? All of these are part and parcel of domestic life. How often do we think twice before releasing a deadly blast of destruction? It gives a whole new meaning to the concept of chemical warfare. Attacks against our safety and physical well-being are being carried out every day and yet we are not outraged.

The most frightening part is that, the damage is irreparable. We cannot simply mend a hole which effectively covers an area the size of continents. All we can even hope to do by ridding our society of CFC gases is to halt the process, put the damage on hold.

Efforts were made in that direction when the first hole over Antarctica was given official confirmation in 1985. The world was thrown into panic, or so it seemed. Individuals, galvanised into action, threw away their aerosols and stocked their cupboards with so-called "ozone-friendly," pump-action alternatives. However, as the shock wave of publicity subsided, people gradually began to revert back to their old habits, probably imagining that it was all alarmist propaganda designed to make money for someone. Fortunately, drastic action was taken by the world governments and a programme of chemical reduction was devised and implemented which, it was hoped, would see the total phase-out of CFCs by the year 2000.

It was not drastic enough. New holes are threatening. In January 1992, NASA, having conducted an emergency study, rushed their findings into publication. The facts were alarming in their immediacy and indicated the need for urgent action. The time has come to abandon our "it won't happen in my time" attitude. Record levels of chlorine monoxide, a by-product of CFC gases, have been monitored and it is believed that the area which is most at risk, is that above the Northern USA, Canada, Europe and Russia. Poetic justice, some might say, for it is these nations which are responsible for the technological "advances" which first introduced the world to the delights of the CFC. It is those nations then, which must bear the financial brunt of phasing out CFCs, substituting alternatives and educating their populations into realising that it is their problem and that it's happening here and it's happening now.

Practice Test Twelve

1. Give an explanation of “hard, photographic evidence” (lines 2 - 3).
2. Who or what is “Joe Public” (line 3)?
3. Which phrase in paragraph 1 suggests that the public is not concerned about the problem?
4. Why, according to the passage, is the problem of the ozone layer difficult to accept?
5. What does the writer suggest are the negative effects of the “high-profile” (line 8) organisations?
6. What does “their” in line 10 refer to?
7. Explain the use of the phrase “this passing of the buck” (line 11).
8. In what way are gases and their agents "ubiquitous" (line 16) in society?
9. What does the phrase “a deadly blast of destruction” (line 20) refer to?
10. Explain what is meant by the phrase “put the damage on hold” (line 25).
11. How and why were the public “galvanised into action” (lines 27 - 28)?
12. What does “it” in line 34 refer to?
13. What is the “poetic justice” referred to in line 39?
14. What ambiguity is apparent in the use of the word “delights” (line 41)?
15. In a paragraph of 70-100 words, summarise the reasons why the ozone problem is proving so difficult to tackle.

Clauses

Subordinate clauses can be:

- a) **noun clauses** e.g. *He told me (that) the film was interesting.*
- b) **relative clauses** e.g. *Tom, who is her brother, left early.*
- c) **adverbial clauses** i.e. **time clauses, clauses of manner/place/reason/purpose/result/comparison/concession/condition** e.g. *He is taller than his sister.*

► A. Time Clauses

Time Clauses are introduced by time conjunctions or expressions such as:

after	immediately	then
as	no sooner ... than	the sooner .. the sooner
as soon as	now that	till / until
before	once	on / upon
by	(ever) since	when
by the time	the minute (that)	whenever
hardly ... when	the moment (that)	while

e.g. *He waited for an hour **before** he was interviewed by the manager.*

Clauses of time follow the rule of the sequence of tenses; that is, when the main verb of the sentence is a present or future tense the verb in the subordinate clause **must be** a present or future tense too, and when the verb of a sentence is a past tense, the verb in the subordinate clause must be a past tense too.

e.g. *I'll watch TV after I have **finished** doing my homework.*
*She **left** before he **came**.*

We **never use a future form or conditional tense** in a time clause; we use a present tense instead.

e.g. *They **will** leave in an hour. I'll do the washing up then.*
*I'll do the washing up **when / after** they **leave / have left**. (not ~~will leave~~ or ~~will have left~~)*

Note

when (time conjunction)	+ present tense	<i>When I find it, I'll tell you.</i>
when (question word)	+ future	<i>When will John get back from Austria?</i>

293 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- By the time the guests **arrive**(arrive), the food will be ruined.
- The moment she (shut) the door, she realised she had left her keys inside.
- Now that we (find) the treasure map, we will be rich!
- When Mr Jones (come) in, please tell him I'd like to have a word with him.
- I can't afford a new car until I (save) some more money.
- While he (wait) for the car to pick him up, the police arrived.
- When summer (come), we are moving to America.
- On entering the room, she (realise) that someone had been there.
- No sooner (she/reach) the phone than it stopped ringing.
- Once she (know) her son was safe she began to relax.
- Before she (leave) for the Middle East she visited all her relatives.
- The sooner you (finish) your homework, the sooner you can go out.

294 Finish the following sentences in such a way that they mean exactly the same as the sentences printed before them.

1. She heard the news. She told all her friends.
On
2. They often argue. She always smashes something.
Whenever
3. You were wasting your time at the football match; I was cleaning the house.
While
4. The policeman fired. The thieves had already made their getaway.
By the time
5. The operation will finish. We will talk to the surgeon.
When
6. You have finished your studies. You must decide what to do.
Now that
7. He had just left the house. He realised he had forgotten to take his briefcase.
No sooner
8. When you finish your work, you can leave.
The sooner
9. She went for long walks. She always got lost.
Whenever
10. They were sure the information was correct so they presented it to the director.
The minute
11. The rain stopped. The sun came out.
Hardly
12. Mary was waiting for the bus. An alarm went off.
While
13. He had the operation. He has felt better.
Ever since
14. He hung up the phone. It rang again.
No sooner
15. They will leave. I will clean the house.
After
16. You will hear from him. Please let me know.
When
17. Could you let me know the moment the food is ready?
As soon
18. She always went to her mother when she had a problem.
Whenever

► **B. Clauses of Purpose**

Clauses of Purpose are introduced with **so that** / **In order that** in the following way:

so that in order that	+ will / can (reference to the present) + would / could (reference to the past)	+ infinitive (informal construction)
e.g. We bought more food so that we would have enough for the extra guests.		
so that in order that	+ may / might + shall / should	+ infinitive (formal construction)
e.g. The President left early so that he should not be late for his next meeting.		

Negative purpose can be expressed by:

1. so as not to + infinitive (when the subject of the verb is also the subject of the infinitive)	e.g. We are staying in this weekend so as not to spend any money.
2. so that + can't/couldn't/won't/wouldn't (when the subject of the verb is either different or the same as the subject of the infinitive)	e.g. They've locked the gate so that we can't get in. He left an hour ago so that he wouldn't be caught in the traffic.
3. for fear + might or should lest + (might/should) + infinitive (formal) for fear of sth / doing sth	e.g. They asked their neighbours to keep an eye on the house for fear burglars might break in. e.g. She banned smoking lest the house should catch fire. e.g. She didn't make a noise for fear of waking her parents.
4. in case + Present (refers to the present/future) Past (refers to the past)	e.g. Take an umbrella in case it rains. e.g. They set off early in case the traffic was heavy.
Note will/would are never used with in case	e.g. Take your coat in case it gets cold. Take your coat in case it ~~will~~ ~~get~~ cold. (wrong)
5. prevent + noun / pronoun + (from) gerund	e.g. It's impossible to prevent the cat (from) scratching the furniture.
6. avoid + gerund	e.g. You should avoid carrying heavy bags if you have a bad back.

Clauses of Purpose follow the rule of the sequence of tenses.

e.g. *I'll leave early so that I'll be home before they come.*
He avoided mentioning it so that he wouldn't offend her.

295 Join the following sentences using "so that", "in case", "for fear", "prevent" or "avoid".

- They tidied the office. The managing director might drop in.
.....
- They bought some extra Coke. They were afraid of running out.
.....
- She got up early. She didn't want to be late.
.....
- She gave her children some books. She wanted them to read quietly.
.....
- They got summer jobs. They wanted to save some money.
.....
- We took some warm clothing. It could have started snowing.
.....
- They chained the dog up. They didn't want it to bite anyone.
.....
- She gave up smoking. She wanted to feel healthier.
.....

9. They sent the notice to all their employees. They wanted everyone to be aware of it.
.....
10. They had the roof mended. They didn't want the house to become damp.
.....
11. He told a white lie. He didn't want to hurt her feelings.
.....
12. They put up decorations. They wanted their guests to be impressed.
.....
13. She took the matches away from the children. She didn't want them to start a fire.
.....

Structural Conversion



1. **He put on a mask to avoid being recognised by his wife.**
He put on a mask to prevent his wife (from) recognising him.
He put on a mask for fear his wife might recognise him.
He put on a mask so that his wife wouldn't recognise him.
He put on a mask in case his wife recognised him.
He put on a mask because he didn't want his wife to recognise him.

2. **I didn't go out because I didn't want to catch cold.**
I didn't go out so as not to catch cold.
I didn't go out so I wouldn't catch cold.
I didn't go out to avoid catching cold.
I didn't go out in case I caught cold.
3. **I'd better wait because it's possible he'll come back.**
I'd better wait in case he comes back.
4. **I daren't make a noise because John might hear me.**
I daren't make a noise for fear John might hear me.

296 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. They tied the dog up for fear it might escape.
They tied the dog up in
2. We didn't phone you in case we woke you up.
We didn't phone you so
3. She opened the door quietly because she didn't want to wake the baby.
She opened the door quietly to
4. He turned down the music so that he wouldn't disturb his neighbours.
He turned down the music for fear
5. They daren't announce the news because they might worry the public.
They daren't announce the news for
6. She left the key under the mat so that she would not get locked out.
She left the key under the mat to
7. He drove carefully to prevent an accident.
He drove carefully for
8. You should tell her because it's possible she hasn't heard.
You should tell her in
9. He did the exercise carefully because he didn't want to have to re-do it.
He did the exercise carefully so
10. He prepared plenty of food so they wouldn't run out.
He prepared plenty of food in
11. They installed an alarm system for fear they might be robbed.
They installed an alarm system because
12. I won't phone them because they might be asleep.
I won't phone them for

C. Clauses of Result

Clauses of Result are introduced by  **such (a) ... that** or **so ... that** as follows:

such a(n)	+ (adjective) + singular countable noun	e.g. <i>It was such a thrilling novel that I couldn't put it down.</i>
such	+ (adjective) + uncountable or plural noun	e.g. <i>He played such moving music that many in the audience fell close to tears.</i>
such	+ a lot of + noun	e.g. <i>There was such a lot of noise that the children couldn't hear what the teacher was saying.</i>
so	+ adjective / adverb	e.g. <i>We were so pleased with their present that we rang them immediately. He sang so beautifully that he won the contest.</i>
so	+ much, many, little, few (+ noun)	e.g. <i>We had so little time that we didn't manage to visit all our friends.</i>
so	+ adjective + a(n) + noun (not usual)	e.g. <i>So beautiful a girl was she that the prince fell in love with her at first sight.</i>

Clauses of Result follow the rule of sequence of tenses.

e.g. *He is so tall that he **can reach** the top shelf.*

She was such a good actress that everyone admired her.

297 Fill in the blanks with "such (a/an)" or "so".

1. It was **such a** beautiful day that we went for a walk.
2. It was good a painting that I couldn't resist buying it.
3. The soup was salty that he couldn't eat it.
4. It was awful film that we turned the T.V. off.
5. He ate many cakes that he felt sick.
6. It was good coffee that I asked for another cup.
7. It was valuable jewellery that it had been insured for millions.

Structural Conversion

1. *The trousers were so tight that he couldn't put them on.
The trousers were too tight for him to put on.
So tight were the trousers that he couldn't put them on.*
2. *The snow was so deep that they couldn't leave the house.
It was such deep snow that they couldn't leave the house.
So deep was the snow that they couldn't leave the house.*
3. *The exercise was so hard that I couldn't do it.
It was such a hard exercise that I couldn't do it.
The exercise was too hard for me to do.*
4. *It was such an expensive dress that I couldn't buy it.
The dress was too expensive for me to buy.
The dress wasn't cheap enough for me to buy.*
5. *He was so tired that he couldn't work any more.
He was too tired to work any more.*
6. *His fear was such that he almost fainted.
Such was his fear that he almost fainted.
So great was his fear that he almost fainted.
He was so afraid that he almost fainted.*
7. *There was so much dirt in the room that she couldn't clean it.
The room was so dirty that she couldn't clean it.
So dirty was the room that she couldn't clean it.
It was such a dirty room that she couldn't clean it.*

298 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. He was too ill to go to school. He was so
2. The weather was so nice that we could sit outside.
So
3. It was such a beautiful cake that she didn't want to cut it.
The cake
4. She was so tired that she couldn't climb the stairs.
She was too
5. It was such loud music that you couldn't hear anyone speak.
The music
6. The house was too small for the whole family to live in.
So
7. They couldn't cross the stream as it was too wide.
The stream
8. He was too big to sleep in the bed. It was
9. Her dog was too badly-behaved for her to control.
So
10. The water was too shallow for us to swim.
The water was so

► D. Clauses of Concession

Clauses of Concession are introduced by:

As	Even so	Much as *	But
Although	Even if	In spite of	However
Though	While	Despite	Yet
Even though	Whereas	Nevertheless	Still

* used with verbs such as (dis)like, admire, enjoy etc.

Clauses of Concession follow the rule of the sequence of tenses.

e.g. **Much as** I like her, I **disapprove** of her teaching methods.
Sensible as/though he is, he has **acted** foolishly in this case.
Even though he **studied**, he **failed** his tests.

1. **In spite of / Despite** + noun or gerund or the fact that + clause

e.g. **In spite of / Despite** being ill, she went to work.
In spite of / Despite her ill health, she still takes care of the house and children.

2. **However / No matter how** + adjective / adverb + subject (+ may) + verb

e.g. **No matter how** hard I try, I can never solve crosswords.
However hard he may try, he won't succeed.

3. **Whatever / No matter what** + clause

e.g. **No matter what** the time is, ring me when you arrive at the station.

4. **Even if** + **should** + infinitive (unlikely to happen)

e.g. **Even if** it **should** rain, I'm still going swimming.

5. **Adjective / Adverb + though + subject + verb**
Adjective / Adverb + though + subject + may + infinitive

e.g. *Rich though he is, he is not happy.*
Late though he stayed, he didn't finish the work.

6. **Adjective / Adverb + as + subject + verb**

e.g. *Tall as he is, he couldn't reach the branch of the tree.*
Fast as he ran, he didn't catch the bus.

299 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. Even if she comes late, ring me when she arrives.
 No matter
2. Talented though he is, he can't find a job.
 Even though
3. In spite of the train strike, she still managed to get to work.
 Even though
4. Whatever you say in protest, you can do nothing to change the situation.
 No matter
5. Although the nights are cold, the days are warm.
 Cold
6. Even though she has rich parents, she has little money herself.
 Despite
7. No matter what you do, you mustn't go through that door.
 Whatever
8. Unusual though this vase is, it wasn't expensive.
 Even
9. Despite the fact that he's never been to China, he loves Chinese food.
 He loves
10. No matter how hungry you are, you must wait until dinnertime.
 However
11. Even though we went to the same school, we don't keep in touch now.
 Despite
12. In spite of the money spent on it, the project was a failure.
 A lot of money was spent on the project. It
13. Although she enjoyed the film, she wouldn't see it again.
 She enjoyed the film; nevertheless, ...
14. We aren't rich; nevertheless, we are happy.
 Although
15. Old though she is, my grandmother is still active.
 Even though
16. No matter how cheap it was, it was a waste of money.
 However
17. Even though it is damaged, this vase is still valuable.
 Damaged
18. No matter how little money he has, he never borrows any.
 However
19. Whatever he does, he is successful.
 No matter
20. He has lived in France for three years, nevertheless he can't speak French.
 In spite
21. Even though she is famous, she is not particularly rich.
 Famous



Structural Conversion

1. **She wasn't fat; nevertheless, she went on a diet.**
She went on a diet. She wasn't fat, though.
Even though she wasn't fat, she went on a diet.
Although she wasn't fat, she went on a diet.
In spite of (her) not being fat, she went on a diet.
2. **Despite the fact that he was afraid, he climbed the mountain.**
He was afraid. He climbed the mountain, though.
Even though he was afraid, he climbed the mountain.
In spite of (his) being afraid, he climbed the mountain.
Although he was afraid, he climbed the mountain.
Afraid as/though he was, he climbed the mountain.
3. **Although he spoke loud, he could not make himself heard.**
Loud as/though he spoke, he could not make himself heard.
4. **Apart from Paul we all have cars.**
We all have cars with the exception of Paul.
We all have cars except for Paul.
5. **Although she is talented, she is too shy to perform in public.**
Even though she is talented, she is too shy to perform in public.
In spite of her talent, she is too shy to perform in public.
She is talented. She is too shy to perform in public, though.
She is talented, though too shy to perform in public.
Talented though/as she is/may be, she is too shy to perform in public.
6. **Whatever they do, they do it well.**
No matter what they do, they do it well.
7. **No matter how carefully you do it, it's bound to be difficult.**
However carefully you do it, it's bound to be difficult.
It's bound to be difficult however carefully you do it.
8. **The film was awful but we went on watching it.**
Despite the film being awful, we went on watching it.
9. **Although it seemed to be harmless the dog was in fact dangerous.**
Although it seemed to be harmless, on the contrary, the dog was dangerous.

300 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. Although we warned her, she swam there anyway.
 In spite
2. In spite of his being wealthy, he's terribly mean.
 Wealthy
3. However you speak to her, she always takes offence.
 No matter
4. Apart from Geography she enjoys all her lessons.
 With
5. He isn't very clever; nevertheless, he passed the exam.
 Although
6. No matter what you offer to pay him, he won't accept the job.
 Whatever
7. Slow as he is, he finished the work before I did.
 Even though
8. Despite the fact that she practises regularly, she doesn't play tennis well.
 Although
9. They are not well-off; nevertheless, they seem to spend a lot of money.
 In spite
10. Complain as she might, nothing will ever change.
 Although
11. He works extremely hard. He enjoys his job, though.
 No matter

E. Exclamations

Exclamations are not subordinate clauses and are introduced by **what** or **how** as follows:

What + (a/an) (adjective) + noun	<i>What an interesting lecture!</i> <i>What awful furniture!</i>
How + adjective / adverb / verb	<i>How beautiful she is!</i> <i>How slowly he walks!</i> <i>How I loved him!</i>
How + adjective + a/an + noun (not common)	<i>How beautiful a girl (she is)! (archaic)</i>

Exclamatory sentences can also be expressed:

- with **such** (a/an) + (adjective) + noun or so + adjective / adverb.
e.g. *She is such a beautiful girl!* or *She is so beautiful!*
- by beginning the sentence putting the verb of the sentence into the **interrogative - negative** form.
e.g. *Isn't she sweet!* *Doesn't he eat a lot!*
- by beginning the sentence with an **adverb** or an **adverbial particle** (away, up, out, etc.) with a verb of movement.
e.g. *Off he went!*

301 Change the following sentences into exclamatory ones, in as many ways as possible, like in the examples.

e.g. *It was an exciting idea.*

What an exciting idea it was!
How exciting an idea it was!
The idea was so exciting!

Wasn't it an exciting idea!
It was such an exciting idea!
It was so exciting an idea!

1. It was an exquisite piece of work.

3. It was an ugly scene.

.....
.....
.....
.....

2. It is an exciting proposition.

4. It is an impressive view.

.....
.....
.....
.....

.....
.....
.....
.....

302 Fill in the blanks with "what (a/an)" or "how".

- What** beautiful eyes you have!
- lovely the weather is!
- clear water the Aegean has!
- intelligent man he is!
- charming companion you are!
- awful time they had!
- interesting music they played!
- ugly sight it was!
- nice it is that you remembered!

- untidy that child is!
- noisy boys those are!
- silly you acted!
- unfortunate the accident was!
- friendly smile he has!
- easy test that was!
- sad that your parents aren't here!
- boring that book was!
- incredible stories he tells!

Structural Conversion

1. *What terrible weather it was!*
It was such terrible weather!
Wasn't it terrible weather!
2. *How fast he speaks!*
He speaks so fast!
Doesn't he speak fast!

3. *What a gracious lady!*
She is such a gracious lady!
Isn't she a gracious lady!
She is so gracious a lady!
4. *How lucky she is!*
She is so lucky!
Isn't she lucky!

303 Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meaning.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. What a thrilling novel that was!
Wasn't | 4. He plays so well!
How |
| 2. It was such a stimulating debate!
What | 5. How fortunate he is!
Isn't |
| 3. We had such a disastrous experience!
What | 6. She is so generous!
How |

F. Clauses of Reason

Clauses of Reason are introduced by **as**, **since**, **seeing that**, **because**, **for** and follow the rule of the sequence of tenses.

e.g. *Since she hasn't got any money she can't go shopping.*
He failed his test because he wasn't well prepared.

Because and **for** can both be used to introduce a Clause of Reason. However, **for** can't be used at the beginning of a sentence or as an answer to a why-question. If used, there is always a comma before it in written speech or a pause in oral speech.

e.g. *Because I didn't know how, I didn't do it.*
I didn't do it because I didn't know how.
I didn't do it, for I didn't know how.

304 Join the following sentences using the words in brackets.

1. He's earning more money. He can buy a bigger house. (Since)
.....
2. I didn't know her name. I couldn't call out to her. (As)
.....
3. John hasn't been paid yet. He can't pay the bills. (Since)
.....
4. The old man died alone. He had never been kind to anyone. (for)
.....
5. I sent a card to my friend for her birthday. I couldn't be there. (Because)
.....
6. We couldn't have met before. I've never been to France. (Seeing that)
.....
7. She was new to the job. She didn't know the ropes. (As)
.....
8. The case will be thrown out of court. There isn't enough evidence. (Because)
.....
9. We can't pay you. You didn't complete the work on time. (Since)
.....
10. John is ill. You can have his ticket for the play. (Seeing that)
.....

Structural Conversion

1. *"I'm sorry I didn't buy you a birthday present," he said.*
He apologised for not buying me a birthday present.
He said he was sorry for not buying me a birthday present.
2. *What reason did he give for acting that way?*
What reason did he give for his actions?
Did he give any reason why he acted that way?
Was there any reason given why he acted that way?
3. *They thought it was going to be hot so they went to the beach.*
They went to the beach because they thought it was going to be hot.
If they hadn't thought it was going to be hot, they wouldn't have gone to the beach.
4. *Being unable to fix the tap, I was forced to call a plumber.*
As I didn't know how to fix the tap, I was forced to call a plumber.
Not being able to fix the tap, I was forced to call a plumber.
I was forced to call a plumber because I couldn't fix the tap.
5. *Didn't he say why he hadn't turned up at the meeting?*
Didn't he give any reason for not turning up at the meeting?
Did he give any reason why he hadn't turned up at the meeting?
6. *He's ill so he won't be coming to the party.*
He won't be coming to the party because he's ill.

305 *Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.*

1. "I'm sorry that I didn't telephone yesterday," said Mel.
 Mel apologised
2. Monday's a public holiday so we won't be going to work.
 No-one
3. He said he was sorry that he couldn't help me further.
 He apologised
4. Cherry was a good secretary so the company employed her.
 The company
5. Did she give any reason why she was absent?
 What
6. The reason why he left remains a mystery.
 It's
7. Did she give you any reason why she behaved in that way?
 Did she give you any reason
8. I don't know the reason why they refused.
 I don't know the reason
9. He said he was sorry that he didn't come to dinner.
 He apologised
10. I thought they were coming at 7:00 so I stayed at home.
 I stayed
11. If they hadn't trusted him, they wouldn't have taken his advice.
 They took
12. Not being able to afford a taxi, we had to go by bus.
 We were forced
13. Was there any reason given why he looked so miserable?
 Did he
14. The director is abroad so he won't be attending the meeting.
 The director won't
15. As she was a witness to the accident, she was asked to make a statement.
 Being

G. Clauses of Place

Clauses of Place are introduced by **where**, **wherever**, **as far as**, **as high as**, **as low as**, **as near as**, etc., as follows:

where wherever as high as as low as as far as as near as	+ Present tense or may e.g. <i>No matter where I go, I always bump into him.</i>	or present future
	+ Past tense or might e.g. <i>The dog went wherever I went.</i>	past
Note Simple Future is not normally used in Clauses of Place. e.g. <i>He'll go wherever I go.</i>		

306 Fill in the blanks with "where", "wherever", "as high as", "as low as", "as far as" or "as near as".

1. She only walked **as far as** the corner and then decided it was too wet and turned back.
2. I shall be spending Christmas in a town called Newgate which is my family lives.
3. it is, Moira always takes the car to work.
4. he travels, he always manages to find a friendly face.
5. She ran she could in two minutes.
6. Don't go that to the edge of the platform; it's dangerous.
7. No one else could jump him so he won the medal.
8. "You only scored 2 out of 20 in the test?" "Really, was it that?"
9. I'll go he decides. I'd follow him to the ends of the earth.
10. She cannot make up her mind to go on holiday.

307 Fill in the blanks with the correct word or phrase practising all clauses presented so far.

e.g. *He took his umbrella for fear it might rain.*

1. By back, I'll have finished the washing up.
2. No come to power than it was overthrown in a military coup.
3. The pizza was he ate it all.
4. I stayed at home so my favourite programme.
5. In qualifications, he didn't get the job.
6. What! It's been raining for days.
7. Clever there are still some basic things she doesn't understand.
8. They locked all the doors and windows to burgled.
9. He drove carefully for an accident.
10. So she couldn't stop reading it.
11. They had to hire a car had broken down.
12. You'd better check the information in wrong.
13. Although invited, we decided not to go to the party.
14. As touched down, it burst into flames causing the death of 22 passengers.
15. She! She breaks everything she touches.
16. The sisters are I can't tell them apart.
17. How! She could get a big part in the play.
18. She apologised arrived on time.
19. Did she give any reason resigned from her job?
20. No matter her, she'll always do the opposite.
21. He had the work double-checked a mistake.
22. As he went to bed early.

308 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. We had just turned the TV on when the power failed.

THAN

2. She didn't want the police to recognise her so she wore a disguise.

PREVENT

3. He was too lazy to finish the project.

ENOUGH

4. Although he likes football, he refuses to join the team.

MUCH

5. Isn't he a rude man!

WHAT

6. Turn the hi-fi down or you might wake the neighbours.

NOT

7. She was so bored with her work that she decided to quit.

BORING

8. I don't know why he spoke to me like that.

SPEAKING

9. Even though it was frightening, the children remained perfectly calm during the film.

BUT

10. She opened the door and immediately realised something was wrong.

SOON

11. She moved to London after she had finished her studies.

UNTIL

12. I was so sleepy that I couldn't stay awake.

TOO

13. He is such a fascinating speaker!

SO

14. She carried an umbrella so she wouldn't get wet.

AVOID

15. However hard she tries, she'll never get an answer out of him.

AS

16. The traffic is so bad!

HOW

309 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

The study of taxi drivers is a study (1) contrasts. Within this group we find the two extremes of human nature - the polite and sociable, and the downright rude. (2) is not to say that taxi drivers can't fall into that broad spectrum that lies in between, but it is the extremes that (3) to be the most common (or at (4) the most memorable). We have all taken a (5) with the driver who acknowledges our presence (6) a cursory nod and a flick of the meter switch and who responds (7) our timid questions with nothing but grunts. The really unlucky passengers find (8) travelling round and round in acute embarrassment (9) been told in no uncertain terms that it is their fault that the driver has no (10) where he (or she) is going. Of course, these people are (11) to feel suitably guilty despite never having (12) foot in the city before.

On the (13) hand, we have the non-stop friendly talker who assails you with irrelevant chit-chat before you have (14) managed to close the door. The conversation includes every topic (15) the sun and by the (16) of the journey, you are suitably prepared to write the next edition of the "Encyclopaedia Britannica". Such drivers succeed (17) telling you all about their family life (18) trying to learn your entire life history at the (19) time.

Whichever type of taxi driver you find yourself (20), there is little doubt that you will reach your destination emotionally exhausted - but can you think of a more interesting way to travel?

Phrasal Verbs 1

take aback : surprise

take after : look like a relative

take against : dislike sb

take away : remove

take back : withdraw a statement or comment

take down : 1) write down
2) remove sth from a high place

take sb for : mistake sb/sth for sb/sth else

take in : 1) deceive
2) allow sb to stay in one's home
3) understand
4) make clothes smaller

take up : 1) begin a hobby, sport etc.
2) occupy space

310 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. She takes **after** her father: she has the same gestures and mannerisms.
2. These magazines must be read in the library. You can't take them
3. The secretary took the list of titles as her boss read them out.
4. We were so taken by his decision to resign that we didn't know what to say.
5. I'll never forgive you if you don't take what you said about me.
6. Since his retirement, he has taken painting to fill up some of his spare time.
7. She seems to have taken me, as if I had offended her somehow.
8. Nobody was taken by his story, although it seemed convincing at first.
9. You have to take these curtains. They look very dirty.
10. If you take this skirt a little, it should fit you perfectly. It's too big for you.
11. She is always being taken Elizabeth Taylor even though she doesn't really look like her.
12. When they discovered that the child was homeless they offered to take him
13. That desk is so big that it takes most of his office.
14. His lecture was so complicated that I only took a few words of what he said.

Phrasal Verbs 2

take off : 1) remove (clothing)
2) leave the ground (of aeroplanes etc.)
3) imitate sb in a comic way
4) begin to succeed (of plans, ideas etc.)

take on : 1) undertake sth
2) employ staff
3) accept sb as an opponent

take out : 1) extract, remove
2) accompany sb to a theatre, etc.

take over : take control of sth esp in place of sb else

take to : 1) find agreeable; like
2) begin a habit
3) escape to; hide in

take up with : become involved in (usu derog)

Idioms 1

go back on one's word : not fulfil a promise (opp.: keep one's word)

have words with sb : have an argument

make one's day : make sb very happy

in deep water : in trouble/difficulty

an old wives' tale : false belief (usu about health)

have/keep one's wits about one : be alert and able to deal with difficulties

the year dot : a long time ago

be born yesterday : be easily deceived/naïve

have it both ways : refuse to make a decision between two pleasant things (usu in expression "You can't have it both ways!")

311 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. She took the cover **off** the sofa and had it cleaned.
2. I don't think he'll take the new project unless we offer him more money.
3. After he retired he took gardening as a way of passing the time.
4. You'd better take this paragraph; it weakens your argument.
5. Their plane was to take at 10 pm but it was delayed due to fog.
6. He's such an aggressive person that nobody really takes him.
7. Their daughter has taken a group of peace activists.
8. Mark was sent home from school because someone saw him taking the Headmaster.
9. Mr Johnson's son is going to take as Chairman of the Board.
10. After a slow start, their new line of cosmetics has begun to take
11. They've decided to take at least twenty new sales people this year.
12. The rebels took the mountains after their leader had been captured.
13. He promised to take me for dinner on Friday evening.
14. The amateur boxer was hesitant to take such an experienced fighter.

312 Fill in the correct idiom.

1. She **kept her wits about her** when she heard the intruder in her house; instead of shouting she went out quietly and phoned the police.
2. She is forever making promises and then
3. Unless you can explain where you got the money, I'm afraid you'll find yourself
4. You can't - either take the well-paid job or keep the job you enjoy doing.
5. I don't believe you're a millionaire. I, you know.
6. I think the idea that you can cure colds by eating onions is just
7. My mother had to the maid today because she keeps breaking things.
8. She when she accepted his proposal; it was the happiest day of his life.
9. This house hasn't been decorated since It will have to be done up completely before we move in.

Idioms 2
(Colour Idioms)

- the black market** : illegal trading of goods
- the black sheep of the family** : a disgraced family member
- in black and white** : in writing
- be in the black** : be out of debt
- (be) in sb's black books** : (be) unpopular with sb
- beat sb black and blue** : hit sb repeatedly until bruised
- the pot calling the kettle black** : accusing sb of a fault one has oneself
- be in the pink** : be healthy
- be tickled pink** : be very pleased
- see / look at sth through rose-coloured spectacles** : see sth from an unrealistically positive point of view

Idioms 3
(Colour Idioms)

- (like) a bolt from the blue** : a complete surprise
- blue-eyed boy** : favourite boy
- a blue film** : a pornographic film
- the boys in blue** : the police
- out of the blue** : unexpectedly
- once in a blue moon** : very rarely
- until one is blue in the face** : as hard/long as one possibly can (usu without success)
- feel / be blue** : be depressed
- scream blue murder** : make a lot of fuss
- have a yellow streak** : be a coward

313 Fill in the correct idiom.

1. Mike was **tickled pink** when he was offered the promotion he had been expecting.
2. It was a case of when Jack said I was lazy. He does less work than I do.
3. Being he was cut out of his uncle's will.
4. Tom got himself into the teacher's by failing to hand in his homework.
5. It's risky to buy goods on as you are likely to be caught by the police.
6. My father is finally back after a nasty bout of the flu.
7. She demanded to see everything set out before she signed.
8. Optimists have a tendency to rather than being realistic.
9. The muggers when he refused to give them his money.
10. When I'm again I'm going to buy myself a television. I have too many debts to buy one now.

314 Fill in the correct idiom.

1. The baby **screamed blue murder** when I tried to put it to bed.
2. Her decision to leave home came like to her parents.
3. You can ask but I still won't let you borrow the car.
4. They closed down the video shop for selling illegally.
5. Diane was so we asked her to the cinema to cheer her up.
6. It's no surprise you were left so much money in your grandfather's will; you always were his
7. The boys accused him of having because he wouldn't enter the abandoned house.
8. The wedding invitation arrived; we had no idea they were planning to get married.
9. "I've never seen Paul do the washing up." "Oh, he does it"
10. They decided to call in when they found that their shop had been broken into.

Prepositions

315 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions.

1. I'm very wary **of** riding on that horse; it's been known to shy at traffic.
2. The police stormed the building with a warrant the owner's arrest.
3. The school boy winced the sight of the cane in the headmaster's hand.
4. I yearn a relaxing holiday in the sun.
5. The pigs wallowed lazily in the mud.
6. The country has been waging war its neighbours for the last eight years.
7. Wind and rain has whittled away the old stone wall for the past three centuries.
8. The boy winked his girlfriend across the bar.
9. After six months in the countryside Alan has a yen the bright lights of the city.
10. The woman yelled the boys when they ran through her garden.
11. She tried not to yield temptation and have another piece of cake.

316 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions.

1. There was a choice **between** a hotel in Rome and a villa in Tuscany for our last holiday.
2. The spy had little choice the matter but to destroy the microfilm.
3. The restaurant menu offered a choice trout, pork or chicken.
4. There's no point crying things you can't change.
5. The baby was crying some milk.
6. My uncle deals scrap metal.
7. If you clean the hall, we'll deal the kitchen together.
8. Do you mean you still haven't decided your holiday yet?
9. I can't decide what sort of wedding dress to buy.
10. The national debt has been decreased £10 billion this year.
11. Membership of the society has decreased number since last year.

317 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. He was dismissed because he was always late for work.

LOST

2. Not wanting to wait, I left without them.

BECAUSE

3. John feels his colleagues despise him for not having a degree.

LOOK

4. Could you possibly lend me some money?

MIND

5. Only Martha survived the crash.

SOLE

6. He was given the award because his acting was brilliant.

LED

7. They said that Susan was dishonest.

DISHONESTY

Consolidation 13

- 8. They took a map in case they got lost.
FEAR
- 9. He certainly won't have finished before next week.
POSSIBILITY
- 10. If you give in to them, you'll be sorry.
STAND

318 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case it gets cold.

- 1. Had he invited me earlier, I able to change my plans.
- 2. Do you now? I really wish you could stay.
- 3. My neighbour, Mrs Jones has a two- daughter who I often babysit for.
- 4. I'm really looking my holiday in Spain.
- 5. He is still tired as of all the overtime he put in last week.
- 6. This floor is so dirty. It can't for weeks.
- 7. She couldn't help about losing her job.
- 8. For all he cared I in the accident.
- 9. He really does his children though he rarely shows it.
- 10. Mark has been living abroad for months now. You seen him yesterday.

319 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. I live in a house ~~at~~ a lake.
- 2. Except from John and Mary, nobody wants to go to the cinema.
- 3. He wants to go home and he hasn't finished work yet.
- 4. My neighbours make enough noise to rise the dead.
- 5. Keeping a dog is fairly expensive, so I had rather keep a goldfish.
- 6. The farmer's chicken has lain ten eggs today.
- 7. Although he's been working in the bank for two years, he yet hasn't been promoted.
- 8. The streets are flooded. It can't have been raining all night.
- 9. Children under five mustn't pay to travel by public transport.
- 10. The judge asked the jury spokesman to arise and give the verdict.
- 11. I've only known Lucy for a week, but she seems rather nice.
- 12. My feet are killing me! I need to lay down.
- 13. Bob can't go to the cinema because he's still spent all his pocket-money.
- 14. It's only 9:30. He might have arrived already.
- 15. This is a secret. You needn't tell anyone.
- 16. Problems raised at the border when we realised we hadn't got the visa required.
- 17. The boys laid to their mother about breaking the window.
- 18. They hadn't already got there when we arrived.
- 19. These books mustn't photocopy without prior permission.
- 20. Since moving to London, I've made very a lot of friends.
- 21. The criminal is said to leave the country in disguise.
- 22. She was made tell the truth.
- 23. He's involved with the scandal.
- 24. If you go on like that, you'd end up in prison.
- 25. The church had been built in the 18th century.

beside/by/on

320 Use the following notes to write instructions for passengers at an airport. Write in complete sentences for each numbered set of notes using connecting words and phrases as appropriate. You must use all the words in the same order as the notes. You may add words and change the form of words where necessary. The first sentence has been completed for you in the example.

e.g. Arrival airport, make way check-in desk - your flight / flight number display above desk.
 On arrival at the airport make your way to the check-in desk for your flight. The / your flight number will be displayed above the desk.

1. Have - tickets - passports - hand - ready - check-in.

.....

.....

.....

2. If - member - large party - appreciated - collect - tickets together - prior - checking-in, results more efficiency - speed proceed.

.....

.....

.....

3. Checking-in - passengers - request seat together-smoking - no smoking, window - aisle seats - depend - prefer.

.....

.....

.....

4. Before - leave - desk - passenger ensure have one baggage - receipt each piece luggage check - one boarding-pass - each - on - seat number - aircraft - print.

.....

.....

.....

5. Passengers - then - way through - passport control - lead - departure lounge.

.....

.....

.....

6. Departure lounge - cafeteria - refreshments / duty free shops - twenty-four hours / wide select - accept payment - local - foreign and major credit cards.

.....

.....

.....

7. Departure lounge passengers - listen - flight depart - announce - careful - only once English.

.....

.....

.....

8. Finally - word - warn - passengers - no - bags unattended - time - definite - no accept baggage behalf - anyone.

.....

.....

.....

Consolidation 13

Word usage

321 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

bind	ponder	appreciate	assign	shrivel
speculate	traffic(k)	tint	transmit	infer

- 1) **infer** a meaning from sb's statement. 2) on a problem.
 3) the dangers. 4) a book. 5) a radio message.
 6) in property. 7) in drugs. 8) sb to a task.
 9) your hair. 10) in the heat.

322 Choose from the sets of the synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- I hate the way Tony **struts** around looking so self-important. (**struts, scampers, slithers, slinks**)
- The dog under the table when I shouted at him for eating my steak. (**slithered, scampered, slunk, strutted**)
- Rosie the kitten playfully around with a ball. (**slunk, strutted, slithered, scampered**)
- A long, green snake through the grass and disappeared. (**strutted, slithered, slunk, scampered**)
- She tried to Tom's importance to the company in order to gain a promotion for herself. (**diminish, dwindle, shrink, reduce**)
- Due to inflation, my bank-savings have gradually to practically nothing. (**shrank, dwindled, reduced, diminished**)
- My new pullover to half its previous size when I washed it. (**shrank, reduced, diminished, dwindled**)
- I need to my weight by about ten kilos for health reasons. (**reduce, diminish, dwindle, shrink**)
- I don't think you're suitably for this party. (**clothed, clad, wearing, dressed**)
- The knight was shining armour. (**clad in, clothed in, dressed in, wearing**)

323 Collocate the expressions with words from the given list.

enunciate	bleach	refute	petition	commend
beseech	applaud	engrave	despatch	undertake

- 1) **beseech** sb for help. 2) a claim. 3) for sb's release.
 4) to do a job. 5) sb very highly. 6) a hero.
 7) a piece of jewellery. 8) a document. 9) your words carefully. 10) your hair.

324 Fill in the following collocation grids.

	asleep	deal	bargain	condition	cold	dead	teeth	time
sound	✓							
stone								
hard								

Practice Test Thirteen

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

Although to "civilised" modern society the idea of slavery may (1) unacceptable, it was (2) a part of everyday life in the ancient Mediterranean and near East. Not until 100 years ago (3) it abolished in (4) British Empire, and America can boast a four-hundred-year history of slavery. At one (5) it was customary for prisoners of war to be (6) slaves - during the 5th century B.C. there were an (7) 125,000 slaves in Attica in Ancient Greece. Those involved (8) industry or domestic employment were probably fairly (9) - treated. On the other hand, those (10) in the mines apparently worked under appalling (11) The same was true (12) the slaves in Republican Rome. Indeed, they were treated (13) badly that a massive revolt of 90,000 slaves was organised by Spartacus in 73 - 71 B.C. Later, throughout the Europe of the Middle Ages, slaves were engaged (14) courts and also worked for rich merchants. (15), it was the supply of West African slaves to the New World which saw the industry at its (16) Slaves were shipped across the Atlantic to work in the fields with crops (17) as tobacco, rice, cotton and sugar cane. Although approximately twenty million slaves survived the torturous journey, millions more died (18) the way. It was not until a particularly violent Civil War (19) the South followed the North and emancipated (20) slaves.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.
Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. Who does this house belong to?
Who is.....
- b. There's every likelihood that Sue will pass her exams this year.
It is.....
- c. I don't know much about early Celtic civilisation.
My.....
- d. They found the service at the Hilton very impressive.
They were.....
- e. It is impossible for me to do this again.
There is.....
- f. The reason why he died was never discovered.
The reason for.....
- g. It is known that the actress took a drug overdose.
The actress.....

- h. The accident happened so suddenly that no one had time to react.
So
3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.
- Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.
- Although the 8 o'clock, nobody got to the party until 10 o'clock.
 - Isn't who can answer my question?
 - Being a passionate gardener, she time outdoors among plants and trees.
 - I'd sooner them the news yourself.
 - If you want that information, the ask is Ms Wilkins.
 - So many people have bought tickets that I suspect left.
4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|--|------------|
| 1. Would you please send me your response as soon as possible? | GRATEFUL |
| | |
| 2. She never thought of asking us for help. | OCCURRED |
| | |
| 3. She has to do what you ask. | OPTION |
| | |
| 4. Their car has been stolen twice this year. | HAD |
| | |
| 5. Our professor is well-informed about modern literature. | WIDE |
| | |
| 6. There's a strong odour of cooking in here. | SMELLS |
| | |
| 7. The reason for his resignation is still not known. | CAUSED |
| | |
| 8. Do you have to wear uniforms at your school? | COMPULSORY |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

People-watching, like talking about the weather, is a favourite British pastime. It is second to none for convenience, involving no special equipment or clothing (unlike many of the "new wave" recreational pursuits) and even less expense. It can be undertaken at virtually any time and in almost any location. Waiting at a bus-stop, for example, provides an ideal opportunity for study at close proximity. Here we find ourselves in the company of an assorted mix, thrown into one common situation and imprisoned by one common purpose; reactions to the situation however, are by no means uniform.

Firstly, the harassed mother with at least two children in tow - a common sight at bus stops throughout the country. Hurriedly dressed in a dubiously stained, multi-purpose tracksuit, the poor woman doesn't have a spare second. Her dirty-faced, chocolate-smeared children con-

5

10

stantly nag her to delve again and again into her seemingly bottomless shopping bag for sweeties, toys and other such childish paraphernalia. The arrival of the bus heralds yet more chaos; despite plenty of practice, the mother and her mini-entourage seem never to have mastered the art of getting on.

Secondly, we have the sandal-footed, denim-clad chap, the laid-back type who never looks at his watch nor leaps up at the first sign of a bus-like object in the distance. Instead he appears to have all the time in the world and no fixed destination in mind. One might even begin to wonder if, in fact, he is waiting for a bus at all, or simply practising some form of outdoor meditation. When his bus does arrive, he usually has to be goaded into action by some kindly fellow-queuer who fears that he might miss it altogether. 15 20

Of course, we also find the token OAP dressed in a woolly hat, thick overcoat and brown tights despite the mild weather. She wears a watch buried deep under layers of wool and tweed, but is forever asking the time either because she cannot see the numbers without her glasses, or simply because the item in question is too deeply submerged to be conveniently retrieved. When her bus comes into focus she has to check its number with at least half the queue before she is fully convinced and finally man-handled up the steps by a well-built conductor. 25

Other specimens for observation include the middle-aged gent who has somewhere "frightfully" important to get to and who acts as if the world will end if a number 49 doesn't come round the corner in the next three minutes. He checks his watch with intense irritation and tuts to himself continuously while checking his neatly-folded timetable. Of course, the minute he gives up on the marathon ordeal and hails himself a passing taxi, the object of his desire pulls up and sniggers are stifled all round. 30

We are also privy to the company of the cool dude who glances surreptitiously at the time (concealed beneath new black leather) for fear of looking uncool. A cigarette hangs from his mouth in true James Dean style and, behind his hearse-black sunglasses, his eyes constantly scan the street to "check out" his admiring audience. 35

The list is endless and includes yet more teenagers of various tendencies, young lovers, unashamedly oblivious to their surroundings and bickering couples several years further down Lover's Lane. But finally, what bus stop would be complete without its resident nutter haranguing a nearby rubbish bin and other equally communicative associates? 40

1. Why is people-watching "second to none for convenience" (lines 1 - 2)?
.....
.....
2. Give an alternative phrase for "an assorted mix" (line 5).
.....
.....
3. Why is the mother's tracksuit described as "dubiously stained" and "multi-purpose" (line 9)?
.....
.....
4. What does the phrase "childish paraphernalia" (line 12) refer to?
.....
.....
5. Why does the writer use the phrase "mastered the art" (line 13) in connection with getting on a bus?
.....
.....
.....
.....
6. What does "the item in question" (line 24) refer to?
.....
.....

Practice Test Thirteen

7. What peculiarities does the OAP demonstrate?
8. Give an alternative expression for "specimens for observation" (line 27).
9. In what sense is the wait a "marathon" (line 31)?
10. What is referred to in the phrase "object of his desire" (line 31)?
11. What attitude is suggested by the phrase "sniggers are stifled" (lines 31 - 32)?
12. Why have inverted commas been used with "check out" (line 36)?
13. What is "the list" referred to in line 37?
14. Explain in your own words what is meant by "several years further down Lover's Lane" (lines 38 - 39).
15. In a paragraph of 70-100 words, summarise the character types described in the passage.

Inversion

Inversion means changing the order of subject and verb in the sentence. It is used after certain expressions in order to give emphasis.

Inversion Type 1 with Auxiliary Verb

Negative Words	Clauses of Result	Inversion of the Main Clause	Conditionals
Not only ... Little ... No sooner ... than etc.	Such / So ... To such a degree ...	Only after ... Only by ... Only if ... Only when ... Not until / till ...	Should I ... (Type 1) Were I ... (Type 2) Had I ... (Type 3)

e.g. *No sooner had he got into the bath than the phone rang.*
Such a brilliant pianist was he that he carried off all the prizes.
Only by keeping a signal-fire burning did the woman manage to alert her rescuers.
Were you a brighter fellow, you'd have gone along with the scheme.

Inversion Type 2 without Auxiliary Verb

After adverbs of place or verbs of movement	After the quoted words in Direct Speech
<i>There goes Tom!</i> <i>Up went the balloon!</i>	<i>"I've just finished," said Tom.</i>

There are adverbs or adverbial phrases with a negative, restrictive or emphatic meaning which are followed by inversion when placed first in a sentence. The most common are:

Seldom Rarely Little Barely Nowhere Not even once In no way	Scarcely ... when Hardly ... when Many No sooner ... than Not only ... but On no occasion In / Under no circumstances	Only after On no account Only in this way Only by Only then Only when Only if	Neither/Nor/So Never before Never Not since Not till / until Well (formal) etc.
---	---	---	---

e.g. *"I like chicken." "So do I."*
Well did he remember the night the earthquake happened.
On no occasion was the prisoner allowed to leave his cell.
Never had he had such a terrifying experience.
Little did he know what his decision would lead to.

Note

only after, only by, only if, only when, not until/till when placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis require the inversion of the subject and the auxiliary verb in the main sentence.

e.g. *Only after all her guests had left did she wash the dishes.*
Only by standing on a chair could he reach the shelf.
Only if you show your passport can you exchange foreign currency.
Not till the last guest had left were we able to relax.



Structural Conversion

1. **All** her jewels had been taken and her money had gone as well.
Not only had all her jewels been taken but also her money.
2. **As soon as** he was promoted, he started behaving arrogantly.
No sooner had he been promoted than he started behaving arrogantly.
Hardly/Scarcely had he been promoted when he started behaving arrogantly.
3. **He had no** idea that the treasure had been hidden in his garden.
Little did he know that the treasure had been hidden in his garden.
4. **She danced so much** that she couldn't walk afterwards.
So much did she dance that she couldn't walk afterwards.
5. **It was such** a nice day that we went on an excursion.
Such a nice day was it that we went on an excursion.
6. **They finished** painting and then they moved into their new house.
Only after they had finished painting did they move into their new house.
7. **If I were** you, I would accept his offer.
Were I you, I would accept his offer.
8. **If I had** been told earlier, I would have reacted differently.
Had I been told earlier, I would have reacted differently.
9. **If I (should)** see him, I'll let you know.
Should I see him, I'll let you know.
10. **She didn't phone me**; she didn't drop me a line either.
She didn't phone me nor did she drop me a line./**She neither** phoned me, nor did she drop me a line.
11. **She won't** tell lies for any reason.
On no account will she tell lies.
12. **The thief ran** away.
Away ran the thief!

325 Finish the following sentences without changing the meaning of the sentences printed before them.

1. He has rarely been more than 5 kilometres away from his home.
Rarely
2. You must not mention this to him under any circumstances.
Under no
3. As soon as the teacher entered the classroom, the students stood up.
No sooner
4. They could only get to the island by hiring a helicopter.
Only by
5. I had no idea that John was a musician.
Little
6. She had never seen such a terrifying film.
Never
7. He will not reveal the secret for any reason.
On no account
8. There's no way I can get there by 5 o'clock.
No way
9. He is a fine tennis player and a good footballer as well.
Not
10. I haven't seen a better painting anywhere.
Nowhere
11. She talks so much that she drives everyone mad.
So
12. If I had thought about it, I wouldn't have spoken to him like that.
Had
13. They saw the extent of the damage when they switched on the light.
Only after
14. She remembered well the last time they met.
Well

15. I can only catch the train if I leave now.
Only if
16. It was only after he had seen her a second time that he realised who she was.
He saw her a second time. Only then
17. He wasn't clever; he didn't show eagerness to learn either.
He wasn't clever nor
18. I've never seen so many people at a party before.
Never before
19. He didn't see the lorry until it was too late.
Not until
20. The soldiers marched away.
Away

326 Rewrite the following conditionals using inversion.

1. If you had finished the work, we wouldn't be in such a mess now.
.....
2. If you lend me some money, I'll repay you tomorrow.
.....
3. If I'd seen you, I'd surely have spoken to you.
.....
4. If I were you, I'd be cautious in my dealings with that man.
.....
5. If you eat too many chocolates, you're bound to feel sick.
.....

327 Rewrite the sentences using "so" or "such" at the beginning.

1. She looked so ill that the boss sent her home.
.....
2. She had such a hard time getting there that she was exhausted.
.....
3. The children made so much noise that the neighbours complained.
.....
4. It was such a dull film that I almost fell asleep.
.....
5. He was so pleased to get the prize that he didn't know what to say.
.....

328 Finish the following sentences giving the correct reply.

1. "I'm awfully tired today." "So"
2. "I've never read any of her books." "Nor"
3. "We're going to the cinema tonight." "So"
4. "I wouldn't do that." "Nor"
5. "I can't understand a word he says." "Nor"

329 Fill in the blanks with a suitable word or phrase practising inversion.

e.g. Only **by shouting** was he able to make himself heard.

1. Never such a ridiculous song.
2. No than the boss sent her out on an errand.
3. Only we arrive on time.
4. Under you reveal our plan to our competitors.
5. Rarely such an excellent performance.

6. Had, you wouldn't have agreed to his proposal so quickly.
7. Never such bad weather as this winter.
8. Only after the Board decide to cut expenditure.
9. In he be considered fit for the job.
10. Not three hotels but also two yachts. They are so rich!

330 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original, but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. As soon as she moved in, the neighbours started complaining.
SOONER

2. He finished the book and then he switched on the TV.
ONLY

3. We didn't eat at the party; we didn't drink either.
NOR

4. He lost his job and his wife left him as well.
NOT

5. Were I in your shoes, I'd give it some more thought.
IF

6. We had no idea that the holiday would be so expensive.
LITTLE

7. Should you hear from him, tell him to ring me.
IF

8. She won't join our group for any reason.
ACCOUNT

9. I made mistakes in the composition and in the questions as well.
ONLY

10. Had they rung me, I'd have gone with them.
IF

11. I don't go to the cinema often.
RARELY

12. Joan had never seen such beautiful architecture anywhere else.
NOWHERE

13. We left the room and then we started laughing.
ONLY

14. I haven't met such a rude man before.
NEVER

Consolidation 14

331 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

The Sun is the brightest object in our solar (1), the centre around which we (2) and without (3) life on Earth could not exist. At one (4) people believed that the Sun encircled the Earth; our knowledge has (5) considerably since then, (6) to sophisticated equipment. The Sun is in fact a star of the type (7) as "yellow dwarfs" and has a volume more than a million times (8) than that of our planet. Although to the naked (9) the Sun and Moon appear to be (10) the same size (most noticeable (11) eclipses), the Sun is in fact about 400 times (12) distant from us than the Moon. In 1922 the International Astronomical Union calculated (13) average distance from the Earth (14) 92,897,000 miles, but this figure is (15) to change as modern technology enables us to make more (16) calculations. Light emitted (17) the Sun takes approximately eight minutes to (18) us; if it were suddenly to go out, it would take that (19) until we realised (20) had happened!

Phrasal Verbs 1

talk about : 1) gossip about sb
2) consider

talk at : speak to sb without listening to his replies

talk back : reply rudely

talk down to : speak to sb as if they were less clever than oneself

talk into : persuade sb to do sth

talk out : settle a problem by talking

talk out of : persuade sb not to do sth

talk round : persuade sb to agree to sth

tell against : show negative evidence

tell apart : distinguish

tell off : scold

think of : take sth into account

think out : produce by thinking

think over : reflect upon sth before making a decision

think up : invent or devise sth

332 Fill in the correct preposition or adverb.

1. He was against the plan at first, but they managed to talk him **round**.
2. Ann was told by her father for coming home late.
3. You can't talk me giving you more money. I've given you enough.
4. His lack of a convincing alibi will tell him at the trial.
5. Our boss talks us as if we were idiots.
6. He insisted that children who talk ought to be severely punished.
7. If you can't talk your differences, you'd better break up.
8. Stop behaving like that or the neighbours will start to talk you.
9. The only way I can tell the twins is by their haircut.
10. He keeps talking moving to another city, but I doubt if he will.
11. I've never had a real "conversation" with Peter; he just talks you.
12. My parents advised me to think things before accepting the job.
13. Racing drivers rarely think the dangers involved in their profession.
14. She thought her ideas carefully before putting them down on paper.
15. We need to think an exciting advertising campaign for our new product.
16. Jane was so determined to become a model that her parents couldn't talk her it.

Phrasal Verbs 2

333 Look at Appendix 1 and fill in the correct preposition or adverb from the box below, then give a synonym for each phrasal verb.

away, in, on, out, off, up, down, over, into, to

- I'd better turn **in** early. I didn't sleep well last night.
- They want to turn that basement room a wine cellar.
- Hundreds of people turned to welcome the Royal Family back to London.
- Please turn the page and study the table given there.
- When her business failed, she turned her parents for financial help.
- Although Mark said he'd be there at 8.00, he didn't turn until 10.30.
- Could you turn that light? I can't see very well.
- I offered to help him but he turned me
- We were turned at the door of the club for being improperly dressed.
- You ought to turn the heat before the sauce burns.
- That factory turns hundreds of small appliances every day.
- The lorry turned in the middle of the motorway, causing an enormous pile-up.
- He turned to be a liar and a thief.
- I have a feeling I forgot to turn the cooker before we left.
- Could you please turn the volume a bit? I can't hear it very well.
- The woman turned her son to the police because he was selling drugs.

Idioms 1

334 Look at Appendix 2 and explain the following idioms in bold italics.

- I don't think we have **a cat in hell's chance** of finishing this work by the deadline.
- The politician **put the cat among pigeons** by causing a national scandal.
- Those two have **fought like cat and dog** since the day they got married.
- You can ask me **until the cows come home** but I'll never agree.
- Peter made such **a pig of himself**; it's no surprise he's got a stomach-ache now.
- London to Birmingham is about 180 miles **as the crow flies**.
- I heard it **straight from the horse's mouth** so I know it's true.
- The woman **made a fool of** herself when she knocked over a display in a crowded shop.
- Something must have made John really angry; he's been **like a bear with a sore head** all day.
- We don't need any more furniture - there's **no room to swing a cat** in here as it is!
- I managed to **kill two birds with one stone** by inviting the boss to dinner; I made a good impression and got some useful information.
- It's time to **take the bull by the horns** instead of trying to avoid reaching a decision.
- Ann has **got a bee in her bonnet** about people talking about her behind her back.
- It is **raiding cats and dogs**; we'll have to cancel the fête.
- I'm sure things can't possibly be so bad; you're just **making a mountain out of a molehill**.
- The man broke a vase and knocked over two chairs; he was **like a bull in a china shop**.
- The thriller was based on a maniac **playing cat and mouse** with his blind victim in a deserted house.
- Kate has been **as busy as a bee / a busy bee** getting everything ready for tonight's party.
- He was so tired of **the rat race** that he gave up his job in the city and moved to an island.
- I accidentally **let the cat out of the bag** when I mentioned that I'd seen Jim and Mandy together.
- Any mention of animal abuse to Tony is like **a red rag to a bull**.
- Jack **bought it** when he was accidentally caught in the crossfire of a gang war.

Idioms 2

335 Look at Appendix 2 and explain the following idioms in bold italics.

- Some people think this country has been **going to the dogs** since the 1970s.
- The terrorists said that the dead soldiers had been "**sitting ducks**".
- An old friend who I haven't seen for **donkey's years** called me today.
- The old man felt like a **fish out of water** at the children's tea party.
- Seeing life as a case of **dog eat dog**, he treated people ruthlessly for his own benefit.
- Ronald was so thick-skinned that all his boss's criticisms were **like water off a duck's back**.
- I'm not lending him any more books; they always come back **dog-eared**.
- The hairdresser made such a **dog's dinner / breakfast** of my hair that I had to have it done again.
- "What you're talking about is a **different kettle of fish**; let's keep to the point."
- Sarah is so depressed that she has been **drinking like a fish** since she split up with her boyfriend.
- If I don't remember her birthday, I'll **be in the doghouse**.
- Our business rivals **cooked our goose** by making a higher bid for the company.
- Steve was fed up with doing **the donkey work** while his colleagues were given interesting jobs.
- Jane is a real **night owl**; she loves going to discos and staying up late.
- Richard could **talk the hind legs off a donkey** with stories of his army days.
- Don't rush into a decision. Just **hold your horses** and wait for a while.
- My nephew was brought up near the sea and could **swim like a fish** from the age of four.
- We tried so many times to persuade him to come but it was obvious we were **flogging a dead horse**.
- The lawyer advised me not to pursue the matter but to **let sleeping dogs lie**.
- Being in the army was a real **dog's life**; up at 6 a.m. every day, no money and irregular leave.

Prepositions

336 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the correct preposition.

- to have no intention **of** helping sb
- to be guaranteed breakage
- to result an accident
- a visitor the city
- to sigh pleasure
- a sequel a film
- to stay good
- fruits season
- to resign your job
- the matter hand
- death drowning
- to struggle your rights
- to feature the cinema
- to have a talent acting
- entry the EEC
- to keep sth secret a friend
- to take a shot the enemy
- to buy sth a discount
- bags shopping
- to be satisfied the results
- a choice drinks
- to trip a stone
- a doctor profession
- freedom speech
- to be valid five years
- to fall in love first sight
- the bearer good news
- a decline standards
- a bus crowded tourists
- the bottom the sea
- to admit a fault
- to be full life
- to be trouble with the law
- to live the suburbs
- on top the world
- to fall despair
- a series disasters
- dance the dance floor
- sing the top of one's voice
- to have your heart your mouth
- to live the outskirts
- to stand president
- to bestow someone gifts
- to fail an attempt

337 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the correct preposition.

1. Having always been good **at** maths, he decided to study it to degree level when he went to University.
2. She's very good animals and every morning takes food out to the stray dogs in the street.
3. It will be good Thomas to have a strict teacher; he's never had any discipline at home.
4. The new wonder watch from Seiko is guaranteed any type of breakage including water damage and accident!
5. His new stereo system was expensive but it's guaranteed fifteen years so it was worthwhile paying more.
6. There is a popular superstition which says that anyone who has a gap their two front teeth will be lucky throughout their life.
7. A strong draught blew into the room through the gap the door.
8. Ruth was a genius mathematics and was awarded a scholarship to Cambridge when she was only fourteen years old.
9. She has a real genius languages and has already mastered the rudiments of Greek!
10. He's a genius a pencil and can capture a likeness in a few deft strokes.
11. I've just heard his unexpected promotion.
12. My sister is worried because she hasn't heard her boyfriend for days.
13. Have you heard the lake "Loch Ness" in Scotland?
14. Nervous about facing an interview panel she hesitated the door and took a deep breath before entering the room.
15. She hesitated taking any action, hoping all the while that there was no real cause for alarm.
16. I can't honestly say that I'm happy your decision but I respect your right to privacy and won't interfere.
17. He doesn't seem to be very happy his new girlfriend; he always looks rather worried and depressed these days.
18. As she handed over a gift she said that she hoped we would be very happy our new home.
19. The dispute occurred because the manager is so hopeless people; he has absolutely no idea of how to handle his workforce.
20. Delia is so hopeless Chemistry that she has taken her Chemistry exam four times and failed every time.

338 For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. *Photography interests me.*

FIND

I find photography interesting.

1. She is well-known for her vast knowledge of Renaissance painting.
AUTHORITY
2. He couldn't explain the difference between the two sets of instructions.
ACCOUNT
3. The members of the government have failed to agree on the new budget.
REACHED
4. We liked the new teacher right away.
TOOK
5. Everyone knows they are wealthy.
KNOWN

6. The novel fell short of my expectations.
COME
7. He owed his success to his uncle.
INDEBTED
8. Mary was surprised to learn that she had got the job.
CAME
9. They ceased to find his jokes amusing.
LONGER
10. Tulips were abundant in the fields.
GREW

339 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case **it gets** cold.

1. If only he the truth from the beginning!
2. This is your last week in Greece so you really should of it.
3. They agreed that no measures before the manager came back from holiday.
4. They packed an extra blanket with their camping gear in cold.
5. It was him to walk past me without saying anything.
6. The lecture at the university was very interesting. You really come.
7. You should than try lying to me.
8. If I had known you were coming, I prepared lunch.
9. "Could I speak to Paula, please?" "I'm sorry. She from work yet."
10. "How long for this company?" "Ever since I came to Greece."

340 Find the mistake and correct it.

1. He is regarded to be an excellent scientist.
2. He fell into sleep as soon as his head hit the pillow.
3. It was so a boring speech that I fell asleep.
4. He spends most of his leisure time on playing golf.
5. They spent a wonderful time on their honeymoon.
6. He is a complete foreigner to me.
7. She suggested to take an early morning flight.
8. I suggest you seeking medical treatment immediately.
9. Could you say me the time, please?
10. It's six months that our son disappeared.
11. The Mona Liza is painted by Da Vinci.
12. He had to walk till the nearest petrol station.
13. In my opinion, he was given too lenient punishment.
14. I was too depressed when I received the bad news.
15. I must apologise for having put you to such troubles.
16. She suddenly realised that he has been lying all along.
17. She is serving a ten years sentence for manslaughter.
18. She finally succeeded with using her initiative.
19. The state of the economy is worst than ever.
20. Fresh fruit and vegetables have a high nutritional worth.
21. Bob recommended to eat at this café.
22. She mustn't have been at the party; she is in Paris.

considered

Word usage

341 Fill in the numbered blanks choosing the word which fits best. The first one has been done for you.

Made (1) **from** good quality cowhide, this unisex belt bag is ideal for travelling or any other energetic outdoor pursuit where it is beneficial to have both hands (2) Compact and lightweight, the bag (3) 8" x 4½" and fits up to a 41" waist. The main zipped section, and a flapover compartment with pop fastening are large enough to (4) sunglasses, a passport, a small camera and more. There is also a small zipped pocket (5) for coins. Available in black, navy and brown for £15.50, (6) included. Our slim, hideaway travel wallet is (7) to slot over a belt and sit securely in position under trousers or a skirt. Features (8) a strong stitched band, a full length zipped pocket for notes, travel cards etc., and a small zipped section which is ideal for postage stamps or a key. Measuring a compact 7" x 4", this (9) black leather wallet is available for only £5.95. Return within seven days for a (10) if not completely satisfied.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A) off | B) of | C) from | D) by |
| 2. A) free | B) deliberate | C) available | D) loose |
| 3. A) weighs | B) measures | C) counts | D) adds |
| 4. A) snatch | B) grip | C) grasp | D) take |
| 5. A) suitable | B) convenient | C) able | D) enough |
| 6. A) transport | B) offer | C) delivery | D) gift |
| 7. A) featured | B) planned | C) designed | D) aimed |
| 8. A) include | B) contain | C) hold | D) take |
| 9. A) refined | B) intriguing | C) delicate | D) fine |
| 10. A) receipt | B) refund | C) loan | D) guarantee |

342 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. The Prime Minister has retracted the controversial statement he made about nuclear arms. (retracted , extracted, pulled out, renounced) | 6. The baby was by a bee whilst eating sweets. (bitten , pricked, stung, stabbed) |
| 2. The King was forced to his right to the throne when he married a divorcee. (extract , pull out, renounce, retract) | 7. He was set upon by hooligans in a dark alleyway and several times through the heart. (pricked , stabbed, stung, bitten) |
| 3. NATO has ordered its troops to of the area. (pull out , extract, renounce, retract) | 8. The prisoner categorically any connection with the crime. (refuses , denies, rejects, revokes) |
| 4. The text was complicated and therefore very difficult to information from. (extract , renounce, retract, pull out) | 9. Following a drink-driving charge, his driving licence was by the court. (refused , denied, revoked, rejected) |
| 5. She her finger on a sharp rose thorn. (stung , bit, stabbed, pricked) | 10. Sue begged Tom to help but he (denied , refused, rejected, revoked) |

343 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	your rival	a match	money	a prize	sb up	a war	the clock	the pools	all opposition	hands down
beat	✓									
win										

Practice Test Fourteen

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809 - 1892) is regarded (1) one of the great English poets and a powerful voice from the Victorian Age. Born the (2) of a parson, he (3) Trinity College, Cambridge, winning a medal for his poetry. However, his (4) published work, (5) the age of twenty one, attracted (6) attention from the public and it was not until twelve years (7) that a third volume, "Poems", was to (8) him the recognition he deserved. Many of those poems from his youth are (9) among his most famous. (10) the death of William Wordsworth in 1850, Tennyson had (11) himself sufficiently to take his (12) as Poet Laureate and it was during this period that some of his finest works were produced. The themes of his poetry (13) from Medieval Romance to the forces of nature and through them constant attacks are (14) on the brutal hypocrisy of the Victorian era. There are those (15) would (16) that this last area was more skilfully dealt (17) by the Victorian novelists rather than the poets, (18) the strength of Tennyson's writings has ensured his (19) among the great literary (20) of history.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.

Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. He urged them to stay where they were.

They

- b. Is it necessary for me to bring a reference?

Do

- c. I don't want you to eat any ice-cream.

I'd rather

- d. They seldom have visitors.

Seldom

- e. In spite of many difficulties, progress is being made.

We are

- f. We don't have to go back to the office.

There's no

- g. Suppose I was eaten by a crocodile?

What

- h. It's the best we can do.

We can't

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.

- 1. It to the airport that he realised he had forgotten his passport.
 - 2. Only after he had moved to another city, ... a better job.
 - 3. By the time they met a great deal about him.
 - 4. He'd sooner you biting your nails.
 - 5. It's such I left the village that I hardly remember what it's like.
 - 6. She was and sentenced to three years in prison.
4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*

- | | |
|--|--------|
| 1. She was delighted with her new car. | PINK |
| | |
| 2. My husband will be angry when I tell him. | ROOF |
| | |
| 3. It's all the same to us. | MAKES |
| | |
| 4. Julie and Andrew like the same sort of music. | TASTE |
| | |
| 5. John left the room very quickly. | EXIT |
| | |
| 6. Every month food prices are rising. | HIGHER |
| | |
| 7. John knows everything about motorbikes. | EXPERT |
| | |
| 8. I'd rather not go to the cinema tonight. | PREFER |
| | |

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

The national curriculum is a topic which is constantly under review, with new proposals arising and updated concepts being produced to ensure that students receive a better and more rounded education. Britain introduced the GCSE system in 1987, making, (in addition to traditional subjects) language and science compulsory until the age of sixteen. The syllabus was changed with the emphasis on continual assessment as opposed to just one day's performance. Certainly the abolition of the "it'll be all right on the night" mentality is a step in the right direction, but how far does the education system educate? 5

There has always been an emphasis on academic success, especially in the wake of world-wide recession; students from all social and economic backgrounds are being encouraged to "stay on" after the legal school leaving age. Simple mathematics convey the inherent disadvantages of this strategy; too many graduates for too few jobs. But there are also other problems which are less apparent. In South Korea, the pressure to have a college education is so great that it has reached 10

fatal proportions. Horror stories are common, one nineteen-year-old jumped from the top of a Seoul apartment building because she was so worried about her exam performance. Such measures are not altogether surprising when one considers that every year nine hundred thousand applicants apply to the country's one hundred and fifteen institutes of higher education, resulting in the admittance of only one in four. 15

On the other side of the coin, what happens to the students who fall through the net? With growing competition for jobs and university places, the standard is constantly rising. So what happens to those members of society who simply are not academically bright? It is not a new or radical observation that notes how the classroom backbenchers are pushed further and further into a low achievement bracket. Despite the onslaught into the field of formal qualifications, several million people in Europe are reported to be illiterate. In January 1992, the USA admitted that twenty per cent of high school graduates were not able to read their own diplomas. 20

Where does the buck stop? Students are often forced to learn by rote long lists of data and details. This information blast can result in the sponge syndrome whereby pupils soak up statistics and reproduce them without much, if any, individual thought or interpretation of the facts. There is more to learning than simply mimicking something that has been fed into you. Humans are not memory banks and this is something that the education system quite often seems to overlook. 25

There have been calls for more vocational training schemes with emphasis on technology and creativity. Without such a system, education will continue to function in society as a weeding-out process whereby those who are not capable of obtaining paper qualifications are branded as underachievers. When school leavers move into the big bad world, professionals are treated with more respect than tradesmen. Why? Have tradesmen not spent several years perfecting their skills? One can be educated and yet not hold a formal qualification to one's name; there is more to learning than books and examinations. 30 35

Educational snobbery is something that quite a few of us are guilty of. It's time to learn the difference between being educated and being qualified. It's time the education system began placing emphasis on education rather than on academic achievement. Education is certainly no burden on anyone's back. Let's get the ball rolling. 40

1. Give an alternative phrase for a "more rounded education". (lines 2 - 3)
.....
.....
2. What does "one day's performance" refer to? (line 5)
.....
.....
3. Explain what the writer means by the "it'll be all right on the night" mentality. (line 6)
.....
.....
4. What problems have occurred as a result of encouraging students to continue their education?
.....
.....
.....
5. What does the phrase "fall through the net" mean in the text. (line 18)
.....
.....
.....

Conjunctions / Double Conjunctions / Conjuncts
Punctuation

A. Conjunctions - Double Conjunctions - Conjuncts

Conjunctions are used to join two parts of a sentence. There are two types of conjunctions:
a) **co-ordinating** conjunctions which join parts of a sentence which are equivalent and
b) **subordinating** conjunctions which join a subordinate clause to a main clause.

e.g. <i>She put on her coat</i>	⇐ and ⇐	<i>left.</i>	<i>You can leave</i>	⇐ if ⇐	<i>you want.</i>
(main clause)		(main clause)	(main clause)		(subordinate clause)

Double conjunctions consist of two linking words separated by one or more words.

Co-ordinating conjunctions

Simple Conjunctions	Double Conjunctions	Meaning
and <i>I like apples and oranges.</i>	both ... and not only ... but (also) <i>He was both handsome and rich.</i>	addition
but <i>I saw John but I didn't see Sam.</i>	not ... but <i>It's not navy blue but black.</i>	contrast
or <i>Are you English or American?</i>	either ... or <i>Either stop talking or leave the room.</i>	alternative
nor <i>I can't help you, nor do I wish to help.</i>	neither ... nor <i>He is neither kind nor sympathetic.</i>	negative addition

Note

The comma is optional before a co-ordinating conjunction. However, we never put a comma when part of the first sentence is omitted in the second.
e.g. *Do you want tea (,) **or** would you like some coffee?*
*You can **either** have a Coke **or** a beer.*

Subordinating Conjunctions

Conjunctions	Double Conjunctions	Meaning
as, than, like, as if, as though <i>He acts as if he were the boss.</i>	as so as as <i>He is as naughty as a monkey.</i>	comparison
(al)though, while, whereas, despite, even if, even though, on the other hand, in contrast <i>We're friends even though we've got little in common.</i>	although yet <i>Although he's not running for President, yet he's willing to help in the campaign.</i>	contrast

Presentation 15

Conjunctions	Double Conjunctions	Meaning
if, unless, given (that), provided (that), providing, as long as, in case <i>We're going on an excursion unless it starts raining.</i>	if then <i>If it's sunny, then we'll go swimming.</i>	condition
but, except (for), apart from, despite, in spite of <i>Everyone came except (for) John.</i>		exception
as far as <i>The land belongs to us as far as the eye can see.</i>	so that <i>We drove so far that we ran out of petrol.</i>	extent
where, wherever <i>Wherever he goes, he causes trouble.</i>		place
rather / sooner than <i>Rather than help, he prefers to hinder.</i>		preference
	so as, the ... the <i>England isn't nearly so hot as Greece. The more noise you make, the more annoyed I get.</i>	proportion
as, because, since, on the grounds that, seeing (that), why, for, so as to, in order, etc. <i>I don't know why he was late. The Knight refused to kill his enemy, for they had been friends.</i>		reason
such / so that, consequently <i>They left work early so that they could watch football on TV.</i>		result
if, whether <i>Terry asked Sue whether / if she could come to the party.</i>	whether or <i>I'm going home now whether you like it or not.</i>	indirect question, alternative condition
when, whenever, as, while, now (that), before, until, till, after, since, once, etc. <i>I cry whenever I watch a sad film. The baby cried until he was blue in the face.</i>		time
what, who, whom, whose, which, that <i>This is the man whose daughter is a famous singer.</i>		relative

A comma is placed between a subordinate clause and the main clause when the subordinate clause is at the beginning or seems to be separated from the main clause because of its meaning.
 e.g. *If the weather improves, we can go to the beach.*
but *We can go to the beach if the weather improves.*

Conjuncts are adverbs / conjunctions which are used to join two or more clauses or sentences. These are:

A.	besides	1) (adv) in addition, moreover, anyway, in any case (preceding the clause to be introduced). e.g. <i>I don't feel well enough to go out today; besides, I don't have any money.</i> 2) (prep) in addition to (preceding a noun / gerund / pronoun). e.g. <i>Besides being disappointed, she was also rather angry.</i>
B.	therefore	(conj) so (placed at the beginning of the clause, after the first phrase or before the main verb). e.g. <i>I won't be able to accompany you this evening, therefore you'll have to go alone.</i>
C.	however	1) (adv) no matter how (preceding an adj / adv). e.g. <i>I can't excuse your behaviour however drunk you were.</i> 2) (conj) but (preceding or following its clause or placed after the first word or phrase). e.g. <i>She's an intelligent student. However, she talks too much in class. Delius is a famous composer. Mozart, however, is more famous.</i>
D.	otherwise	1) (adv) In another or different way (placed after the verb). e.g. <i>I expected him to be studying but he was otherwise occupied.</i> 2) (conj) if not, or else, or . e.g. <i>You must hurry, otherwise you'll miss the train.</i>
E.	so	(conj) for this reason (preceding a clause). e.g. <i>She has measles so she won't be at work this week.</i>
F.	still	(conj) nevertheless . e.g. <i>I don't agree with what she's done; still/nevertheless, she's my sister and I must support her.</i>
G.	yet	(conj) in spite of, nevertheless . e.g. <i>He studied a lot, yet he failed the exam.</i>
H.	nevertheless	1) (adv) however, still . e.g. <i>Though very shy, he nevertheless makes an effort to socialise.</i> 2) (conj) at the beginning or end of the sentence . e.g. <i>It was snowing. Nevertheless, the football match went on as planned.</i>
I.	though	1) (adv) however (end of sentence). e.g. <i>I'm not sure of the price. I think it's £10 though.</i> 2) (conj) despite the fact that . e.g. <i>He learnt to speak French quickly though he's not much of a linguist.</i>

These conjunctions can be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas if the meaning of the two clauses seems to be separate.
 e.g. *He didn't want to go. **However**, he eventually did.*

344 *Join the two sentences using the word(s) in brackets.*

1. We waited for the sun to go down. We went for a walk. (until ... before)
2. The lecture was very boring. Tom fell asleep. (consequently)
3. Bob was untidily dressed. He couldn't enter the restaurant. (too ... to)
4. Sheila won't drive a car when she is drunk. She is sensible. (enough ... not to)
5. This food is very salty. I don't like it. (too ... for)
6. Susan gave John some extra money. She thought he might need it. (in case)
7. The hiker had a broken foot. He managed to walk ten miles. (even though)
8. Their requests were reasonable. Even so, they should not have staged a demonstration. (as)
9. I heard the cry. I knew immediately that the child was hurt. (as soon as)
10. Mr Harris is a millionaire. He owns six Rolls Royces. (who)

345 *Join the two sentences using the word(s) in brackets.*

1. Dogs are sociable animals. Cats can be very anti-social. (while)
2. Tim felt sick for over a week. Finally, he called a doctor. (before)
3. I would like to see a quick end to this terrible regime. I do not believe that violence is the solution. (much as)
4. I bought my mother some flowers. I wanted to cheer her up. (in order)
5. Matthew travelled around Europe. Then he settled down in England. (not ... until)
6. I was very foolish. I trusted John. (such ... as to)
7. The climbers reached base camp. A terrible storm started. (hardly ... when)
8. I hoped I would be able to swim. I took my swimsuit with me. (hoping)
9. The plane touched down. It burst into flames. (hardly ... when)
10. The buses were on strike. Mr Smith had to take a taxi. (therefore)

346 *Join the two sentences using the word(s) in brackets.*

1. She waited for a lawyer to read the document. Then she signed it. (until ... before)
2. You are not listening to the radio. We can turn it off. (since)
3. Mark has no money. He can't go to the cinema. (therefore)

4. You might get cold. I'll leave some extra blankets on the bed. (in case)
5. The police phoned us. We realised something was seriously wrong. (not ... until)
6. These people are very sociable. They appear reserved at first. (despite)
7. John read the question carefully. He started writing. (after)
8. We ate Chinese food. It was delicious. (which)
9. I had to punish the child. There was nothing else I could do. (except)
10. Matthew's house is big. George's house is much smaller. (nearly ... as)

347 Join the two sentences using the word(s) in brackets.

1. I have worked as a waiter. I have also worked as a barman. (apart from)
2. The car has been voted Car of the Year. Its engine has been modified. (of which)
3. The building was evacuated. The bomb went off. (hardly ... when)
4. You may have been right. Nevertheless, you shouldn't have hit Mark. (though)
5. I have taken up aerobics. I want to get fit. (in order)
6. I will take an umbrella. It might rain. (in case ... should)
7. He saw the film. He understood the point of the book. (not until ... that)
8. We are extremely late. We must hurry. (therefore)
9. The tour guide waited for everyone to arrive. The coach departed for the museum. (until ... before)
10. She tried on several dresses. She decided which one to buy. (not ... until)

348 Join the following sentences using an appropriate conjunction.

1. I don't see why I should help when I don't know him. The matter hasn't got anything to do with me.
2. The director won't be present at the meeting. He will expect you to report back to him.
3. I don't want to go abroad. I'd prefer to stay in this country.
4. Everyone was invited to the wedding. Only George wasn't.
5. He has been on a diet for two months. He still hasn't lost weight.
6. I missed the 5 o'clock train. There is another in 5 minutes.
7. Pay the bill immediately. I'll call the police.

8. He has to leave now. He'll be late for work.
9. She doesn't love him any longer. She won't end the relationship.
10. He's an arrogant man. He's also extremely rude.
11. I don't know him. I don't wish to know him.
12. He would like to assist with the project. He won't be available until January.
13. The charge is very serious. I'll still defend you.
14. We arranged a meeting. We wanted to discuss the arrangements.
15. Dolphins are said to be very clever. They are almost like humans.
16. The accident was caused by bad road conditions. The driver had also been drinking.
17. He's been thrown out of the club many times. He always turns up at every social event.
18. Eat your meal. The food will get cold.
19. They have two cars. They also have a yacht.
20. She tried hard. She couldn't remember him.
21. The prisoner was hungry. He refused to eat anything.
22. Their car was stolen. It was found by the police.
23. You must cancel the booking. You'll lose your money.
24. He speaks French. He also speaks German and Spanish.
25. A Georgian house was used in the film "Wuthering Heights". This is the one.
26. He jumped out of the plane. His parachute got caught on the wing.

349 *Fill in the blanks with an appropriate linking word or phrase.*

It seemed such an attractive (1) **yet** relatively simple idea at first. People in Britain would be trudging through damp and miserable streets vainly trying to find a Christmas gift which Aunt Edna would actually like (2) my friend and I would be sipping cocktails on a sun-kissed beach. That was the theory. (3), in reality it turned out to be rather stressful! Given our schedule, we were unable to leave (4) the office closed on December 24th. (5), as we discovered, all flights were fully booked on that day. We decided, (6) a short holiday was better than no holiday at all, to book flights on the 25th. No (7) had we done so than the flights over Christmas were cancelled and we were transferred to the 24th. (8) we were concerned, the changes were preferable. (9) we arrived in Hawaii, however, we were met by some rather alarming news. (10) our flight had been changed, our accommodation reservations had not. It appeared that there was "no room at the Inn" on Christmas Eve for two weary travellers, (11) a small hut in the grounds used by the owner to keep his dog in! We sat on the beach on Christmas day having spent a singularly sleepless night and (12) the sunshine and our cocktails we were both suspiciously silent. Where, oh where, were the mince pies and the rain? Come back, Christmas in Britain!

350 Fill in the blanks with an appropriate linking word or phrase.

(1) **As far as** John knew, his village had not changed since the last time he had been there five years before. (2) the few births and deaths which took place there, nothing ever seemed to change; so that, (3) there had been a disaster of some sort (4) some developer had bought up the place (5) transformed it into a funfair, it seemed likely that everything would be exactly the same. (6), when he arrived and began to look around, he realised that, (7) nothing had changed dramatically, (8) he looked subtle changes had been made. It looked to John (9) the modern spirit had passed through the ancient village, (10), because of its isolation, had been protected for so many years, (11) had changed not (12) much the appearance of the place (13) its atmosphere. (14) the architecture had been carefully preserved, TV antennas and other small additions made it clear that internal changes were being made; and (15) the gardens were still perfectly kept, the variety of plants and flowers seemed to have diminished drastically. Neither, judging from the drapes and curtains, had the traditional styles of decoration been preserved. (16), the biggest change was the last to strike him. In contrast to the shady atmosphere he remembered, everything was as brightly lit as a desert. (17) one or two small ones, all the ancient trees had been cut down (18) the village no longer had its green protective cover.

351 Fill in the blanks with an appropriate linking word or phrase.

(1) **Despite** his reluctance to go on the school trip, Peter agreed to go along, but only (2) he didn't have to supervise any of the activities. (3) he quite enjoyed being with children, he had never had to manage large groups of them, and (4) he was afraid that he wouldn't be able to control them. But (5) their promise, (6) they arrived at the hotel, the other leaders assigned a group of children to him (7) left him to deal with them (8) he could. (9) one older boy, all the children were under the age of 11, and (10) he tried to do, it seemed that he could not keep them quiet or happy. Rather than give up and ask for help, he racked his brains to find a way to entertain them. But (11) half the children were quite happy to do what he suggested, the other half refused to co-operate and (12) his nerves were soon in shreds. One child, (13) crying hardly stopped for a second, became the focus of Peter's impatience; (14) he tried to control himself, (15) he was responsible for keeping the children in order, he soon lost his temper with the poor, weeping child and began to shout. (16) he kept his cool, the group was reasonably calm, (17) the result of his shouting was complete chaos. (18) with the behaviour of the other groups, his was like a tribe of savages. After this, (19) he was concerned, he would never have anything to do with children again.

B. Punctuation

1. Full stop [.]

A full stop is used:

- i) to indicate the end of a sentence.
e.g. *He usually finishes work at 7 o'clock.*
- ii) in direct speech, to indicate the end of a spoken sentence.
e.g. *He said, "I'll probably be late home tonight."*
- iii) in certain abbreviations, such as M.A., e.g., i.e., etc.
e.g. *Although he had a Ph.D. in Philosophy, he found it difficult to find a job.*

but

UFO

2. Question Mark [?]

A **question mark** is used:

- i) at the end of a direct question.
e.g. *What's the time?*
- ii) at the end of a question in reported speech.
e.g. *"Why are you late?" the teacher asked.*
- iii) at the end of question tags.
e.g. *You've finished, haven't you?*

3. Exclamation Mark [!]

An **exclamation mark** is used:

- i) at the end of an exclamatory sentence.
e.g. *I can hardly believe it!*
- ii) at the end of an exclamation in direct speech.
e.g. *"What an extraordinary coincidence!" she exclaimed.*

4. Comma [,]

A **comma** is used:

- i) to separate items in a list of nouns, adjectives, adverbs or clauses.
e.g. *She answered the question carefully, thoughtfully, accurately and appropriately.*
- ii) to separate main clauses which describe consecutive actions.
e.g. *He stormed out of the room, slammed the door behind him and left the class speechless.*
- iii) after a subordinate clause which precedes the main clause.
e.g. *When we first arrived in this country, we found many things strange and intimidating.*
If we see him, we'll tell him what you said.
but *We'll tell him what you said if we see him.*
- iv) before and after a non-defining relative clause.
e.g. *This grammar book, which was published last year, is one of the best I've ever used.*
- v) to separate an introductory word or phrase from the main part of the sentence.
e.g. *To be honest, we're not sure yet of the possible results.*
- vi) after "Yes" or "No" at the beginning of a sentence.
e.g. *No, I don't know where your glasses are.*
- vii) in direct speech.
e.g. *"I've got a lot of work to do," he said, "so I'd better go home now."*
The girl said, "I seem to have lost my purse."

5. Colon [:]

A **colon** is used:

- i) before words or phrases which refer back to the statement preceding the colon and give a fuller explanation of the statement (which makes complete sense on its own).
e.g. *The treatment was a complete success: all traces of the disease were eradicated.*

- ii) to introduce examples (which might be complete sentences in themselves).
 e.g. *If you go trekking in these regions, the following items are essential: a torch, a first-aid kit and a compass.*
Deposits on hired cars will be kept by the company in the following circumstances: when the car is damaged in any way, when it is returned late or when the tank has not been refilled.
- iii) to introduce a quotation.
 e.g. *Whenever I go through Customs at an airport, I am always tempted to repeat Oscar Wilde's classic comment: "I have nothing to declare except my genius."*

6. Semi-colon [;]

A semi-colon is used:

- i) to divide parts of a sentence each of which is a complete sentence on its own, but whose meanings are closely connected. It shows a pause which is longer than a comma but shorter than a full stop.
 e.g. *Some critics considered him the best actor of his generation; others believed he never quite lived up to his early promise.*
She was badly-dressed and slovenly in her appearance; the contrast to her sister could not have been greater.

7. Dash [—]

A dash is used:

- i) to separate a word or phrase which is independent of the rest of the sentence. It may precede a comment or definition, or serve to emphasise the words which follow.
 e.g. *Anger, fear, frustration, disappointment — a whole range of emotions appeared on his face.*
Despite all his assets — and they were considerable — his business enterprise failed.
- ii) to show an interruption in speech.
 e.g. *"But Sarah, I thought you said — ,"* Jane began, then stopped abruptly.

8. Hyphen [-]

A hyphen is used:

- i) in some compound nouns.
 e.g. *dining-room, air-conditioning*
- ii) in some compound adjectives.
 e.g. *broad-shouldered, smartly-dressed, well-behaved, home-made*
- iii) to link a prefix with a proper or abstract noun.
 e.g. *pre-war, anti-American, pro-abortion, post-Victorian*
- iv) to separate a prefix from a word whose first letter is the same as the last letter of the prefix.
 e.g. *co-operation, re-enter, co-ordination, re-examine*
- v) in numbers between tens and units.
 e.g. *twenty-five, two hundred and sixty-three*
- vi) when expressions of measurement, amount or quantity are used as adjectives before a noun.
 e.g. *a five-pound note, a three-mile walk, a two-hour lecture*

9. Parentheses / Brackets [()]

Parentheses, or brackets, are used:

- i) to separate additional information or a comment from the rest of the sentence.
e.g. *The old Odeon cinema (where I saw the first Elvis Presley film) still stands on the corner of the street.*

10. Apostrophe [']

An apostrophe is used:

- i) where letters are omitted in contracted forms.
e.g. *isn't, I'm, didn't, I'll*
- ii) to denote possession.
 - a) in singular nouns, before the possessive "s".
e.g. *the man's car, my mother's career*
 - b) in plural nouns, after the possessive "s".
e.g. *the teachers' salaries, the nurses' demands*
 - c) in irregular plurals, before the "s".
e.g. *men's clothing, women's voices, children's interests*
- iii) with certain words showing time duration.
 - a) in the singular.
e.g. *an hour's journey, a month's salary*
 - b) in the plural.
e.g. *five hours' journey, two hours' wait, three weeks' work*

11. Quotation Marks / Inverted Commas [" "]

Quotation marks are used:

- i) to indicate direct speech, at the beginning and end of the words spoken.
e.g. *"Well, that's my final decision," he said.*

Note

- a) a comma precedes or ends direct speech.
e.g. *She said, "We'll tell you later."*
- b) when used, question marks or exclamation marks referring to the direct speech are placed inside the quotation marks.
e.g. *"What a tremendous achievement!" he exclaimed.*
"When are you leaving?" he asked.
- c) double quotation marks are usually used for direct speech, although single ones may be used.
e.g. *"I'm leaving at 10 o'clock," he said.*
- d) a word or phrase requiring inverted commas and which is used within direct speech, will have single inverted commas inside the double ones indicating the speech.
e.g. *She said, "Have you noticed the way Audrey says 'that's ridiculous' all the time?"*

- ii) before and after the title of books, films, plays, newspapers and other special names.
e.g. *His performance in 'Hamlet' was outstanding.*
He was reading an Agatha Christie novel called 'Cat Among the Pigeons' on the train.
- iii) to indicate irony.
e.g. *We walked up the "grand" staircase, which was, in fact, in a sad state of disrepair.*
- iv) before and after a quotation.
e.g. *She said, "It's a case of 'he who laughs last laughs longest' if you ask me."*

12. Capital Letters

Capital letters are used:

- i) for the first letter of the first word of a sentence.
e.g. *People are becoming more aware of the need to protect the environment.*
- ii) for the first letter of the first word in direct speech, immediately after the opening quotation marks.
e.g. *"Where have you been?" he asked.*
- iii) for the personal pronoun "I".
e.g. *I don't think I'll come with you.*
- iv) for the first letter of proper nouns such as the names of people, countries, towns, days of the week, months, festivals, etc.
e.g. *On Saturday, Julia and Michael went to Oxford Street in London to buy some Christmas presents.*
- v) for languages and adjectives of nationality.
e.g. *We stayed in a Swiss town while we were doing a short summer course in French.*
- vi) for the more important words in the titles of books, films, plays, newspapers, magazines, hotels, etc.
e.g. *Our professor told us to read 'The Rise and Fall of the Roman Empire' during the summer holiday.*
Two of D.H. Lawrence's most famous books are 'Sons and Lovers' and 'Women in Love'.
- vii) for some abbreviations.
e.g. *R.S.P.C.A. (Royal Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals),*
N.A.T.O. (North Atlantic Treaty Organization), B.B.C. (British Broadcasting Corporation)

352 Punctuate the following:

1. next sunday im going to scotland to help my aunt who is a widow to move house
2. dont use the swiss cheese use the cheese which is on the top shelf of the fridge
3. i really like shakespeares play much ado about nothing because its very witty
4. we visited numerous cities in india madras delhi and agra where of course we visited the taj mahal calcutta and mysore
5. youre going to have to improve your appearance im afraid said the manager to the sales assistant we need smartly dressed well groomed people
6. we couldnt believe our eyes when we opened the front door books clothes drawers chairs all the contents of our house it seemed had been thrown around the room
7. i know its difficult the woman said but id appreciate it if you could change this book about germany for one about austria

8. my grandmothers home made cakes are delicious ive often told her shed make a fortune if she sold them to the local bakers but she doesnt want to
9. there are numerous problems which immigrants face adapting to new surroundings getting a job finding accommodation and above all getting used to peoples attitudes
10. i havent read the new j t rogers sociology book crime and society in twentieth century england yet but im going to buy it on saturday
11. whenever i watch politicians speaking on television which is inevitable just before an election i think of that famous quote power corrupts and absolute power corrupts absolutely
12. the childrens parents were worried about their lack of progress at school their father was particularly worried about his eldest sons poor exam results
13. one of the worlds most successful singers michael jackson seems to have everything talent money fame and the adulation of countless fans
14. in greece the tourist season lasts from april to october august being the busiest month
15. when he told her the truth about her friends childhood she replied rudely i dont believe it

353 Punctuate the following:

1. why i often ask myself cant they do something about the traffic problem in this city
2. the playwright arthur miller who was at one time marilyn monroes husband wrote the play death of a salesman
3. i couldnt tell you about this last friday because i didnt know about it then
4. your children are a pleasure to be with polite thoughtful and well behaved i hope you know how lucky you are
5. its a three hour walk to the nearest village hopefully you will only have to go there once or twice
6. he was a quiet shy reserved sort of person his brother on the other hand was the exact opposite
7. its a well paid job so id accept it if i were you sophia advised her friend
8. if youre going to take a first aid kit make sure it contains the following cotton wool plasters ointment and some disinfectant
9. im afraid youll never succeed however hard you try
10. the film the last temptation of christ which starred willem dafoe caused considerable controversy
11. theres some bad news im afraid we wont be having a picnic on sunday stephens mother is ill
12. soon after the meeting despite public protests the victorian manor house was demolished
13. dont tell me what to do she shouted angrily
14. it was samanthas birthday on thursday and she was given some french perfume a box of swiss chocolates a fur lined jacket and a beautiful leather handbag from italy
15. harrods which is in an area of london called knightsbridge belongs to the house of fraser group

354 Punctuate the following:

1. the record heartbreak hotel which was one of elvis presleys first hits has sold millions of copies all over the world
2. id like to thank you for your co-operation mr smith the manager said
3. the situation seemed hopeless nevertheless andrew persevered
4. although he was bad mannered you couldnt help admiring his determination
5. the poem daffodils by william wordsworth is very famous however i can only remember the first line i wandered lonely as a cloud
6. youre highly qualified and experienced i know however you cant speak german which is essential for this job the director explained
7. the film the great gatsby which starred american actor robert redford was based on a novel by f scott fitzgerald
8. hes worked for the bbc since he left school or so he says
9. they didnt want to go on the trip nevertheless they agreed to go on condition that they wouldnt have to work on monday morning
10. its rather a complicated system at first however youll soon get used to it

11. id love to go to the theatre on saturday barbara said lets see the importance of being earnest which is on at one of the theatres in shaftesbury avenue
12. youre going on holiday to spain on monday arent you her neighbour asked
13. his first film which was highly acclaimed by the critics brought him immediate fame and fortune neither of which however affected his modest nature
14. youd better go now if you stay any longer youll get stuck in the rush hour traffic
15. considering the amount of money we paid for this japanese hi fi system im not very impressed with the quality of the sound

355 Punctuate the following:

1. if you didnt want to travel to ireland by boat you should have said so
2. for five years he struggled to complete his phd and at last he submitted his thesis to his professor
3. she has just completed a bsc in psychology at the university of east anglia which is in norfolk
4. im so sorry sir that the german wine is not satisfactory i will be happy to change it for you said the waiter
5. if youre getting married you should remember that famous saying about what to wear something old something new something borrowed something blue
6. standing by the window and looking out at the sparkling sea below she exclaimed what a magnificent view
7. he studied french and italian during his first year at university during his second year he studied spanish as well
8. its likely that theyll be late they have a long journey and mary has only been driving since april
9. were going to visit the british museum tomorrow theres a new exhibition of tribal masks from africa and asia
10. i love christmas the decorations the christmas trees the food everything is wonderful
11. as compared with the pre war situation the post war economy was not at all promising
12. during the edwardian era britain had a huge empire nevertheless abject poverty existed in london and other cities
13. there was an anti abortion demonstration outside the houses of parliament yesterday twelve people were arrested by the police
14. i think well have to re examine the evidence the detective said
15. the indian leader mahatma gandhi who was a hindu believed in non violent resistance
16. michael jackson appeared in forty five different european cities while on his world tour
17. how could you spend a months salary in only three days his mother asked angrily
18. youre not leaving now are you he said the fun is just starting
19. can you direct me to the nearest post office i seem to be lost said the weary tourist
20. where did you get your drivers license shouted the angry owner of the van you didn't even look before entering the tunnel

356 Punctuate the following:

robert de niro is considered by many film critics to be the best practising method actor in the world today others say that he is overrated has never managed to make it on the stage and that he plays too many stereotyped roles gangsters anti heroes and mafioso types his most famous films include the untouchables cape fear taxi driver once upon a time in america and goodfellas his films are consistently box office successes about his recent film cape fear director martin scorscese commented from the outset i wanted de niro in the film hes one of the only guys that could pull the role off who else could do it in this film de niro plays a well built muscular man seeking revenge for his prison sentence robert de niro has been awarded many oscars but the film that really launched his career was taxi driver at the oscar ceremony de niro was reported to have said i thank god and my family an unfortunate statement since everybody expected a longer speech nevertheless the rave reviews still keep coming in headlines such as what a performance de niro at his best and simply stunning are not uncommon off stage de niro remains a quiet reclusive and solitary figure although the press have persistently tried to smash this image who enjoys the simple things in life.

357 Use only one word to fill in each of the numbered blanks.

A trip to the Middle East might as well be a trip to another planet; (1) different are the lands, the people and their culture! Vast expanses of desert (2) on endlessly for miles, dotted here and there with cleverly camouflaged camels. Temperatures soar sky-high, (3) in the so-called winter, scorching everything and anything. But it is the women in this alien world (4) I find the most fascinating.

In the strictest Muslim States, women are concealed from head to (5) in black, although one might be lucky enough to catch a (6) of a pair of eyes beneath the thinner fabric (7) conceals their faces. It is a strange enough sight to see anyone swimming, but an even (8) one to see a woman in the water still fully clad. Movement is also severely (9); public transport remained exclusively a male domain in many parts until only (10) Now, on most buses, women have been provided (11) two rows of seats at the back, carefully separated (12) the rest of the vehicle by a roof-to-floor (13) and accessed privately through its own entrance. It can be a criminal offence for a woman to be (14) in a car with a man who is not her husband or her father; (15) , getting into a taxi presents no such problems.

Such a world seems far removed (16) our own; all that we take so readily for (17) is missing. Even with more freedom, a (18) to the cinema, pub or disco, for (19) , would be out of the (20) — they simply do not exist.

Phrasal Verbs 1

throw about : scatter sth

throw away : discard sth as useless

throw back on : have to depend on (pass.)

throw oneself into : begin to do sth energetically

throw oneself on sb/sth : rely on sb/sth

throw off : escape from, get free of

throw sb out : force sb to leave

throw over : abandon sb

throw sb together : bring people into contact with each other

throw up : 1) give up (a job etc)
2) vomit (food)

try on : try the fit (of clothes)

try out : test

358 Fill in the missing preposition or adverb.

1. He threw **up** his studies when he was offered a well-paid sales job.
2. He threw his fiancée in favour of a rich actress.
3. Would you like to try this new electric shaver?
4. He was thrown of the bar when he started harassing the other customers.
5. It was fate that threw them
6. During the French Revolution the people tried to throw the chains of poverty.
7. She has tried at least twenty dresses but she can't find one she likes.
8. I wish you threw these old magazines
9. She felt very sick and threw several times.
10. When they both lost their jobs they were thrown their savings.
11. On finishing university, she threw herself her new editing career with great enthusiasm.
12. Joan threw books and papers the room trying to find her passport and her cheque book.
13. When Paul lost his job and his wife left him he threw himself his parents for financial and emotional support.

Phrasal Verbs 2

wear away : become thin, damaged, weak etc. by constant use

wear off : disappear gradually (effect of sth)

wear out : 1) use until useless (of clothes etc)
2) exhaust (of people, usually passive)

work on : be occupied with

work out : 1) find a solution by reasoning
2) turn out successfully

work up : 1) develop
2) excite
3) advance (in business)

Idioms 1

get off on the wrong foot : begin badly

get cold feet : lose courage

have a cheek / nerve : act/speak rudely or impudently

tongue in cheek : not serious; ironic

have an eye for : be a good judge of

put one's foot down : insist

pull sb's leg : tease; try to make sb believe sth untrue

turn a blind eye to sth : ignore

lose one's head : lose self-control

a brain wave : a sudden idea

359 Fill in the missing preposition or adverb.

1. It took months for the shock of her parents' death to wear **off**.
2. He has worked his business from a single shop to a huge chain.
3. I'm trying to work how this device was put together.
4. I was completely worn after working twelve hours without a break.
5. He is working a new book but it will take him a couple of years to finish it.
6. The politician's speech worked the crowd to a frenzy.
7. He has worn three pairs of running shoes in two months.
8. She was doubtful about the new system of checking accounts, but it worked well in the end.
9. The surface of the road was worn by severe flooding.
10. She is hoping to work her way to a vice-presidency.

360 Fill in the blanks with the correct idiom.

1. I like going shopping with Elaine as she **has an eye for** the clothes which suit me best.
2. David was going hang-gliding but he at the last minute and decided not to.
3. After wondering for weeks what to get her parents for their anniversary, she had and decided to give them tickets for a week-long cruise.
4. When the fire broke out the crowd and started fighting their way out of the stadium.
5. You've shouting at me because I'm late, when it's usually you that can't arrive anywhere on time!
6. I never know when he's being serious because most of what he says is
7. The traffic warden to the car which was parked illegally; she didn't bother to stop and give the driver a ticket.
8. She on the first day at her new job by accidentally switching off the computer and losing all the files on a particular client.
9. None of us wanted to go on holiday together until my father and said that we had no choice.
10. I'm sure she was when she said she was getting married. She's only fifteen, after all!

Idioms 2

keep one's fingers crossed : wish for good luck

be all fingers and thumbs : be awkward, clumsy

be up in arms : protest loudly

give sb the cold shoulder : ignore / shun sb

take sth to heart : take personally, be offended / upset by sth

with one's heart in one's mouth : fearfully

put one's heart and soul into sth : be devoted to sth

feel / be down in the mouth : be depressed

have a sharp tongue : tend to say unkind or hurtful things

tooth and nail : fiercely

a pain in the neck : annoying person / thing

look down one's nose at sth/sb : feel / act superior to

361 Fill in the blanks with the correct idiom.

- George didn't really mean that you are fat, so don't **take it to heart**.
- I'm that the police will soon find my stolen bike.
- Sarah was such a dedicated nurse that she put her into the work.
- Phillip has been since he failed his driving test.
- Maria has become such a snob since qualifying for the orchestra; she always at the rest of us in the music society.
- I wouldn't like to have a disagreement with Penny; she has got such I'm sure she'd upset me.
- The workers were when they heard that they had to work on a Bank Holiday.
- Joe is so irritating, he's a real
- Susan stood with her as the angry dog snarled and snapped at her.
- It was very rude of you to give Andy; you should at least say hello to him.
- It was awful on Saturday night as Helen and Barbara argued for most of the evening.
- When it comes to cooking, Tina is all; if she doesn't burn things, she drops them on the floor.

Prepositions

362 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- Since passing professional exams, George has had his salary increased **by** 10%.
- Classes have increased size since falling levels of government funding have reduced the number of teachers in the school.
- I began to get impatient his continual lack of punctuality.
- Impatient her arrival, he kept running to the window every time a car passed.
- The organisers tried to get everyone to join the games.
- He joined when he was seventeen and he's been in the army ever since.
- Railway engineers joined three additional carriages the train to cope with the extra passengers.

363 Look at Appendix 3 and fill in the blanks with the correct preposition.

- Although we were all rather irritated by the situation at the time, we laughed **about** it afterwards.
- When my foreign friend came to stay, I lined a number of visits to places of interest in London.
- The dressmaker lined the summer dress light cotton to make it less transparent.
- He was listening the radio when he heard his own name being announced.
- I'm expecting an important call; could you listen the telephone while I pop out to the shops?
- He doesn't have any savings and, since being made redundant, has been living his family.

364 For each of the sentences below write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence but using the word given. The word must not be altered in any way.

e.g. Photography interests me.
FIND
 I find photography interesting.

1. How can we help the boy?
WHAT

2. I shall never try to ice-skate again.
LAST

3. Why does Sarah behave the way she does?
REASON

4. Should I go ahead with the plan?
ADVISABLE

5. I can't believe she said that about me.
FIND

6. The garage is too small for my van.
ROOM

7. Don't you remember anything about the accident?
RECOLLECTION

8. In my opinion Jim deserves everything he gets.
ASK

9. The hairdresser permed Ann's hair.
HAD

10. They paid far too much for the car.
WORTH

11. I can recommend you to the manager; I'm a friend of his.
WORD

365 Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

e.g. Take some warm clothes in case **it gets** cold.

1. If I had listened to you, ... the wrong road.
2. I my hair cut next Saturday.
3. Why me you were ill last week?
4. My uncle is a pacifist; he's fighting for any reason.
5. He speaks English as from this country; I think he must be from Spain.
6. By the time we reach our destination, we five hours.
7. Do you know at the cinema tonight?
8. I the tickets last week. Now they're sold out and we can't go.
9. If Lawrence wants to pass his exams, he than he has been.
10. How much you to get your house decorated?

366 Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1. This portrait is said to be ~~be painted~~ a hundred years ago.
- 2. We went on dance until the disco closed.
- 3. He wears so strange clothes that everyone stares at him.
- 4. Supposing you win the pools, what would you do?
- 5. If I am you, I'd look for another job.
- 6. Dogs must be kept with a lead.
- 7. As it was his birthday, he suggested to have a party.
- 8. A new library is been built in the High Street.
- 9. Did you remember feeding the cat?
- 10. As long as the train is on time, we would be in Paris by midnight.
- 11. It is known that Mozart has been a child genius.
- 12. Despite he was poor, she married him.
- 13. Their furniture are very expensive.
- 14. I'd rather he stops lying.
- 15. She is fairly more attractive than Pam.
- 16. My older brother is a Maths teacher.
- 17. She is very tired to go out tonight.
- 18. I'll see her after I'll finish my work.
- 19. You needn't be rude to your parents.
- 20. He'll come when he will be ready.

have been painted

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

367 Fill in the numbered blanks choosing the word(s) which fit(s) best. The first one has been done for you.

Panic is rising (1) **among** hair stylists in Denmark. Some of those who often colour, perm or highlight hair - 125 stylists in all - are complaining (2) symptoms which may indicate brain damage. Authorities have been forced to investigate, and it appears that many stylists are (3) from memory loss, nausea and frequent headaches. The reason is that the chemicals (4) produce harmful fumes.

The hairdressers' unions are funding investigations into the problem. However, scientists are (5) because the quantity of chemicals used is not enough to be harmful. Many stylists are now worried, so Denmark has (6) strict regulations. Manufacturers must now list all the chemicals contained in the products.

(7) ventilation must be provided in hairdressing salons and clients will wear a special hood, (8) the fumes away from the stylist. All of Europe will have to (9) these new regulations. At the moment, everything is still at the committee stage, but soon the revolutionary perm-helmet will be worn in all salons. Final decisions will be (10) when hairdresser's unions meet in Brussels to discuss the problem.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A) in | B) among | C) between | D) at |
| 2. A) from | B) about | C) of | D) because |
| 3. A) wounded | B) suffering | C) hurt | D) injured |
| 4. A) acted | B) consumed | C) improved | D) used |
| 5. A) sceptical | B) thoughtful | C) doubtful | D) worried |
| 6. A) introduced | B) imported | C) passed | D) worked out |
| 7. A) Much | B) Surplus | C) Ample | D) Plenty |
| 8. A) moving | B) throwing | C) turning | D) directing |
| 9. A) apply to | B) comply with | C) act on | D) reinforce |
| 10. A) introduced | B) done | C) made | D) given |

Word usage

368 Choose from the sets of synonyms the word which is most appropriate in each case.

- Tom always tries to **attain** perfection in everything he does. (**accomplish, attain, gain, reach**)
- The charity managed to a great deal during its most recent project in Africa. (**gain, reach, attain, accomplish**)
- Thank you very much, but I am afraid that, due to the political situation, the Queen must your invitation to tour South Africa. (**decline, spurn, turn down, reject**)
- Peter was heartbroken when Sue his offer of marriage so cruelly. (**spurned, declined, denied, rejected**)
- I wasn't to see a queue outside the new sports centre. (**taken aback, astounded, amazed, surprised**)
- She was a little by this strange behaviour. (**astounded, amazed, surprised, taken aback**)
- We to the manager about the assistant's behaviour. (**grumbled, bellyached, whined, complained**)
- Instead of to yourself, why don't you make a formal complaint? (**bellyaching, whining, grumbling, complaining**)
- My mother told me that, as a child, I used to continually for sweets. (**whine, grumble, complain, bellyache**)
- The latest advertising for Diana toilet rolls is a free toilet-roll cover with every purchase. (**trick, snare, gimmick, plot**)

369 Fill in the following collocational grids.

	paper on the ground	your hair	water on plants	a crowd	leaves	paint
spray						
scatter	✓					

	married couple	silence	upbringing	child	salary	ideas	attitude
respectful							
respectable	✓						

	novel	event	building	costume	site	records
historic						
historical	✓					

	face	speech	ceremony	responsibilities	news	truth	life	matters
sober								
solemn	✓							
weighty								
grave								

	ice-cream	cheese	lollipop	water	envelope	the bait	one's food
lick	✓						
gulp							
nibble							

Practice Test Fifteen

PAPER 3 USE OF ENGLISH

Time: 2 hours

Section A

1. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use only **one** word in each space.

Phoenix-like from amidst the ecological ashes comes a story of hope. At dawn, on a usually deserted beach on the Greek island of Cephalonia, crowds compete (1) journalists and television crews, gathered together to (2) the arrival of something rather special.

Four years ago, eggs (3) by the rare Loggerhead turtle were found in a nest on this very beach. It was judged by experts that it was too late in the (4) for the hatchlings to have any (5) of survival in the wild, so action was taken. The British charity, Care for the Wild, decided to fly the eggs back to Southampton University and attempt to hatch them under special (6) in incubators. All four eggs hatched successfully and it was decided that when they were four years old, they were (7) of surviving in the wild. They were returned (8) the remote beach, which remains unmolested by the ravages of tourism, and released in (9) of an audience of excited well-wishers. An example, one might say, of positive human intervention in the (10) of natural selection!

However, their fight for survival is far from over. The Loggerhead turtle is one of the (11) endangered species of all. It has inhabited the earth for approximately ninety million years and is now facing a man-made threat which has (12) its survival in a precarious (13) The turtles can live as (14) as one hundred years but they don't even begin to (15) characteristics of their gender until they reach thirty. Effectively, our four heroes will have to struggle (16) another quarter of a century until they begin to fight back and fulfil some of the hopes invested (17) them. In that time, they will be forced to resist not (18) natural threats, but also dangers imposed (19) them by the fishing industry and tourist development. Their chances are slim to say the least, but it is hoped that their story might (20) awareness of the plight of the turtles.

2. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means **exactly the same** as the sentence printed before it.

Example: Her parents believe nothing she tells them.

Answer: Whatever **she tells them, her parents don't believe her.**

- a. It can be lethal to be bitten by a tarantula.

Being.....

- b. This is all I have to tell you.

I have.....

- c. Their houses were completely rebuilt.

They.....

- d. The danger doesn't appear to worry the true lion-lover.

The true lion-lover.....

- e. If I were you, I'd leave now.

It would.....

- f. People still speak Welsh in some parts of Wales.

Welsh.....

- g. Harriet was delayed so she missed the bus.
Had Harriet.....
- h. It's a pity I didn't think of that before.
I wish.....

3. Fill each of the blanks with a suitable word or phrase.

- Example: It's no use *crying over* spilt milk.
- 1. I think we the heater on. It's getting a bit chilly.
 - 2. I can't see why exam results yet. They were posted to you last week.
 - 3. I much food as hardly anyone came to the party.
 - 4. By the truth, it will be too late.
 - 5. Anyone in my done what I did.
 - 6. So film that I couldn't follow it at all.

4. For each of the sentences below write a new sentence *as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence*, but using the word given. This word must *not be altered* in any way.

- Example: Were they allowed to go? PERMISSION
Answer: *Were they given permission to go?*
- 1. He answered the question immediately. FLASH
 - 2. I don't understand the instructions. SENSE
 - 3. I did everything possible to save my marriage. POWER
 - 4. This room needs to be decorated. DOING
 - 5. How much do these apples weigh? WHAT
 - 6. How can I help you, sir? ASSISTANCE
 - 7. He promised us he would come. WORD
 - 8. It is very likely she will go to university. LIKELIHOOD

Section B

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions which follow it.

The relevance of the British monarchy to modern life is a subject of constant discussion. While academic debate over the hotly disputed “unnecessary expense” and “insignificance” of what is sometimes termed an archaic institution rages on, it is increasingly clear that public interest will not be diminished by rational argument. It is surely down to a question of human nature; we are singularly fascinated by the lives and loves of famous people who move in an exotic, alien world far more glamorous than our own. The Royals are the ultimate in fame and glamour. The media falls over itself to quench our insatiable desire and provide us with a continuous flow of tit-bits and more substantial chunks.

5

We have recently been afforded a long-awaited and fascinating glimpse into the Queen's jewel box. No, it isn't on display at the local supermarket but it has been publicly undressed in a new book. Jewels have always symbolised royal prestige; it is the mystique of the priceless gems which transforms Queen Elizabeth in the eyes of the public from grandmother to Head of State. Her private collection, which has never been fully inventoried, dates back to the sixteenth century. The jewels themselves are said to "reinforce a sense of stability", which is seen by many as the monarchy's greatest strength. Certainly, many of the necklaces and tiaras which have adorned the Royals in portraits stretching back through the centuries reappear in present day photographs of the family, and the history of the gems is sometimes more colourful than the gems themselves.

For example, one of the Queen's 14 tiaras once belonged to the Grand Duchess Vladimir, the leading socialite in Tsarist Russia. At the outbreak of the Russian Revolution in 1917, the Grand Duchess escaped, leaving her jewels walled up in the palace. Later, one of her retinue smuggled himself into the looted palace and, so the story goes, disguised himself as an old woman, escaping with the tiara concealed under his bonnet.

Other pieces in the vast collection are composed of parts of the Cullinan diamond, the largest diamond in the world. When the stone was first discovered in South Africa in 1902, it was presented to King Edward VII. Thieves were foiled when the diamond was delivered by ordinary parcel post while a fake stone was taken aboard a ship under close and conspicuous police escort, ceremoniously deposited in the Captain's safe and steadfastly guarded throughout the voyage.

Fascination with the British monarchy is certainly not confined to Britain. In fact it might be true to say that its most avid supporters are to be found much further afield. There was once a time, not so long ago, when what you wore to attend the royal court was not simply a question of good taste, and a recent exhibition which challenged British designers to dream up gowns conforming to the last royal court dress-code edict (issued in 1937) received coverage throughout the world.

The popular press may appear to be full of scandal and horror stories concerning the British Royals but, at the end of the day, it is the priceless jewels and exotic gowns that lie at the heart of our interest. It makes little difference whether we are concerned with building the fantasy up or destroying it. The fact is, the fantasy still remains.

1. What is suggested by the phrase "academic debate" (line 2)?
.....
.....
2. What does "it" refer to (line 4)?
.....
3. Give an alternative phrase for "quench our insatiable desire" (line 7).
.....
.....
4. Explain what "tit-bits" and "more substantial chunks" refer to (line 8).
.....
.....
.....
5. In what sense has the glimpse into the Queen's jewel box been "long-awaited" (line 9)?
.....
.....
6. In what sense has the Queen's jewel box been "publicly undressed" (line 10)?
.....
.....

7. What two functions are the jewels described as having?
8. Explain the use of the word “colourful” (line 17).
9. What do you gather about the story of the Grand Duchess’s tiara from the phrase “so the story goes” (line 22)?
10. What does “other pieces” (line 24) refer to?
11. Give an alternative word for “foiled” (line 26).
12. Briefly explain the role of the "fake stone" (line 27).
13. According to the writer, where are the most fervent admirers of the British monarchy to be found?
14. Explain the use of “dream up” (line 32).
15. Explain the phrase "that lie at the heart of" (lines 36 - 37).
16. In a paragraph of 50-70 words, summarise the reasons for the public interest in the Royal Family.

Phrasal Verbs

Consolidation 1

1. **act up** = to behave awkwardly or badly
2. **answer (sb) back** = to speak rudely to sb
3. **answer back** = to defend oneself
4. **answer for** = to be responsible for sth
5. **answer to** = to be under the command of sb
6. **back down** = to cease to oppose
7. **back out of** = to withdraw from
8. **back up** = to support
9. **be beneath sb** = to be demeaning
10. **be down on** = to be hostile to sb
11. **be down with** = to be ill (with a disease)
12. **be in for it** = to be about to receive punishment/trouble
13. **be in with** = to be in favour with; share secrets with
14. **be into** = (informal) to take an interest in sth
15. **be off** = (1) to cease to want or be interested in sth, (2) to have come loose, detached from sth, (3) to stay away from work/school, (4) to cancel, (5) to be bad, unhealthy (usu food)
16. **be on** = to be shown on television, at the cinema etc
17. **be out** = (1) to be in bloom, (2) to be extinguished, (3) to be removed, (4) to be absent (from home or work), (5) to be wrong in calculation, (6) to be unfashionable
18. **be up to** = (1) to do, (2) to depend on
19. **bear on** = to be relevant to
20. **bear with** = to tolerate

Consolidation 2

21. **bank on** = to depend on
22. **bear out** = to support the truth of
23. **become of** = to happen to
24. **blink at** = to show surprise
25. **blow over** = to stop
26. **blow up** = to explode
27. **book up** = to reserve
28. **break away** = to escape from captivity
29. **break down** = (1) to fail to function, (2) to lose control of feelings
30. **break in** = (1) to interrupt, (2) to enter a building by force
31. **break off** = to end sth suddenly
32. **break out** = (1) to start suddenly (of violent events), (2) to escape from a place
33. **break through** = (1) to make a discovery, (2) to come out from behind cover

34. **break up** = (1) to end a relationship, (2) to disperse
35. **break with** = to give up sth
36. **brush up** = to improve by study
37. **build up** = to acquire gradually

Consolidation 3

38. **bring about** = to cause
39. **bring in** = to introduce (law, idea)
40. **bring off** = to succeed in (sth difficult)
41. **bring on** = to cause an illness
42. **bring out** = to publish
43. **bring round/to** = to cause sb to regain consciousness
44. **bring up** = (1) to stop, (2) to mention a subject, (3) to vomit, (4) to raise a child
45. **call at** = to visit briefly
46. **call back** = to ask to return
47. **call for** = to need, to demand
48. **call in** = to consult
49. **call off** = to cancel
50. **call out** = to cause to go on strike
51. **call up** = to conscript
52. **carry off** = to succeed in doing sth difficult
53. **carry on** = (1) to continue, (2) to behave wildly
54. **carry out** = to fulfil or perform sth
55. **carry over** = to last from another time
56. **carry through** = to complete sth in spite of difficulties
57. **catch at** = to try to hold on use sth
58. **catch on** = to become popular
59. **catch up** = to reach sb who is ahead
60. **chip in** = to add one's share of money
61. **clear away** = to remove
62. **clear of** = to find innocent
63. **clear off** = to run away
64. **clear out** = to get rid of unwanted things
65. **clear up** = (of the weather) to brighten
66. **charge to** = to record sth as a debt to be paid by sb
67. **charge with** = to accuse sb of sth (esp in a court of law)

Consolidation 4

68. **be done for** = to be ruined
69. **come about** = to happen
70. **come across** = to find sth or meet sb by chance

71. **come by** = to obtain sth
72. **come down to** = to be passed to sb
73. **come forward** = to step forward
74. **come in** = to become fashionable
75. **come into** = to inherit
76. **come off** = to succeed
77. **come on** = to progress
78. **come out** = (1) to become known, (2) to be published
79. **come out in** = to develop
80. **come over** = to happen; to have a result or effect on sb
81. **come round to** = to change one's opinion to another point of view; to persuade
82. **come round/to** = to regain consciousness
83. **come through** = to continue to live after (sth bad)
84. **come to** = to amount to a total
85. **come up** = to grow
86. **come up to** = to reach, equal sth
87. **come up with** = to have an idea about a way to solve a problem
88. **deal in** = to trade in sth
89. **deal with** = to tackle a problem; to cope with
90. **do away with** = to abolish
91. **do down** = to criticise
92. **do out of** = to deprive of
93. **do up** = to fasten (a coat etc.)
94. **do with** = to tolerate
95. **do without** = to manage in spite of lack
96. **drive at** = to imply

Consolidation 5

97. **cheat out of** = to prevent sb from having sth usu in an unfair way
98. **check in** = to register as a guest at a hotel
99. **check out** = to pay one's bill and leave a hotel
100. **check up on** = to investigate sb's behaviour etc.
101. **cut back** = to reduce (outgoings)
102. **cut down on** = to reduce (consumption)
103. **cut into** = to interrupt sth
104. **cut off** = (1) to isolate, (2) to disconnect
105. **cut out** = to omit
106. **draw in** = to shorten (of days)
107. **draw on** = to use part of a reserve
108. **draw out** = to extend
109. **draw up** = to come to a stop (of vehicles)
110. **drop in** = to visit unexpectedly
111. **drop off** = to decrease
112. **drop out** = to withdraw
113. **eat into** = to consume a part of sth
114. **fall back** = (1) to retreat, (2) to turn to sth/sb for help when all else has failed

115. **fall for** = to fall in love with sb
116. **fall in** = to collapse
117. **fall in with** = to agree to
118. **fall off** = to decline
119. **fall on** = to attack
120. **fall out with** = to quarrel
121. **fall through** = to fail to take place
122. **feel for** = to sympathise
123. **fit in** = to mix well with others
124. **fit up/out** = to furnish/equip
125. **fly at** = to attack (with blows or words)
126. **fold up** = to collapse or fail
127. **head off** = to prevent
128. **join up** = to become a member of the military

Consolidation 6

129. **get about** = (1) to move about, (2) to spread (of news, gossip etc)
130. **get across** = to make understood
131. **get ahead** = to succeed
132. **get along/on** = to be on friendly terms with
133. **get at** = to mean
134. **get away with** = to escape punishment
135. **get by** = to manage despite difficulties
136. **get down** = to depress
137. **get off** = to send
138. **get off with** = to nearly escape punishment
139. **get on** = to make progress
140. **get on with** = to continue doing sth
141. **get out of** = to avoid
142. **get over** = to recover from
143. **get round** = to persuade
144. **get round to** = to find time
145. **get through** = to contact by phone
146. **get up to** = to be busy with sth surprising or undesirable
147. **give (oneself) up** = to surrender
148. **give away** = (1) to reveal, (2) to give freely as a present
149. **give in** = (1) to deliver, (2) to yield
150. **give off** = to send out or emit sth
151. **give out** = (1) to come to an end, (2) to announce, (3) to distribute
152. **give up** = (1) to stop doing sth, (2) to admit defeat
153. **hype up** = to exaggerate the value of sth

Consolidation 7

154. **go down** = (of remarks, proposals etc) to be received in a specified way
155. **go down with** = to become ill
156. **go for** = to be sold

157. **go in for** = to take part in
158. **go into** = to investigate
159. **go off** = to explode
160. **go on** = to happen
161. **go on with** = to continue sth esp after a pause
162. **go round** = to be enough for everyone to have a share
163. **go through** = (1) to suffer, (2) to examine sth closely or systematically
164. **go up** = to be built
165. **go with** = to be included in the price
166. **hold back** = (1) to prevent development, (2) to delay
167. **hold in** = to control (feelings, oneself)
168. **hold off** = (1) to keep at a distance, (2) to delay
169. **hold on** = to wait
170. **hold out** = (1) to last, (2) to endure
171. **hold out for** = to wait to get sth desired
172. **hold out on** = to keep a secret from sb
173. **hold over** = to postpone to a later date
174. **hold up** = (1) to rob (a bank, vehicle), (2) to delay

Consolidation 8

175. **be kept in** = to detain after normal hours
176. **keep at** = to continue working at
177. **keep back** = to hide
178. **keep down** = to repress
179. **keep in with** = to continue to be friendly
180. **keep on** = to continue doing sth
181. **keep on at** = to continue talking in an irritating way
182. **keep to** = to follow
183. **keep up (with)** = to progress at the same rate
184. **keep up with** = to stay at an equal level with
185. **land in** = to get into trouble, difficulties etc.
186. **land up** = to end (usu in difficulties)
187. **lay aside** = to put aside
188. **lay into** = to attack (with blows or words)
189. **lay off** = to stop doing sth irritating
190. **lay out** = to spend
191. **let down** = (1) to disappoint, (2) to lower sth
192. **let in for** = to involve in trouble etc
193. **let in on** = to allow sb to share a plan, secret, etc
194. **let on** = to reveal a secret
195. **let out** = (1) to make (a garment etc) looser or larger (opp: let in), (2) to utter a cry
196. **let sb off** = not to punish severely
197. **let sb through** = to allow sb to pass an exam or a test
198. **let up** = to become less strong
199. **let up on** = to treat sb less severely

Consolidation 9

200. **be made up** = to consist
201. **lead on** = to persuade sb to believe or do sth by making false promises
202. **look after** = to take care of
203. **look ahead** = to think about the future
204. **look at** = to read
205. **look back** = to think about one's past
206. **look down on** = to despise
207. **look for** = to search for
208. **look in** = to pay a short visit
209. **look into** = to investigate
210. **look on** = to watch sth without taking part
211. **look onto** = to have a view
212. **look out** = to watch out; be careful
213. **look out for** = (1) to search in order to find sth, (2) to be alert in order to see/find sb
214. **look over** = to examine (a place)
215. **look to** = to rely on sb
216. **look up** = to search for (a word) in a reference book
217. **look up** = to visit esp after a long time
218. **look up to** = to respect
219. **make at** = to attack
220. **make for** = to head for
221. **make off with** = to steal sth and hurry away with it
222. **make out** = (1) to complete sth, (2) to claim to be, (3) to discern, (4) to understand
223. **make over** = to transfer the ownership of sth
224. **make sth over (into)** = to convert
225. **make up** = (1) to invent (a story), (2) to end a quarrel, (3) to compensate for sth, (4) to put cosmetics on sb's face etc
226. **make up for** = to compensate sb for the trouble one has caused him
227. **rise up** = to rebel
228. **rule out** = to exclude

Consolidation 10

229. **call off** = to cancel
230. **live on sb/sth** = to depend upon support
231. **live through** = to experience over time
232. **live up to** = to reach the standard that may be expected
233. **live with** = to tolerate/accept sth and endure it
234. **meet with** = to be received in a particular manner
235. **miss out** = to forget to include
236. **move on to** = to change subject
237. **narrow down** = to limit choices
238. **note down** = to write from speech

239. **pass over** = to overlook; fail to notice
 240. **pass over to** = to hand (to sb)
 241. **phase out** = to slowly replace
 242. **piece together** = to reassemble; recreate
 243. **put about** = to spread (false) reports, rumours
 244. **put across** = to communicate
 245. **put aside/by** = to save for later use
 246. **put away** = to put into confinement
 247. **put back** = to delay
 248. **put down** = to write in a particular place
 249. **put down to** = to attribute to
 250. **put forward** = to suggest; to propose
 251. **put in** = to make an official request
 252. **put in for** = (1) to apply for, (2) to make an official request
 253. **put off** = to discourage from liking
 254. **put off** = to postpone
 255. **put on** = (1) to gain weight, (2) to pretend to have, (3) to advance, (4) to clothe oneself with, (5) to present
 256. **put out** = to extinguish
 257. **put sb up** = to give accommodation to
 258. **put sth behind one** = to deliberately forget
 259. **put through** = (1) to carry sth out, (2) to cause sb to undergo, e.g. an ordeal
 260. **put through to sb** = to connect by telephone
 261. **put up with** = to tolerate

Consolidation 11

262. **run across** = to find by chance
 263. **run after** = to pursue
 264. **run away** = to leave (school, home etc)
 265. **run away with** = to steal sth and carry it away
 266. **run behind** = to be delayed
 267. **run down** = (1) to criticise, (2) to gradually stop functioning, (3) to run sb down (with a vehicle)
 268. **run in** = to use a new vehicle carefully
 269. **run into** = (1) to meet by chance, (2) to collide with
 270. **run off** = to produce quickly
 271. **run out of** = to exhaust the supply of sth
 272. **run through** = (1) to rehearse (2) to use up
 273. **run up** = to accumulate (bills etc)
 274. **run up against** = to encounter difficulties
 275. **see about** = to make arrangements for
 276. **see off** = to accompany a traveller to his/her train etc
 277. **see out** = to accompany sb to an exit
 278. **see over** = to inspect properly
 279. **see through** = (1) not to be deceived, (2) to support sb through a difficult time

280. **see to** = to take care of
 281. **settle down** = to live a more permanent life-style
 282. **settle for** = to accept sth (less than expected)
 283. **settle in** = to become used to a new house or job
 284. **settle on** = to decide on
 285. **settle up** = to pay (a debt, a bill etc)

Consolidation 12

286. **set about** = to begin
 287. **set aside** = to save for a special purpose
 288. **set back** = (1) to hinder, (2) to cost
 289. **set in** = to begin (of a period, usu bad)
 290. **set off** = (1) to start a reaction, (2) to begin a journey (= set out)
 291. **set on** = to cause (an animal) to attack
 292. **set out** = to begin a task/job with a specific intention
 293. **set up** = (1) to establish (a record), (2) to start a business, (3) to erect
 294. **stand by** = (1) to remain loyal to sb, (2) to do nothing to stop a bad situation, (3) to be ready for action
 295. **stand down** = to resign from a position
 296. **stand for** = (1) to support sth, (2) to be an abbreviation of sth, (3) to tolerate, (4) to enter oneself for election
 297. **stand in for** = to replace temporarily
 298. **stand out** = to be conspicuous/obvious
 299. **stand up for** = to defend; support
 300. **stand up to** = to defend oneself against

Consolidation 13

301. **take aback** = to surprise
 302. **take after** = to look like a relative
 303. **take against** = to dislike sb
 304. **take away** = to remove
 305. **take back** = to withdraw a statement or comment
 306. **take down** = (1) to write down, (2) to remove sth from a high place
 307. **take in** = (1) to deceive, (2) to allow sb to stay in one's home, (3) to understand, (4) to make clothes smaller
 308. **take off** = (1) to remove (clothing), (2) to leave the ground (of aeroplanes etc), (3) to imitate sb in a comic way, (4) to begin to succeed, (of plans, ideas etc)
 309. **take on** = (1) to undertake sth, (2) to employ staff, (3) to accept sb as an opponent
 310. **take out** = (1) to extract, to remove, (2) to accompany sb to a theatre etc

- 311. **take over** = to take control of sth esp in place of sb else
- 312. **take sb for** = to mistake sb/sth for sb/sth else
- 313. **take to** = (1) to find agreeable; to like, (2) to begin a habit, (3) to escape to; to hide in
- 314. **take up** = (1) to begin a hobby, sport etc., (2) to occupy space
- 315. **take up with** = to become involved in (usu derog)

Consolidation 14

- 316. **talk about** = (1) to gossip about sb, (2) to consider
- 317. **talk at** = to speak to sb without listening to his replies
- 318. **talk back** = to reply rudely
- 319. **talk down to** = to speak to sb as if they are less clever than oneself
- 320. **talk into** = to convince sb to do sth
- 321. **talk out** = to settle a problem by talking
- 322. **talk out of** = to persuade sb not to do sth
- 323. **talk round** = to persuade sb to agree to sth
- 324. **tell against** = to show negative evidence
- 325. **tell apart** = to distinguish
- 326. **tell off** = to scold
- 327. **think of** = to take sth into account
- 328. **think out** = to produce by thinking
- 329. **think over** = to reflect upon sth before making a decision
- 330. **think up** = to invent or devise sth
- 331. **turn away** = to refuse admittance to sb
- 332. **turn down** = (1) to reject an offer, (2) to reduce heat etc
- 333. **turn in** = (1) to go to bed, (2) to report to the authorities
- 334. **turn into** = to convert
- 335. **turn off** = to switch off

- 336. **turn on** = to switch on
- 337. **turn out** = (1) to assemble as a crowd, (2) to produce, (3) to prove to be
- 338. **turn over** = (1) to turn a page, (2) to fall on one side
- 339. **turn to** = to go to sb for help
- 340. **turn up** = (1) to arrive (usu late), (2) to increase volume

Consolidation 15

- 341. **throw about** = to scatter sth
- 342. **throw away** = to discard sth as useless
- 343. **throw back on** = to have to depend on (pass.)
- 344. **throw off** = to escape from, get free of
- 345. **throw oneself into** = to begin to do sth energetically
- 346. **throw oneself on sb/sth** = to rely on sb/sth
- 347. **throw over** = to abandon sb
- 348. **throw sb out** = to force sb to leave
- 349. **throw sb together** = to bring people into contact with each other
- 350. **throw up** = (1) to give up (a job etc), (2) to vomit (food)
- 351. **try on** = to try the fit (of clothes)
- 352. **try out** = to test
- 353. **wear away** = become thin, damaged, wear, etc by constant use
- 354. **wear off** = to disappear gradually (effect of sth)
- 355. **wear out** = (1) to use until useless (of clothes etc), (2) to exhaust (of people, usu passive)
- 356. **work on** = to be occupied with
- 357. **work out** = (1) to find a solution by reasoning, (2) to turn out successfully
- 358. **work up** = (1) to develop, (2) to excite, (3) to advance (in business)

Appendix 2

Idioms

Consolidation 1

1. **all along** = from the beginning
2. **all but** = nearly, almost
3. **all in** = exhausted
4. **all in all** = when everything is considered
5. **all the same** = yet, however
6. **all told** = altogether
7. **be the apple of sb's eye** = to be very precious to sb
8. **be up in arms** = to be very angry
9. **for all** = in spite of
10. **for all I care** = I don't care
11. **for all I know** = as far as I know
12. **in the act of** = while performing the act
13. **In the air** = (1) uncertain, (2) spreading about
14. **make allowances for** = to take weaknesses etc. into consideration
15. **make amends for** = to try to counteract a past action
16. **of all people** = used to express annoyance/surprise
17. **on account of** = because of
18. **on no account** = under/in no circumstances
19. **on the air** = broadcasting (**opp.:** off the air)
20. **on the alert** = watchful and prepared
21. **take into account** = consider sth
22. **on this/that account** = for this/that reason
23. **whet sb's appetite** = to make sb eager to have/experience more

Consolidation 2

24. **above board** = honest
25. **bark up the wrong tree** = to make a mistake
26. **be broke** = to have no money at all
27. **be full of beans** = to be very lively
28. **be in the black books** = not very popular
29. **beat about/around the bush** = to avoid saying what one means directly
30. **behind bars** = in prison
31. **big headed** = conceited; boastful
32. **black and blue all over** = covered with bruises
33. **blessing in disguise** = sth which appears bad at first but then turns out well
34. **blue-eyed boy** = favourite
35. **bolt from the blue** = suddenly
36. **brainwave** = sudden clear idea/thought
37. **break even** = to show neither loss nor profit
38. **browned off** = fed up; bored

39. **butter the boss up** = to flatter sb
40. **by and large** = generally speaking
41. **catch sb red-handed** = to be caught while committing a crime
42. **chip off the old block** = sb who is very like one of his parents
43. **cost a bomb** = very expensive
44. **deal a blow to** = to damage one's hopes
45. **don't hold your breath** = wait for sb anxiously
46. **drive a hard bargain** = to be a tough businessman
47. **drop a brick** = to say sth tactlessly
48. **feel in one's bones** = feeling sth instinctively
49. **get your own back** = to take/get revenge
50. **have a bee in one's bonnet** = to have an obsession about sth
51. **have butterflies in one's stomach** = to be very nervous about sth
52. **in black and white** = in writing; clear
53. **in cold blood** = (of a murder) done deliberately
54. **in the balance** = uncertain
55. **kick the bucket** = to die
56. **lay bare** = to make public
57. **make a clean breast of** = to confess
58. **make one's blood boil** = to cause sb to become very angry
59. **on the spur of the moment** = without thinking about sth
60. **out of the blue** = suddenly and unexpectedly
51. **ring a bell** = to remind sb of sth
62. **see the back of** = to be glad to see sb leave
63. **take the bull by the horns** = to take a bold step immediately
64. **wet blanket** = dull person who spoils people's happiness

Consolidation 3

65. **a close shave** = a narrow escape
66. **a piece of cake** = sth very easy to do
67. **a red-letter day** = a very important day
68. **a wild-goose chase** = a hopeless search
69. **be caught red-handed** = to be caught while committing a crime
70. **be on the cards** = to be likely to happen
71. **be over the moon** = to be elated
72. **call sb names** = to insult sb
73. **chair a meeting** = to preside a meeting
74. **crocodile tears** = false tears

75. **cross one's mind** = to think of sth
76. **cut sb dead** = to ignore sb
77. **different as chalk and cheese** = very different
78. **down in the dumps** = not cheerful
79. **down the drain** = wasted; lost
80. **get a bit hot under the collar** = to get angry, upset or embarrassed
81. **get a problem off one's chest** = to tell sb else about your problem
82. **go to the dogs** = to go to waste
83. **have the cheek** = to dare to complain
84. **keep one's chin up** = not to be discouraged
85. **let sleeping dogs lie** = to avoid mentioning a subject which could cause trouble
86. **lost cause** = hopeless situation or case
87. **off colour** = to look slightly unwell
88. **on the dole** = receiving unemployment benefit
89. **play one's cards right** = to act cleverly
90. **show one's true colours** = to reveal one's character
91. **with flying colours** = with great success

Consolidation 4

92. **be dying for sth** = to really want sth
93. **be fit for** = to be good enough for
94. **be flat out** = to be very tired
95. **be green** = not to be experienced
96. **cook one's goose** = to end one's plans abruptly
97. **fair and square** = within the rules
98. **fall head over heels** = to fall in love quickly
99. **feel one's ears burning** = to be sure that sb is talking about you
100. **gatecrasher** = sb attending a party, event etc without an invitation
101. **get off on the wrong foot** = to argue or disagree at the beginning of a relationship
102. **give and take** = to compromise
103. **have a frog in one's throat** = inability to speak due to nervousness
104. **have the gift of the gab** = to be able to talk well, persuasively
105. **hear it through the grape-vine** = to find out information indirectly
106. **in a flash** = very quickly
107. **it's all Greek to me** = sth new or foreign; not easily understood
108. **keep a straight face** = to manage to look serious
109. **keep an eye on sth** = to guard sth
110. **meet behind closed doors** = to meet secretly

111. **one's flesh and blood** = family member
112. **plenty more fish in the sea** = many opportunities in life, for love etc
113. **put one's foot down** = to insist
114. **put one's foot in it** = to join or interrupt a conversation you are not a part of
115. **take it easy** = to calm down
116. **take sb for granted** = to rely on sb to do things for you all the time

Consolidation 5

117. **a bit of a dark horse** = person with hidden abilities
118. **be for the high jump** = to be in serious trouble
119. **be in two minds about sth** = not to know which of the two things to do
120. **be sound asleep** = to sleep heavily
121. **be the perfect image of sb** = to look exactly like sb
122. **before one can say Jack Robinson** = extremely quickly
123. **break the ice** = to ease the tension when one first meets people
124. **eat one's heart out** = to feel jealous
125. **flog a dead horse** = to waste time
126. **fly off the handle** = to become very angry
127. **get out of hand** = to get out of control
128. **get the hang of it** = to get in the habit of sth
129. **go to one's head** = to make conceited
130. **grey matter** = the brains; intelligence
131. **hand in glove with sb** = to be in very close contact with sb
132. **have a job** = to find it difficult
133. **have many irons in the fire** = to have a lot of plans/possibilities in progress
134. **have one's heart in one's mouth** = to be extremely anxious
135. **have time on one's hands** = to have free time
136. **hold one's horses** = to wait, be patient
137. **ill at ease** = embarrassed; uncomfortable
138. **keep sth under one's hat** = to keep sth secret
139. **keep up with the Joneses** = to compete with others in status/material goods
140. **lend sb a hand** = to give help
141. **like the back of one's hand** = to know sth extremely well
142. **lose heart** = to become discouraged
143. **make head or tail of** = to understand
144. **off the cuff** = without preparation
145. **stew in one's own juice** = to suffer the consequences of one's own actions
146. **straight from the horse's mouth** = from the most direct source

147. **strike gold** = to come across sth useful
 148. **take everything to heart** = to take personally/ be hurt by
 149. **take to one's heels** = to run away
 150. **the ins and outs** = the details of an activity
 151. **the tip of the iceberg** = small evident part of a much larger, concealed situation

Consolidation 6

152. **at large** = free, not caught
 153. **be in the know** = to be well-informed
 154. **bring to one's knees** = to destroy, humble
 155. **bury one's head in the sand** = to avoid or ignore reality/responsibility
 156. **come to a head** = to reach a crisis (of an affair, course of events)
 157. **drop sb a line** = send sb a letter
 158. **fine kettle of fish** = confused state of affairs
 159. **get rid of sth** = to give sth away
 160. **go to any lengths** = to do anything necessary to get sth desired
 161. **have kittens** = to be upset
 162. **keep one's fingers crossed** = to hope that sth will turn out well
 163. **keep oneself to oneself** = to live quietly, unsociably
 164. **make a killing** = to have a sudden, great success
 165. **make light of** = to treat sth as unimportant
 166. **make/earn a/one's living** = to earn money
 167. **on the level** = honest
 168. **pull sb/one's leg** = to tease or trick sb
 169. **shed light upon** = to give new/further information
 170. **sleep like a log** = to sleep soundly
 171. **take sb for granted** = not to appreciate sb
 172. **the life and soul of sth** = the most lively and amusing person present somewhere
 173. **the lion's share** = the biggest part/portion
 174. **turn over a new leaf** = to make a new start
 175. **with a view to doing sth** = with the intention or hope of doing sth

Consolidation 7

176. **a night owl** = person who enjoys staying up late
 177. **be second to none** = to be as good as the best
 178. **cross one's mind** = to occur to one, have a sudden idea
 179. **cry over spilt milk** = to grieve over sth that can't be put right
 180. **every nook and cranny** = everywhere

181. **feel down in the mouth** = to feel discouragement or depression
 182. **get a move on** = to hurry up
 183. **get on one's nerves** = to irritate or annoy sb
 184. **have an early night** = to go to bed early
 185. **hit the nail on the head** = to say exactly the right thing
 186. **in a nutshell** = briefly; in a few words
 187. **lose one's nerve** = to back out because of fear
 188. **make a name for oneself** = to become famous
 189. **make hay while the sun shines** = to take advantage of favourable circumstances
 190. **make money hand over fist** = to make a lot of money quickly and easily
 191. **make one's getaway** = to escape
 192. **moon around** = to look miserable
 193. **null and void** = invalid; not legally binding
 194. **once in a blue moon** = very rarely
 195. **put sb's name forward** = to nominate
 196. **put words into one's mouth** = to pretend that sb has said sth that he/she hasn't actually said
 197. **slip one's mind** = to forget about sth
 198. **work a miracle** = to make sth impossible happen

Consolidation 8

199. **a bitter pill to swallow** = a difficult fact to accept
 200. **against all odds** = despite the difficulties
 201. **be out of practice** = lacking practice
 202. **come to the point** = to reach the main point in a discussion
 203. **fall into place** = to become clear
 204. **get the sack** = to be dismissed from one's job
 205. **get the wrong end of the stick** = to misunderstand completely what has been said
 206. **golden opportunity** = the best chance
 207. **grease sb's palm** = to bribe sb
 208. **grow out of sth** = to become too big for sth
 209. **have no option but** = must; have no choice
 210. **if I were in sb's shoes** = if I were sb
 211. **in public** = in the presence of other people
 212. **in the offing** = likely to happen
 213. **off the point** = irrelevant
 214. **once and for all** = for the last time
 215. **out-and-out** = thorough; complete
 216. **out in the open** = (of secrets) revealed
 217. **out of print** = (of books) not available anymore
 218. **out of the frying pan into the fire** = from a difficult situation to a worse
 219. **part and parcel of** = basic part of
 220. **past one's prime** = growing old

- 221. **pop the question** = to make a proposal of marriage
- 222. **short and sweet** = very short and to the point
- 223. **status symbol** = property/possession that shows sb's high social rank
- 224. **take things to pieces** = to dismantle things
- 225. **throw a party** = to have a party
- 226. **white elephant** = useless possession

Consolidation 9

- 227. **an unknown quantity** = person or thing that one has no experience of
- 228. **as a last resort** = when all else has failed
- 229. **at close quarters** = from a short distance
- 230. **be in a quandary** = to be confused; undecided
- 231. **beg the question** = to fail to deal directly with a question
- 232. **call it quits** = to give up; to stop
- 233. **cut sb to the quick** = to deeply hurt sb's feelings
- 234. **hit the roof** = to get very angry
- 235. **in a rut** = to be fixed in a monotonous routine
- 236. **in the long run** = after a long period of time
- 237. **it stands to reason** = it is logical
- 238. **keep sth quiet** = to keep sth secret
- 239. **know the ropes** = to know all the details of a business
- 240. **off the record** = unofficial(ly)
- 241. **on the quiet** = secretly
- 242. **on the rack** = in a state of great anxiety
- 243. **open to debate** = not decided/settled
- 244. **out of the question** = impossible
- 245. **put down roots** = to settle down
- 246. **work to rule** = to adhere strictly to the rules as a form of protest

Consolidation 10

- 247. **a long shot** = a risky guess
- 248. **a memory like a sieve** = a poor memory
- 249. **be all at sea** = to be in a state of confusion
- 250. **be in sb's shoes** = to be in sb's position
- 251. **be in the same boat** = to be in the same (usu bad) situation
- 252. **be the spitting image of sb** = to look exactly like sb
- 253. **be/get soaked to the skin** = to be/get very wet
- 254. **be/have a close shave** = to barely escape an accident etc
- 255. **behind the scenes** = in secret
- 256. **come out of one's shell** = to gain personal confidence

- 257. **does it show?** = is it obvious?
- 258. **give sb the slip** = to escape from sb
- 259. **go for a song** = to be sold very cheaply
- 260. **go without saying** = to be a foregone conclusion
- 261. **hit the sack** = to go to bed
- 262. **live out of a suitcase** = to travel often
- 263. **make quite a scene** = to become angry in a dramatic way
- 264. **on a shoe string** = on a very small budget
- 265. **pull a few strings** = to use influential friends in order to obtain an advantage
- 266. **pull one's socks up** = to make a greater effort
- 267. **sleep on it** = to think about sth
- 268. **smell a rat** = to suspect that sth is wrong
- 269. **spill the beans** = to reveal a secret
- 270. **stand in sb's way** = to prevent sb from doing sth
- 271. **take ... with a pinch of salt** = not to believe sth completely
- 272. **the last straw** = the last and worst episode in a chain of bad experiences
- 273. **thick-skinned** = insensitive

Consolidation 11

- 274. **(by) trial and error** = learning from one's mistakes
- 275. **be ahead of one's time** = to have modern ideas
- 276. **be thick** = to be stupid
- 277. **be tickled pink** = to be really pleased
- 278. **come to a standstill** = not to progress
- 279. **come to terms with** = to accept a difficult situation
- 280. **do time** = to serve a prison sentence
- 281. **for the time being** = temporarily
- 282. **in a tick** = shortly; soon
- 283. **in the nick of time** = just in time
- 284. **kill time** = to pass time while waiting for sb/sth
- 285. **lay the table** = to set the table
- 286. **not be one's cup of tea** = not to suit one's taste
- 287. **on second thoughts** = having changed one's mind
- 288. **out of turn** = not in the correct order/time
- 289. **paint the town red** = to have a lovely time
- 290. **play truant** = to stay away from school without good reason
- 291. **put two and two together** = to arrive at the truth by looking at facts
- 292. **red tape** = unnecessary bureaucracy
- 293. **take one's time** = not to hurry
- 294. **through thick and thin** = whatever happens
- 295. **touch and go** = with uncertain result

Consolidation 12

296. **be all very well** = to appear satisfactory but in fact not be
 297. **be on the up and up** = to improve steadily
 298. **be up and about** = to have recovered from an illness
 299. **drive (sb) up the wall** = to make sb angry; to annoy sb
 300. **frosty welcome** = unfriendly reception
 301. **get out of bed on the wrong side** = to be in a bad mood
 302. **get wind of** = to receive information about sth indirectly
 303. **give vent to** = to express sth freely
 304. **give way to** = to give in; yield
 305. **hold water** = to be able to be proved true
 306. **make a flying visit** = to make a quick trip
 307. **make waves** = to cause trouble
 308. **no/little wonder** = not surprising
 309. **quick/slow on the uptake** = quick/slow to understand
 310. **set in one's ways** = fixed in one's habits
 311. **speak volumes** = to be strong evidence of sb's merits etc
 312. **under the weather** = depressed; unwell
 313. **up and coming** = likely to be successful
 314. **ups and downs** = alternate good and bad luck
 315. **wet behind the ears** = inexperienced

Consolidation 13

316. **(be) In sb's black books** = to be) unpopular with sb
 317. **(like) a bolt from the blue** = a complete surprise
 318. **a blue film** = a pornographic film
 319. **an old wives' tale** = false belief (use about health)
 320. **be born yesterday** = a long time ago
 321. **be in the black** = to be out of debt
 322. **be in the pink** = to be healthy
 323. **be tickled pink** = to be very pleased
 324. **beat sb black and blue** = to hit sb repeatedly until bruised
 325. **blue eyed boy** = favourite boy
 326. **feel/be blue** = to be depressed
 327. **go back on one's word** = not to fulfil a promise
 328. **have a yellow streak** = to be a coward
 329. **have it both ways** = to refuse to make a decision between two pleasant things (usu in expression "You can't have it both ways!")

330. **have words with sb** = to have an argument
 331. **have/keep one's wits about one** = to be alert and able to deal with difficulties
 332. **in black and white** = in writing
 333. **in deep water** = in trouble/difficulty
 334. **make sb's day** = to make sb very happy
 335. **once in a blue moon** = very rarely
 336. **out of the blue** = unexpectedly
 337. **scream blue murder** = to make a lot of fuss
 338. **see/look at sth through rose-coloured spectacles** = to see sth from an unrealistically positive point of view.
 339. **the black market** = illegal trading of goods
 340. **the black sheep of the family** = a disgraced family member
 341. **the boys in blue** = the police
 342. **the pot calling the kettle black** = accusing sb of a fault one has oneself
 343. **the year dot** = a long time ago
 344. **until one is blue in the face** = as hard/long as one possibly can (usu. without success)

Consolidation 14

345. **(fight) like cat and dog** = (disagree) violently
 346. **(like) a bull in a china shop** = a very clumsy person
 347. **(to make) a dog's breakfast/dinner (of sth)** = (to make) a mess (of sth)
 348. **a bear with a sore head** = an irritable person
 349. **a cat in hell's chance** = no chance at all
 350. **a different kettle of fish** = a totally different situation etc from the one just mentioned
 351. **a dog's life** = a difficult, hard life
 352. **a fish out of water** = person who feels uncomfortable because he is in unfamiliar surroundings
 353. **a night owl** = sb who enjoys the night life
 354. **a red rag to a bull** = action, comment etc liable to provoke sb
 355. **a sitting duck** = an easy target
 356. **as busy as a bee/a busy bee** = (sb) very busy
 357. **as the crow flies** = in a direct line/by a direct route
 358. **be in the doghouse** = to be out of favour, in trouble
 359. **bought it** = got killed
 360. **cook sb's goose** = to make sure of sb's defeat
 361. **dog eat dog** = ruthless competition, rivalry
 362. **dog-eared** = (of books) with the corners bent and turned down through use
 363. **donkey work** = boring, monotonous work
 364. **donkey's years** = a long time
 365. **drink like a fish** = to drink a lot (of alcohol)

366. **flog a dead horse** = to pursue a hopeless course of action
367. **go to the dogs** = to deteriorate
368. **have a bee in one's bonnet** = to be obsessed with sth
369. **hold one's horses** = to wait a moment; to restrain oneself
370. **kill two birds with one stone** = to achieve two things with one action
371. **let sleeping dogs lie** = to avoid interfering with a situation that could potentially become a problem
372. **let the cat out of the bag** = to reveal a secret
373. **like water off a duck's back** = having no effect
374. **make a fool of oneself** = to make oneself look stupid
375. **make a mountain out of a molehill** = to cause a fuss about a trivial matter
376. **make a pig of oneself** = to eat/drink to excess
377. **no room to swing a cat** = no room at all
378. **play cat and mouse with sb** = to keep sb in a state of uncertain expectation treating alternatively cruelly and kindly
379. **put the cat among the pigeons** = to cause trouble
380. **rain cats and dogs** = to rain heavily
381. **straight from the horse's mouth** = from the original source
382. **swim like a fish** = to swim well
383. **take the bull by the horns** = to deal decisively with sth
384. **talk the hind legs off a donkey** = to talk constantly
385. **the rat race** = the competitive nature of modern urban life
386. **until the cows come home** = for a long time

Consolidation 15

387. **a brainwave** = a sudden idea
388. **a pain in the neck** = annoying person/thing
389. **be all fingers and thumbs** = to be awkward, clumsy
390. **be up in arms** = to protest loudly
391. **fell/be down in the mouth** = to be depressed
392. **get cold feet** = to lose courage
393. **get off on the wrong foot** = to begin badly
394. **give sb the cold shoulder** = to ignore/shun sb
395. **have a cheek/nerve** = to act/speak rudely or impudently
396. **have a sharp tongue** = to tend to say unkind or hurtful things
397. **have an eye for** = to be a good judge of
398. **keep one's fingers crossed** = to wish for good luck
399. **look down one's nose at sth/sb** = to feel/act superior to
400. **lose one's head** = to lose self-control
401. **pull sb's leg** = to tease; to try to make sb believe sth untrue
402. **put one's foot down** = to insist
403. **put one's heart and soul into sth** = to be devoted to sth
404. **take sth to heart** = to take personally, to be offended/upset by sth
405. **tongue in cheek** = not serious, ironic
406. **tooth and nail** = fiercely
407. **turn a blind eye to sth** = to ignore
408. **with one's heart in one's mouth** = fearfully

Appendix 3

Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions

► Group 1 - A

abashed by (adj)
abide by (v)
abscond with sth from (v)
absent from (adj)
absorbed in (adj)
absorption by (n) (= action of being absorbed by)
absorption in (n)
 (= fascination for)
abstinence from (n)
abstain from (v)
abstraction of sth from sth (n)
abuse of (n)
acceptable to (adj)
access to (n)
accompanied by (adj)
accord with (v)
according to (prep)
account for (v)
accuse sb of sth (v)
accustomed to (adj)
acquaint sb with sth (v)
acquainted with (adj)
acquit sb of sth (v)
act for (v) (= on sb's behalf)
act of (n)
act on (v) (= as a result of sth)
addicted to (adj)
addition to (n)
adequate for (adj)
adhere to (v)
adjacent to (adj)
adjust to (v)
admission of (n)
 (= confession)
admission to/into (n)
 (= permission to enter a place, join a group, club etc)
admit to (v)
advantage over sb (n)
 (= better position than sb)
advise sb against sth (v)
 (= advise sb not to do sth)

advise sb of sth (v) (= inform sb about sth)
advise sb on sth (v) (= give suggestions)
affectionate towards (adj)
attinity with (n)
afraid of + noun (adj) (spiders, the dark etc)
afraid to + verb (adj) (look, swim etc)
age of (n)
agree on (v) (= to reach a decision with others)
agree to (v) (= agree to do sth or allow sb else to do sth)
agree with sb about sth (v)
agree with sth (v) (= to approve of sth)
agreeable to (adj)
ahead of (adj)
aim (sth) at (v)
allergic to (adj)
allusion to (n)
amazed at/by (adj)
amenable to (adj)
amount of (n)
amount to (v)
amused at/by (adj)
angry at (+ gerund) (adj)
angry with sb about sth (adj)
animosity towards (n)
annexe to/of (n)
annoyed at/about sth (adj)
annoyed with sb (adj)
answer to (n)
antipathetic to (adj)
anxious about sth (adj)
anxious for sb (adj)
apart from
apologise to sb for sth (v)
apparent in/from sth (adj)
apparent to sb (adj) (= clear, obvious)

appeal to sb (v)
apply to sb for sth (v)
appreciative of (adj)
apprehensive of / about (adj)
approve of (v)
aptitude for (n)
argue about sth (v) (= to disagree about sth)
argue for/against sth (v) (= give reasons why / why not sth should be, happen etc)
argue with sb (v)
arrest sb for sth (v)
arrive at (v) (a fixed address, a small place, conclusion)
arrive in (v) (a large area, country)
ashamed of (adj)
ask (sb) about (v) (= ask for information about sth)
ask (sb) for (v) (= say that you want sth)
assault on (n)
assigned to (adj)
associate (sth/sb) with (v)
assure sb of (v)
astonished at / by (adj)
attached to (adj)
attempt on (sb's life) (n)
attend to (v)
attendance at (n)
attitude to/towards (n)
auxiliary to (adj)
averse to (adj)
aversion to (n)
avoidance of (n)
aware of (adj)
awkward at / with (adj) (at dancing etc / with one's hands etc)

► **Group 2 - B**

back out of (v)
 bad at sth (adj)
 bad to sb (adj)
 bags of (n)
 ban on (n)
 barter for (v)
 base sth on (v)
 bash in/up (v)
 basis for/of (n)
 bear with (v)
 bearer of (n)
 (make a) beeline for (n)
 beg (sb) for (v)

begin by (+ gerund) (v)
 begin with (+ noun) (v)
 belief in (n)
 believe in (v)
 belong to sb (v)
 benefit from (v)
 benefit of (n)
 bet (sth) on (v)
 beware of (v)
 bit of (n)
 blame sb for sth (v) (but: put the blame on)
 boast of/about sth (v)

book into (v)
 bored with/by (adj)
 borrow sth from sb (v)
 bother about/with (v)
 bottom of (n)
 breach of (n)
 break into/out of (v)
 brilliant at (adj)
 bump into (v)
 burst into (v)
 busy with (adj)

► **Group 3 - C**

campaign for (n)
 capable of (adj)
 care for sb/sth (v) (= like, look after)
 (take) care of (n)
 care about (v) (= be concerned about)
 (in the) care of sb (n)
 careful about (adj) (= take care when doing sth)
 careful of (adj) (= avoid danger to oneself, e.g. be careful of the dog)
 careful with (adj) (= take care not to do harm to an object)
 careless about/of (adj)
 centre of (n)
 certain of (adj)
 challenge sb to sth (v)
 change in/to (v) (= become sth else)
 change sth for sth (v) (= replace with)
 changeable towards (adj)
 characteristic of (adj)
 charge at (v) (= rush towards)
 charge sb with (v) (= accuse of)
 cheque for (money) (n)

choice between (two things) (n)
 choice in (a matter) (n)
 choice of (a number of things) (n)
 things) (v)
 clever at (+ gerund) (adj)
 clever with (adj) (hands, tools etc)
 close to (adj)
 coax sb into (v)
 coincide with (v)
 collaborate with sb on sth/in + gerund (v)
 collide with (v)
 comment on (v)
 communicate with (v)
 compare with/to (v)
 complain to sb about/of sth/sb (v)
 compliment on (v)
 comply with (v)
 concentrate on (v)
 concern about (n)
 confidence in (n)
 confident of (adj)
 confine to (v)
 confusion about (n)
 congratulate sb on sth (v)
 connected to (adj)
 connection between (n)
 conscious of (adj)

consent to (v)
 consist of (v)
 consistent with (adj)
 consult sb on/about sth (v)
 consumption of (n)
 content with (adj)
 contrary to (adj)
 contrast with/to (v)
 contribute to (v)
 control of/over (n)
 convert to/into (v)
 convince of (v)
 cope with (v)
 correction of (n)
 correspond with (v)
 count on sb for sth (v)
 cover in/with (v)
 crash into (v)
 craving for (n)
 crazy about (adj)
 crime against (n)
 crowded with (adj)
 cruel to (adj)
 cruelty to (n)
 cry about (sth which has happened) (v)
 cry for (sth you want) (v)
 cure of (v)
 curious about (adj)

Group 4 - D

dabble in/at sth (v)
 damage to (n)
 damaging to (adj)
 danger of (n)
 (make a) dash for (n)
 date from (v)
 deaf in (adj) (one ear)
 deaf to (adj) (sb's arguments etc)
 deal in (v) (= have a business involving particular things)
 deal with (v) (= manage sth)
 dear to (adj)
 death by (n)
 decide about (a plan etc) (v)
 decide on (an object, e.g. which car to buy) (v)
 decline in (n)
 decline to (v)
 decrease by (a certain amount) (v)
 decrease in (n)
 decrease in (v) (size, number)
 dedicate to (v)
 deep in sth (adj)
 default of (n)
 defer sth to sth (v)
 deficiency of/in (n)
 deficient in (adj)
 delay in (n)
 delight (sb) with/in sth (v) (= entertain/amuse sb with)
 delight in (v) (take pleasure in)
 delighted with (adj)
 demand for (n)
 demand sth from (v)
 depart from (v)
 depend on/upon (v)
 deposit in (v) (the bank)
 deposit on (v) (the ground)

deputise for (v)
 derive from (v)
 descended from (adj)
 deserted by (adj)
 desire for (n)
 despair of (v)
 destined for (adj)
 destructive to (adj)
 determined about (adj)
 detrimental to (adj)
 deviation from (n)
 devoid of (adj)
 devotion to (n)
 die from (v) (a wound)
 die of (v) (illness, hunger etc)
 differ from sth (v) (= be unlike)
 differ with/from sb on/about sth (v) (= have a different opinion)
 difference between (n) (two or more things / people)
 difference of (n) (amount)
 different from (adj)
 difficulty in (n) (+ gerund)
 difficulty with (n) (+ noun)
 diffident about (adj)
 diligence in (n)
 direct (sth) at/towards (v)
 disadvantage in (n) (situation)
 disadvantage of (n) (+ gerund or noun - weakness, poverty etc)
 disagree with sb on/about sth (v)
 disappointed with/by (adj)
 disapprove of (v)
 disbelieve in (v)
 discharge from (v)
 discourage from (v)
 discrimination against (n)
 discrimination in favour of (n)

discussion about (n)
 disgruntled at/about (adj)
 disgusted at/by/with (adj)
 dislike for (n)
 dismiss sb from (v)
 displeased with (adj)
 dispose of/with (v)
 disqualify sb from sth (v)
 disregard for/of (n)
 dissatisfied with (adj)
 distaste for (n)
 distinguish between (v)
 distracted by (adj) (a disturbance)
 distracted from (adj) (what one is doing)
 dither about sth (v)
 divide sth among (v) (more than 2 people/ things)
 divide sth between (v) (2 people/ things)
 divide sth by (v) (another number e.g. divide 4 by 2)
 divide sth into (v) (parts e.g. divide the cake into 6 parts)
 divisible by (adj)
 do sth about sth (v)
 doubtful about/of (adj)
 dream about (v)
 dream of (v) (= imagine)
 drive into / from / to / at / in / with / against / in / about / for etc (v)
 due for (adj) (= deserving sth)
 due to (adj) (= because of, e.g. due to bad weather)
 dust (sth) off (v)
 dwell in/at (v) (= live in/at a place)
 dwell upon/on (v) (= think about)

Group 5 - E

(at the) expense of (n)
 eager for (adj)
 economise on (v)
 efficient at/in (adj)
 eject (sb/sth) from (v)
 elated at/by (adj)
 eligible for (adj)
 elope with (v)

emanate from (v)
 embark on/upon (v)
 embroil (sb) in (v)
 emerge from (v)
 emphasis on (n)
 empty sth out of/into/onto sth (v)
 encounter with (n)

encourage sb in sth (v)
 and with (v)
 engaged in (adj) (= busy with)
 engaged to sb (adj) (= promised to marry sb)
 engagement to (n)
 engrossed in (adj)
 enlist (sb) in/for (v)

entice away from (v)
 entitle (sb) to (v)
 entranced by/with (adj)
 entry into (n)
 entwine (sb/sth) with (v)
 envious of (adj)
 envy of (n)
 equal to (adj)
 equivalent to (adj)
 escape from (v)
 essential to/for (adj)
 establish oneself as sth (v)
 (= take position/office)
 establish oneself in (v) (place)
 evacuation of (n)
 evocative of (adj)

excellent at (adj) (cooking etc)
 excellent with (adj) (a sword etc)
 exception to (n)
 excited about/by (adj)
 exclaim at/about (v)
 exclude (sb/sth) from (v)
 exclusion of sb from sth (n)
 excuse for (n)
 excuse sb for sth (v) (= forgive sb for sth)
 excuse sb from sth (v) (= give permission not to do sth)
 exempt from (adj)
 expel sb/sth from (v)
 experienced in (adj) (activity)

experienced with (adj) (tools, weapons)
 experiment on (v) (animals etc.)
 experiment with (v) (methods etc.)
 expert in/at/on (adj) (activity)
 expert with (adj) (tool, weapon, etc.)
 explain sth to sb (v)
 exposed to (adj)
 expressive of (adj) (one's mood)
 expressive with (adj) (one's hands, voice etc)
 exult at (v)

► Group 6 - F

fabric of (sth) (n)
 faced with (adj)
 failure in (n)
 faith in (n)
 faithful to (adj)
 fall from (n) (a height)
 fall in (n) (prices, popularity)
 famed for (adj)
 familiar to (adj) (= known by)
 famous for (adj) (one's actions)
 famous in (adj) (a country etc)
 fatal to/for (adj)
 fatten (sth/sb) up (v)
 favourable for/to (adj)
 fear of (n)
 feature at (v) (the cinema)
 feature in (v) (a magazine)
 feature on (v) (TV)
 fetch sth for sb (v)
 feud with sb over sth (v)
 fiddle around with sth (v)
 fidelity to (n)

fidget about (v)
 fight with sb about sth/against sth (v)
 filled with (adj)
 film of (n)
 fine sb for (v)
 finish (sth) off (v)
 finish by (v) (+ gerund)
 finish with (v) (+ noun)
 firm (sth) up (v)
 fish for sth (v)
 fit for/to (adj)
 fit in/into (v) (be comfortable with people etc)
 fit into (v) (go into a particular space)
 fixation on (n)
 flair for (n)
 flake off/away from (v)
 flee from (v)
 flirt with (v)
 flock of (n)
 flow from/out of/into (v)

flow of (n)
 fond of (adj)
 forget about (v)
 forgive sb for sth (v)
 fortunate in (adj)
 fraternise with (v)
 fraught with (adj)
 free sb from sth (v)
 freedom from (n) (chains, problems)
 freedom of (n) (speech, action)
 freshen (sth) up (v)
 fret about (v)
 friendly to (adj) (a cause)
 friendly with (sb) (adj)
 frightened of/by (adj)
 frown at sb/sth (v)
 frown with (v) (anger, confusion etc.)
 full of (adj)
 furious with sb about sth (adj)

► Group 7 - G

(be a) genius at (n) (subject)
 (be a) genius with (n) (tools etc.)
 (have a) genius for (n)
 gain by/from (+ gerund) (v)
 gap between (n) (2 things)
 gape at (v)

gargle with (v)
 garnish with (v)
 gash in (n)
 gasp at (v)
 gather round sb/sth (v)
 gaze at/upon (v)
 generosity to/towards (n)

generous with sth (adj)
 gibe at/about (v)
 giggle at (v)
 glance at (v)
 glare at (v)
 glee at (n)
 glisten with (v)

glitter with (v)
 gloat about/over (v)
 glower at (v)
 good at sth (adj)
 good for sb (adj) (= good influence on sb)
 good to sb (adj) (= kind to sb)
 gracious to (adj)

graduate from (v) (university)
 graduate in (v) (subject)
 grapple with (v)
 grateful to sb for sth (adj)
 grief at/over (n)
 grievance against/with (n)
 grieve at/over (v)
 grudge against sb (n)

grumble to/at sb about/over sth (v)
 guaranteed against (adj) (breakage etc.)
 guaranteed for (adj) (time period)
 guess at (v)
 guilty of (adj)

► Group 8 - H

(be in the) habit of (n)
 haggle with (v)
 hand on/over (v)
 handy for (adj)
 hanker after (v)
 happen to/upon (v) (= come across by chance)
 happy about (adj) (situation)
 happy in (adj) (a new house etc.)
 happy with sth/sb (adj)

harmful to (adj)
 harmonise with (v)
 hazard to (n) (e.g. ice is a hazard to motorists)
 heap sth up (v)
 hear about/of (v) (= receive information about)
 hear from sb (v) (= receive a letter, a telephone call from sb)
 heat sth up (v)
 heir to (n)

hesitate about/over (v) (doing sth)
 hesitate at (v) (the door etc)
 hinder sb/sth from (v)
 hiss at (v)
 honest about (adj)
 hope for (v)
 hopeless at (adj) (maths etc.)
 hopeless with (adj) (a gun etc.)
 huddle up to (v)
 hunch up (v)

► Group 9 - I

identical with/to (adj)
 ignorant of (adj)
 impact on (n)
 impatient for sth (adj) (= eager for sth to happen)
 impatient with sb (adj) (= intolerant of)
 impolite to (adj)
 impressed by/with (adj)
 impression of (n)
 improvement in (n) (condition, situation, e.g. health)
 incapable of (adj)
 include sb/sth in (v)
 increase in (n) (size, number)

Increase in (v) (size, number)
 Increase sth by (v) (amount)
 indebted to sb for sth (adj)
 Independent of/from (adj)
 Indifferent to (adj)
 Indignant at/about (adj)
 Indulge in (v)
 inferior to (adj)
 Injurious to (adj)
 Innocent of (adj)
 Inoculate sb against (v)
 inseparable from (adj)
 insist on (v)
 inspired by (adj)
 insure sth/sb against (v)

intent on (adj)
 intention of (n)
 interest in (n)
 interested in/about (adj)
 interfere with (v)
 invest sth in (v)
 investment in (n)
 invitation to (n)
 invite sb to sth (v)
 involve sb in (v)
 involved in/with (adj)
 irrelevant to (adj)
 irritated by/with (adj)
 isolate sb from (v)

► Group 10 - J

jam sth/sb in/between sth (v)
 jam-packed with (adj) (informal)
 jealous of (adj)
 jest with sb about sth (v)
 jinx on (n)
 join in (v) (= take part in)
 join sth onto sth (v) (= attach one thing to another)

join up (v) (= become a member of esp army/attach sth to sth else)
 join up with sb/sth (v) (= become partners with)
 joke with sb about sth (v)
 jostle against (v)
 judge sb/sth by/from (v)
 judgement about (n) (action, crime etc)

judgement of (n) (court, judge etc)
 judgement on sb (n) (punishment for sb)
 juggle with (v)
 justification for (n) (+ noun or gerund)

Group 11 - K

keen on (adj)
key sth into sth (v)
key to (n)

kind to (adj)
knock at/on (v)

know of/about (v)
knowledge of/about (n)

Group 12 - L

label (sth) as (v)
lace (sth) up (v)
lack of (n)
laden with (adj)
lag behind (v)
lap (sth) up (v)
lather (sth) up (v)
laugh about (v) (situation)
laugh at sb/sth (v)
laze around/about (v)
lean on/towards/against/over (v)
leave for (v)
lecture on (v) (= give a lecture)

lecture sb for/about sth (v) (= scold/warn sb)
legislate for/against (v)
lend (sth) to sb (v)
liable for (adj)
lie to sb about sth (v)
limit (sb/sth) to (v)
line (sth) with (v)
listen for (v) (= listen carefully to hear sth, e.g. telephone, doorbell)
listen to (v) (radio, music etc)
live at (v) (an address)
live on (v) (a big street)

live in (v) (a small street)
live for (v) (a particular time, person, thing)
live with (v) (person, emotion, memory etc)
long for/to (v)
look about/around (v)
look at (v) (= view)
loyal to (adj)
lukewarm about (adj) (= not eager)

Group 13 - M

(in the) mood for (n)
mad at/with (adj)
make of (n)
malevolent to/towards (adj)
married to (adj)
marvel at/about (v)
mastery of (n)
mean to sb/with sth (adj)
meddle in (v)
mediate between (v)

mention to (v)
militate against (v)
mingle with (v)
misinform sb about (v)
mistake sb/sth for (v)
mistaken about sb/sth (adj) (wrong in opinion)
mistaken for (adj) (= believed to be sb/sth else)
mistrust of (n)

mock at (v)
moon around/about/over (v) (+ noun)
motion to/towards (v)
mould sth into sth (v)
mourn for/over (v)
muddle (sth/sb) up (v)
mutiny against (v)

Group 14 - N

nag at (v)
name sth/sb after/for (v) (= give a name to sth/sb)
name sb for/as sth (v) (= nominate sb for a position)
naturalise sb/sth in (v)
necessary for/to (adj)
necessity for/to (n)
need for (n)
negligent of (adj)

negotiate (sth) with sb (v)
nervous of (adj) (+ noun/gerund)
new to (adj) (an area, one's experience)
news of (n)
next to (adj)
nibble at (v)
nice to (adj)
niggle about/over (v)

nod to/at (v)
nominate sb as (v) (president)
nominate sb for (v) (a position)
noted for (adj)
(take) notice of (n)
notify sb of (v)
notorious as (adj) (criminal etc)
notorious for (adj) (crime etc)

Group 15 - O

obedient to (adj)
 object to (v)
 objection to/about (n)
 obliged to sb for sth (adj)
 oblivious of/to (adj)
 obsession with/about (n)
 obtain sth for sb (v)
 obvious to (adj)
 occur to (v)
 offence against (n)
 (= breaking of a rule or law)
 offence to (n) (= insult)
 oggle at (v)

omen of (n)
 onslaught on (n)
 ooze out of/with (v)
 operate on (v) (person)
 operate with (v) (tools, instruments)
 opinion of/about (n)
 opposed to (adj)
 opposite to (adj)
 optimistic about (adj)
 originate in/from (v)
 oust sb from sth (v)
 outlay on (n)

outlet for (n)
 outlook for (n) (= forecast, prediction, e.g. weather outlook for the weekend)
 outlook on (n) (= opinion of, e.g. outlook on life)
 outlook onto/over (n) (fields, towns etc)
 outskirts of (n)
 overburden sb with sth (v)
 owing to (prep)

Group 16 - P

pale with (v)
 part with (v)
 pass by (v) (= go past, e.g. Pass by sb's house, Christmas)
 passed by quietly
 pass on (v) (= to go on from one thing to another, e.g. Let's pass on to the next question)
 pass on to the next question)
 patient with (adj)
 pay by (v) (cheque)
 pay for (v) (shopping)
 pay in (v) (cash)
 peck at (v)
 peculiar to (adj)
 peek at (v)
 peeved about (adj)
 pelt sb/sth with (v)
 pernicious to sb/sth (adj)
 persist in (v)
 pile (sth) up (v)
 pity about (n)
 plague (sb/sth) with (v)
 plan for (n)
 plead with (v)
 pleased with/about (adj)
 pleasure in/of (n)
 pledge sth to (v)
 point at/to (v)
 ponder on/over (v)
 popular with (adj)

portent of (n)
 pose for (v)
 possessive with/about (adj)
 possibility of (n)
 postscript to (n)
 (im)polite to (adj)
 potential as (n) (+ noun)
 potential for (n) (+ noun)
 praise sb for sth (v)
 pray to (v)
 pray to sb for sth (v)
 preach to (v)
 precaution against (n)
 preconception about (n)
 predisposition to/towards (n)
 prefer sth/sb to sth/sb (v)
 prejudicial to/against/towards (adj)
 prelude to (n)
 prepare (sb/sth) for/to (v)
 prepared by (adj) (+ gerund)
 (be) prepared for (adj)
 (= ready for sth to happen)
 prepared with/from (adj)
 (ingredients, components)
 present at (adj) (event, ceremony, place)
 present for (adj) (event, e.g. present for the parade)
 present in (adj) (place, e.g. court)
 present sb with (v)

prevail against (v) (= to work against)
 prevail in/among (v) (= to exist in/among people, places etc)
 prevail over (v) (= to be more powerful over)
 prevail upon (v) (= persuade sb to do sth)
 prevent sb/sth from (v)
 previous to (adj)
 pride in (n)
 pride oneself on (v)
 proclivity to/towards (n)
 proficient at/in (adj)
 prohibit sb from (v)
 prone to (adj)
 proof against (n) (= which denies claim/secure against)
 proof of (n) (what has been claimed)
 propensity for/to/towards (n)
 protect sb/sth against/from (v)
 protection against (n)
 protest about/against/at (v)
 proud of (adj)
 provide (sth) for (v)
 pull at/on (v)
 punish sb for sth (v)
 puzzled about/by (adj)

Group 17 - Q

qualify (sb) as/for (v) (have/give required abilities, qualifications etc)
qualify (sb) for (v) (have/give right)

quality of (n)
quarrel with sb about/over sth (v)
quest for (n)
queue up (for) (v)

quick as (adj) (= comparison)
quick at (adj) (+ gerund or noun)
quiet sb/sth down (v)
quote (sth) from (v)

Group 18 - R

race against (n)
radiate from (v) (= originate from)
radiate with (v) (happiness etc)
rage at/against (v)
raid on sth (n)
rally round (v)
rant at (v)
rave at/against (v)
reach for (v)
react against (v) (= act opposite to sb/sth)
react to (v) (= take action as a result of sth)
readjust to (v)
ready for (adj)
reason for (n)
reason with (v)
rebel against (v)
receipt for (n) (proof of having paid for sth)
receipt of (n) (sth being received)
receive from (v)
recipe for (n)
recipient of (n)
recite sth to sb/from sth (v)
reckless of/about (adj)
recoil from/at (v)
recommend sb/sth to sb/for sb (v)
recovery of sb/sth from sth (n)
recruit to sth/for sth (n)

redolent of/with (adj)
reduction in (n) (size etc)
reduction of (n) (amount by which sth is reduced)
refer to (v)
reference to (n)
refrain from (v)
refuge from (n)
regard to/for (n)
regardless of (prep)
reign over (v)
rejoice at/over/in (v)
relapse into (v)
related to (adj)
relationship between/with (n)
relative of (n)
release from (n)/(v)
relief from (n)
relish for/in (n)
rely on/upon (v)
remark on/upon/at (v)
remedy for (n)
remind of (v)
reminiscent of (adj)
remorse for (n)
remote from (adj)
remove from (v)
reply to (v)
reply to/from (n)
report on/to (n)
repulsion for (n)
reputation as (n) (+ noun)
reputation for/of (n) (+ gerund)
request for (n)
research into (n)

resignation from (n)
resort to (v)
respected for (adj)
respite from (n)
respond to (v) (question, stimulus etc)
respond with (v) (= reply by doing sth e.g. respond with a smile)
responsibility of/for (n)
responsible for (adj)
result in (v)
result of/from/in (n)
resulting from (adj) (= arising from)
resulting in (adj) (= leading to)
reticent about (adj)
retire from (v) (one's job)
retire to (v) (a place)
reverence for (n)
reverse of (n)
revert to (v)
revolt against (v)
revolve around (v)
rhyme with (v)
rich in (adj)
rid of (adj)
rise in/of/out (n)
risk of (n)
rival for (n) (sb's affections etc)
rival in (n) (a competition etc)
roar at (v) (object)
roar with (v) (pain, laughter)
room for (n)
rude to/towards (adj)

Group 19 - S

sad about (adj)
safe from sth/sb (adj)
safeguard (sb/sth) against/from (v)
sated with (adj)

satisfied with (adj)
save sb/sth from (v)
scared of (adj)
schooled in (adj)
scorn for (n)

scowl at (v)
search for (v)
secret from (adj)
secret from (n)
sensible about (adj)

sensitive to (adj)	sorry about sth (adj)	sub for sb (v)
sentence sb to sth (v)	sorry for sb (adj)	subject to (adj)
separate from (adj)	spatter sth on/over (v) (e.g. spatter paint on the wall)	submit (sth) to (v)
separate sb/sth from (v)	spatter sth with (v) (e.g. spatter the wall with paint)	subsist on (v)
sequel to (n)	speak to sb about sb/sth (v)	substitute for (n)
serious about (adj)	specialist in (n)	subversive of (adj)
set of (n)	spend (money) on (v)	succeed (sb) in/at (v)
sever sth from sth (v)	spend (time) in (v) (+ gerund)	successful in/at (adj)
share (sth) with (v)	spend (time) on (v)	successor to (n)
share in (v)	split sth into (v) (pieces)	succumb to (v)
shelter (sb/sth) from (v)	split sth up (v) (= break sth up)	suffer from/with (v)
shiver with (v)	sprig of sth (n) (usu plant)	sufficient for (adj)
shocked at/by (adj)	spy on (v)	sufficient for/to (adj)
short of (adj)	squabble with sb about/over sth (v)	suitable for (adj)
shot at (n)	squint at/through (v)	suited for/to (adj)
shout at sb (v) (from anger)	squirt (sth) out of/into/around etc from sth (v)	supplicate for sth (v)
shout for sb (v) (indirectly)	stack (sth) up (v)	support for (n) (e.g. The fans showed their support for the team.)
shout to sb (v) (to attract attention)	stamp about/around (v)	support of (n) (e.g. Money was collected in support of Greenpeace.)
shriek at (v) (object)	stare at (v)	support sb in (v) (a plan, decision etc)
shriek with (v) (fear, etc)	stash (sth) away (v) (informal)	support sth with (v) (money)
shy of/with (adj)	steal (sth) from (v)	sure of (adj)
sick about/over (adj) (situation)	stimulus to/for (n)	surge in (n) (rise in)
sick with (adj) (emotion, e.g. sick with fear)	stock of (n)	surge of (n) (people, the sea, etc)
side up/over to (v)	story about/of (n)	surprised at/by (adj)
sigh with (v)	straighten (sth) up/out (v)	surrender (sb/sth) to (v)
similar to (adj)	strain of (n) (= quality. e.g. There is a strain of unkindness in him.)	surrogate for (n)
skillful at/in (adj) (job)	strain on (n) (= exertion on sth. e.g. Buying that car will be a strain on our resources.)	suspect sb/sth of (v)
skillful/skilled with/in (adj) (tool, weapon, etc)	streak of (n)	suspicious of/about (adj)
skilled at/in (adj) (job)	stricken with/by (adj)	swill (sth) out/down (v)
slow at (adj)	strip (sth) off/down (v)	swipe (out) at (v)
smile at sb (v)	strive for/after/towards (v)	swoop down on (v)
smitten with/by (adj)	struggle for sb/sth (v) (= fight for, e.g. struggle for breath)	sympathetic to/towards/with (adj)
sneer about (v) (situation)	struggle with sb/sth (v) (= fight with)	sympathise with sb about/for sth (v)
sneer at sb/sth (v)	strum on sth (v)	sympathy with/for (n)
snipe at (v)		
snoop about/around (v)		
snuggle up to (v)		
solace sb with sth (v)		
solicitous for/about (adj)		
soluble in (adj)		

Group 20 - T

talent for (n)	team with (v)	threaten sb with sth (v)
talk to sb about sth (v)	terrified at (adj)	throw sth at sb (v)
tamper with (v)	thank sb for sth (v)	throw sth to sb (v)
taste in (n) (clothes, etc)	thankful for/of (adj)	tinge sth with sth (v)
taste of (n) (food, etc)	think about/of (v)	tingle with (v)
taunt sb with sth (v)	thirsty for (adj)	tinker at/with (v)
team up with (v)	thoughtless of/about (adj)	tired of (adj)

Appendix 3

tolerant of (adj)
trade in (v)
traitor to (n)
transition from sth to sth (n)
translate sth from sth into sth (v)
treatment for (n)
tribute to (n)

trip (sb) up/over (v)
trip over sth (v)
triumph over (v)
(make) trouble for sb (n)
(have/be in) trouble with/for (n) He was in trouble with the police for stealing a car.)
trust in (n)

tuck sth into sth (v)
tug at/on (v)
turn (sth/sb) around/over (v)
tussle with (v)
tutor sb in sth (v)
type of (n)
typical of (adj)

► Group 21 - U

unaware of sth (adj)
unconcerned with (adj)
uneasy about (adj)
unequal in (adj) (size, etc)
unequal to (adj) (in comparison with sth else)
unfaithful to (adj)
unfit for (adj)
uninterested in (adj)

unjust to sb (adj)
unmindful of (adj)
unqualified as/for (adj)
unreasonable about (adj) (e.g. He was unreasonable about paying his share.)
unreasonable of sb (adj) (= to behave a in particular way)
unswerving in (adj)

upset about/with (adj)
upwind of (adj)
use of sth (n)
used for/as (adj) (employed)
used to (adj) (accustomed to)
useful to sb for/as sth (adj) (e.g. This wood will be useful to me as a table.)

► Group 22 - V

valid for (adj) (use)
valid in (adj) (a place)
valued at/for (adj)
variation in/of (n)
vary in (v)
vault over (v)
vexed at/with (adj)

view of/to (n)
visible from (adj) (somewhere)
visible to (adj) (sb)
visible with (adj) (an instrument etc. e.g. The moon is visible to planet with the naked eye.)
visitation of/from (n)

visitor to (n)
void of (adj)
votary of (n)
vote for/against (n)
vote for/against (v)
vouch for (v)
vulnerable to (adj)

► Group 23 - W

wage sth against/on sth/sb (v)
wail about/over (v)
wait for (v)
wallow around/about in sth (v)
warn sb of/about sth (v)
warrant for (n)
wary of (adj)

weak at/in (adj)
weary of (v)
whiff of (n)
whittle away at/sth down (v)
win at (v)
wince at (v)
wink at (v)
wish for (n)
wish for (v)

worried about (adj)
worry about (v)
worthy at (adj)
worthy of (adj) (a reward, recognition etc)
wrestle with (v)
write to sb about sth (v)

► Group 24 - Y

yearn for (v)
yearning for (n)

yell about (v) (a problem etc)
yell at (v) (a name, in pain etc)

yen for (n)

Prepositions with Word Phrases

Group 26 - At

at .. km per hour
at a cost
at a disadvantage
at a discount
at a distance
at a glance
at a guess
at a loss
at a moment's notice
at a profit/loss
at all costs
at all events
at an advantage
at any rate
at breakfast/lunch
at church/school
at ease
at first hand
at first sight

at hand (= close)
at heart (= basically)
at home
at last
at least
at length
at liberty
at night (note: in the night)
at noon
at odds with
at once
at one's request (= because sb wishes it)
at peace/war
at present
at random
at risk
at sea
at speed

at the age of
at the beginning (= when sth started)
at the end (= when sth finishes)
at the expense of
at the front of (= in the most forward position/place)
at the last possible time
at the latest (= time)
at the moment (= time)
at the point of (= at that particular time)
at the present time
at the same time
at the time (= at a particular time)
at times (= sometimes)
at work

Group 27 - By

by accident
by all accounts
by all means
by appointment
by auction
by birth
by bus/train/plane/car
(but: in my own car, on the 8 o'clock train)
by chance
by cheque
by day/night
by degrees
by far
by force

by hand (= using the hands)
by heart (= from memory)
by land/sea/air
by law
by luck (= luckily)
by marriage
by means of
by mistake
by name (= using a name)
by nature
by now
by one's side
by oneself
by order of
by post/airmail

by profession
by request (= as a response to sb's wish)
by sight (e.g. know sb by sight only, not as a friend)
by surprise
by the dozen
by the end (= before sth finishes)
by the side of
by the time (= before reaching a certain point)
by the way (= incidentally)
by virtue of

Group 28 - For / From

for a change
for a moment (= for a short time)
for a visit/holiday
for a walk
for a while
for ages (informal)
for breakfast/lunch/dinner
for certain
for ever

for fear of (= in case sth happens)
for good (= forever)
for granted
for hire
for life
for love (= out of love)
for nothing
for once (= on one occasion)
for sale (= to be sold)
for sb's sake

for short
for the moment (= for now, for the time being)
for the sake of
for the time being
from memory
from now on
from time to time

► **Group 29 - In**

in a (good/bad) mood
 In a hurry
 in a mess
 in a way (= to some extent)
 In action
 in addition (to)
 In advance (of)
 in agony
 in agreement with
 in all
 In answer to
 in any case (= anyway)
 in arrears
 In bed
 in blossom
 In brief
 In case (+ clause)
 in case of (+ noun)
 in cash
 In charge (of)
 in code
 in comfort
 in common (with)
 In comparison with
 In compensation for
 in conclusion
 in confidence
 in control (of)
 in danger
 in debt
 in detail
 in difficulty
 in disguise
 in disorder
 in doubt
 in exchange for
 in existence
 in fact
 in fashion

in favour of (= supporting)
 in favour with (= liked by)
 in fear of (= afraid of)
 In flames
 in focus
 in front of (= further forward than)
 in future
 in gear
 in general
 in good/bad condition
 in hand (= being dealt with)
 in horror of
 in ink/pencil
 in length/width etc
 In love (with)
 in moderation
 in mourning (for)
 in name only (= not really)
 in no time (= very quickly)
 in one's free time
 in other words
 in pain
 in particular
 in person
 in pieces
 in place of
 in possession of (= owning)
 in practice/theory
 in principle (= theoretically)
 in prison/jail
 in private/public
 in progress
 in return
 in safety
 in sb's interest
 in sb's opinion
 in season
 in secret
 in self-defence

in sight (of) (= within one's range of vision)
 in some respects (= in some ways)
 in stock
 in summer/winter
 in tears
 in the air
 In the beginning (= originally)
 In the case of (= in the event)
 in the dark
 in the end (= finally)
 in the flesh
 in the habit of
 in the meantime
 in the mood for (= wanting to do sth)
 in the morning
 in the mountains
 in the name of (= on sb's behalf)
 in the news
 in the nude
 in the right/wrong
 in time (= early enough)
 in time of (= during a particular time)
 in touch
 in town
 in tune (with)
 in turn
 in two/half
 in uniform
 in use
 in vain
 in view of (= because of, taking into account)
 in vogue

► **Group 30 - On**

on a ... day
 on a diet
 on a farm
 on a journey
 on a trip/cruise/excursion
 on a(n) afternoon/evening
 on account of (= because of)
 on an expedition
 on an island
 on approval

on average
 on bail
 on balance
 on behalf of
 on business
 on condition that
 on credit
 on demand
 on duty
 on fire

on foot
 on good/bad terms with
 on holiday
 on impulse
 on leave
 on loan
 on no account (= under no circumstances)
 on one's mind
 on one's own

on order
on paper
on principle (= according to a particular belief)
on purpose
on sale (= reduced in price)
on second thoughts
on sight (= as soon as sth is seen)

on strike
on the agenda
on the air
on the contrary
on the front/back (of a book, jacket etc)
on the increase
on the job
on the one hand

on the other hand
on the outskirts
on the phone
on the point of (= about to)
on the radio/TV
on the trail of
on the way
on the whole
on time (= at the correct time)

► Group 31

Out of

out of breath
out of control (= uncontrolled)
out of danger
out of date
out of debt
out of doors
out of fashion
out of hand
out of luck
out of order

out of pity
out of place
out of practice
out of print
out of reach
out of respect for
out of season
out of sight (= beyond one's range of vision)
out of stock

out of the ordinary
out of the question
out of town
out of use
out of work

Off

off colour
off duty

off school/work
off the record

off the road

Under

under age
under arrest
under control (= controlled)
under discussion

under one's breath
under orders
under pressure
under repair

under the impression
under the weather

With/Without

with a view to (= intending to)
with difficulty
with luck (= hopefully)
with reference to

with regard to
with the compliments of
with the exception of
without delay

without fail
without success
without warning

Round

round the corner

To

to one's astonishment
to one's surprise

to sb's face
to this day

Appendix 4

Verbal Constructions

Verb	Infinitive	-ing form	Noun	Clause
accuse		(sb) of stealing	of theft	
admit		lying	the lie	that he lied
advise	(you) to consider carefully	considering carefully	careful consideration	that you (should) consider carefully
aim	to travel	at travelling		
apologise		for being careless	for my carelessness	
appear	to know facts (<i>personal construction</i>)			that he knows the facts (<i>impersonal construction</i>)
ask	(me) to show him the way		(me) the way	if I could show him the way
avoid		causing accidents	accidents	
begin	to write the letter	writing the letter	the letter	
believe		in being tactful	in tact	that one should be tactful
boast		of/about succeeding	about/of his success	that he had succeeded
cease	to care	caring		
complain		(to sb) about failing	about his failure	that he had failed
concentrate		on solving the problem	on the solution	
consider	(him) to be trustworthy (<i>believe</i>)	explaining the situation	the explanation	that his explanation is acceptable
confess		to stealing		(that) he has stolen
continue	to work	working		the work
dare	(him) to jump			
decide	to buy a red car	(on/against) buying a red car	on/against a red car	that he will buy a red car
demand	to be promoted		promotion	that he should be promoted
deny		breaking the vase	the accusation	that he broke the vase
describe	how to make the mask	(the process of) making the mask	the mask	
dislike		watching horror films	horror films	
dream		of travelling	of a journey	that he will travel
encourage	(me) to drink	drinking		
enjoy		visiting the museum	the visit	
excuse		his being rude	his rudeness	
exclaim			at the scenery	that the scenery was beautiful

Verb	Infinitive	-ing form	Noun	Clause
expect	to get a gift		a gift	that he will get a gift
explain			the reason for his lateness	why he was late
fancy		having a drink	a drink	
feel	(sth) move (completed action)	(sth) moving (action in progress)	the movement	
find	it difficult to learn a language	learning a language difficult	languages difficult	that it was difficult to learn a language
forget	to buy (<i>fail to remember</i>)	buying (<i>unable to recall</i>)	the purchase	that I bought
hate	to travel by bus	travelling by bus	buses	
hear	(him) shout	shouting	a shout	
help	(to) repair	by repairing (<i>method</i>) in repairing (<i>type of help</i>)	that man	
hope	to succeed		for success	that I will succeed
imagine		seeing the accident	the accident	that I had seen the accident
insist		on paying		that I (should) pay
intend	to play	playing		
be interested	to learn about his success (one occasion)	in studying history (generally/always)	in history	
be kept	to do my homework	for being unprepared		
know	how to get there	about getting there	the way	that I will/can get there
laugh		at/about having misunderstood	at/about the misunderstanding	
let	(him) go			
like	to sing	singing	songs	
be likely	to phone (<i>personal construction</i>)			that he'll phone (<i>impersonal construction</i>)
love	to read novels	reading novels	novels	
make	(him) agree		an agreement	
mean	to start (<i>intend - personal construction</i>)	starting (<i>involve - impersonal construction</i>)		that I'll have to start
need	to be painted	painting	some paint	
(there will) be an opportunity	(for me) to travel abroad			
have an opportunity		of going to Italy		
order	(him) to bring the meal		a meal	
pay	(him) to fix the tap (paid before fixing)	(him) for fixing the tap (paid after fixing)		
prefer	to listen to the radio	listening to the radio to watching television	radio programmes to TV programmes	

Appendix 4

Verb	Infinitive	-ing form	Noun	Clause
pretend	to understand			that I understand
promise	to investigate		an investigation	that he will investigate
propose	to undertake (<i>intend</i>)	undertaking (<i>suggest</i>)	a trip	that he should undertake
recommend	(sb) to visit	visiting	a visit	that you should visit
regret	to inform	having to inform	the decision	that we must inform
remember	to ask	asking (<i>recall</i>)	the place	that I asked
remind	to post		(me) of our holiday (<i>cause to remember</i>)	him that he (should) post
say		(to him) about his leaving		that he couldn't leave
seem	to enjoy (<i>personal construction</i>)			that he enjoys (<i>impersonal construction</i>)
show	how to knit		the knitting	that she understood how to knit
speak		(to me) of/about becoming a lawyer	(to me) of/about law	
start	to read the book	reading the book	the book	
stop	to clean the car (<i>pause</i>)	cleaning the car (<i>finish</i>)	the car	
succeed		in passing the examination	in the examination	
suggest		finding a job	a solution (an idea)	that you (should) find a job
suspect	(him) to be the robber	of robbing the bank	(him of) robbery	that he is the robber
talk		(to me) of/about seeing the paintings	(to me) of/about the paintings	
tell	(her) to explain the whole story		the whole story	(her) that (she) should explain the whole story
think		of/about changing	of/about the change	that he will/might change
try	to use (<i>attempt</i>)	using (<i>as an experiment</i>)	the new machine	
understand	how to behave	(your) behaving badly	(your) behaviour	why (you) behaved badly
want	to have a car	cleaning	a car	
watch	him write (<i>complete action</i>)	him writing (<i>incomplete action</i>)	the film	
wonder	how to fix		at your behaviour (<i>surprised at</i>)	how I could fix

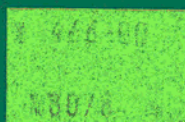
Cpe Use of English Examination Practice

“**CPE Use of English Examination Practice**” is aimed at advanced students who wish to polish up their skills in the difficult area of English structures and usage. Clear presentation of all points relating to the CPE Use of English paper is followed by exercises, consolidation activities and complete Use of English practice tests in the same form as the Cambridge Proficiency Examination Paper 3. The book, designed for classroom or individual use, aims to prepare students not only for the CPE but also the CAE or / and other exams at the same level of difficulty.

Key features

- condensed presentation of grammar structures followed by graded exercises on each structure
- consolidation units consisting of:
 - cloze passages
 - phrasal verbs
 - idioms
 - prepositions
 - sentence completion exercises
 - transformation exercises
 - rephrasing exercises
 - proof reading exercises
 - word usage
 - collocations
- practice tests helping students through the Cambridge Proficiency Examination.
- appendices on phrasal verbs, idioms, prepositions and verbal constructions.

The book is accompanied by a Teacher's Guide containing the answers to the exercises as well as notes on the word usage.



Express Publishing